

TEXT-BOOKS FOR LONDON MATRICULATION.

- MATRICULATION ENGLISH COURSE.** Containing Grammar, Analysis, Composition, Paraphrasing, and Précis-writing. By W. H. Low, M.A. Lond., and JOHN BRIGGS, M.A. Camb., F.Z.S. 3s. 6d.
- THE NEW MATRICULATION ALGEBRA.** By RUPERT DEAKIN, M.A. Lond. and Oxon. With a Section on Graphs. 3s. 6d.
- TUTORIAL ARITHMETIC.** By W. P. WORKMAN, M.A., B.Sc. 4s. 6d.
- EUCLID.—BOOKS I.—IV.** By RUPERT DEAKIN, M.A. With Problems in Practical Geometry and an Introductory Chapter on Drawing and Measurement. 2s. 6d.
- TUTORIAL LATIN GRAMMAR.** By B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb., and W. F. MASON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 3s. 6d.
- LATIN COMPOSITION.** By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2s. 6d.
- MATRICULATION LATIN CONSTRUING BOOK.** By A. F. WATT, M.A. Oxon., B.A. Lond., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2s.
- MATRICULATION SELECTIONS FROM LATIN AUTHORS.** By A. F. WATT, M.A., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- MATRICULATION FRENCH COURSE.** By Prof. E. WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 3s. 6d.
- THE MATRICULATION FRENCH READER.** With Notes and Vocabulary. By J. A. PERRER. 2s. 6d.
- MATRICULATION MODERN HISTORY. 1485-1901.** By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.
- MATRICULATION MECHANICS.** An Elementary Text-Book of Mechanics. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. 3s. 6d.
- MATRICULATION HYDROSTATICS.** An Elementary Text-Book of Hydrostatics. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. 2s.
- THE NEW MATRICULATION CHEMISTRY.** By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc. Lond., Ph.D. Heidelberg. Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.C.S. *New Edition (Rewritten and Enlarged).* 5s. 6d.
- MATRICULATION PHYSICS: HEAT, LIGHT, AND SOUND.** By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. Lond., and JOHN DON, M.A., B.Sc. Lond. 4s. 6d.

The University Tutorial Series.

THE
TUTORIAL LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

B. J. HAYES, M.A. LOND. AND CAMB.,

GOLD MEDALLIST IN CLASSICS,
VICE-PRINCIPAL OF UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENCE COLLEGE,

AND

W. F. MASOM, M.A. LOND. AND CAMB.,

FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

Seventh Impression (Fourth Edition).



LONDON: W. B. CLIVE,

University Tutorial Press Ltd.

(University Correspondence College Press),

157 DRURY LANE, W.C.

1906.

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

THE object kept in view throughout in writing this book was to produce a grammar, clearly and simply arranged, which should impart a sound general knowledge of Latin of the classical period, without encumbering the reader with a number of isolated forms and usages. The steady and increasing sale of the work since its first publication in 1892 would seem to indicate that a grammar so designed is found useful both in schools and by private students.

In order to distinguish points of fundamental importance from those which may be passed over at first, use has been made of a considerable variety of types. This principle has been extended to the classified lists of verbs with irregular perfects and supines—the commoner verbs being printed in heavy type—and also to the alphabetical lists of verbs; the latter is intended for the purposes of revision and reference.

In the syntax the constructions found in simple sentences are treated first, and are followed by an account of the various kinds of dependent clauses used in complex sentences. Rules relating to individual words are collected in a chapter by themselves (ch. xlvii.). The examples in the syntax are drawn, to a great extent, from the classics most usually read, so that even the beginner may recognise some familiar sentences among them.

The point of view throughout the book is that of translation from Latin, though a few cautions are given here and there with regard to usages that should not be imitated; translation into Latin has already been dealt with in this series in a volume entitled *Latin Composition*.

The chief change introduced in the fourth edition is to be found in the tables of the regular conjugations: the commonest meanings of the subjunctives in principal sentences have been inserted in the paradigms, and the more important usages in dependent clauses have also been indicated by means of English conjunctions added in brackets.

The chief authorities on which this book is based are Neue, Dräger, Roby, and Lewis & Short; but various other writers have been consulted occasionally. I have pleasure in repeating here the acknowledgment made in the Preface to the First Edition with regard to my indebtedness to my colleague, Mr. W. F. Masom; his constant assistance and painstaking revision amply justify the appearance of his name on the title-page. I received also, when engaged on this book, many valuable suggestions from two other members of the staff of University Correspondence College, Mr. A. H. Allcroft (Oxon.) and Mr. F. G. Plaistowe, Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge.

B. J. H.

BURLINGTON HOUSE, CAMBRIDGE.

March, 1900.

CONTENTS.

PART I.: ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION	1
II. PARTS OF SPEECH	4
III. SUBSTANTIVES	5
IV.—VIII. THE FIVE DECLENSIONS	10
IX. IRREGULARITIES IN THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES	28
X. GREEK SUBSTANTIVES	34
XI. GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES	37
XII. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES	43
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	53
XIV. THE NUMERALS	57
XV. PRONOUNS	62
XVI. REMARKS ON VERBS	72
XVII. THE VERB <i>SUM</i>	78
XVIII. THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS	80
XIX. THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH	108
XX. DEPONENT VERBS	110
XXI. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS	116
XXII. IRREGULARITIES IN THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS	132
XXIII. IRREGULAR VERBS	134
XXIV. DEFECTIVE VERBS	144
XXV. IMPERSONAL VERBS	145
XXVI. ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS	146

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXVII. ADVERBS	160
XXVIII. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	165
XXIX. PREPOSITIONS	166
XXX. CONJUNCTIONS	168
XXXI. INTERJECTIONS	170
PART II.: FORMATION OF CERTAIN CLASSES OF WORDS.	
XXXII. SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES	171
XXXIII. DERIVED AND COMPOUND VERBS	175
XXXIV. INSEPARABLE PARTICLES	178
PART III.: SYNTAX.	
XXXV. SENTENCES	179
XXXVI. VERBS, TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE: USE OF THE VOICES.	181
XXXVII. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE: CONCORDS	183
XXXVIII. SUBSTANTIVES: USE OF CASES AND NUMBERS	187
XXXIX. VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES	216
XL. QUESTIONS	229
XLI. VERBS: NUMBER AND PERSON	231
XLII. MOODS AND TENSES IN SIMPLE SENTENCES	232
XLIII. COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE	239
XLIV. COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE	245
XLV. COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING AN ADVERBIAL CLAUSE	249
XLVI. CLAUSES DEPENDENT ON AN INFINITIVE OR DE- PENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE, <i>ORATIO OBLIQUA</i> , AND TABLE OF SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES	265
XLVII. CONSTRUCTIONS AND USAGES OF CERTAIN WORDS	274
APPENDIX	289
INDEX	299

PART I.: ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Classical Latin, *i.e.* Latin of the best period, is the language of Roman literature during the century preceding the death of the Emperor Augustus (A.D. 14).

ALPHABET.

§ 2. The Latin alphabet is the same as that now in use for writing English, except that it has no W.

In the classical period one form (I) served for the vowel I and the consonant J, and accordingly the form J is not used in current editions of the ancient authors or in Latin words in this book.

U and V were also denoted by the same form (V), but the modern distinction has, in deference to custom and for convenience' sake, been retained in this book, U (u) being used as a vowel and also after Q.

NOTE.—In some texts of Latin writers u is not admitted after u or v. Either it is replaced by o, *e.g.* *vulgūs* (= *vulgūs*), *common people*, *ēquūs* (= *ēquūs*), *horse*; or c is substituted for qu, *e.g.* *ēcūs* (= *ēquūs*). Some editors prefer ū to i before m in superlatives and some other words; *e.g.* *maxīmūs* (= *maxīmūs*), *greatest*.

MARKS OF QUANTITY.

§ 3. Vowels are said to be of long or short quantity, according to the time occupied by their pronunciation. Thus in the English word *fumigated* u and a are of long quantity, i and e of short quantity.

The sign (˘) denotes that the quantity of the vowel over which it is placed is long, the sign (˘) denotes that the quantity of the vowel is short, and the sign (˘) is placed over vowels that may be either long or short.

§ 4. Our knowledge of the quantities of Latin vowels is mainly derived from the poets, Latin metre depending on quantity, not, as English metre, on accent. The quantity, however, of which metre takes account is, strictly speaking, not that of *vowels*, but that of *syllables*; and although a syllable containing a long vowel is always long, a syllable containing a short vowel is short only if its vowel is not followed by two consonants or by x, z, or consonantal i (= j). Hence it is impossible to ascertain from the poets the natural length

of vowels followed by two consonants, *x*, *z*, or consonantal *i*; but philological research has now settled the quantity of most of such vowels. The subject, however, is not one that need trouble a beginner.

A syllable with a short vowel may be either long or short if its vowel be followed by two consonants of which the first is a mute (*b*, *p*; *g*, *c*; *d*, *t*) or *f*, and the second *l* or *r*. The mark (◌) is often placed over such vowels; e.g. *pātrēs*, plural of *pāter*, *father*.

The final syllable of a word ending in *m* was either made long in poetry, owing to the following word beginning with a consonant, or, if the following word began with a vowel, the final *m* and the vowel preceding it were, as far as the metre was concerned, treated as non-existent. For instance the words *monstrum horrendum ingens*, *huge dreadful monster*, make only five syllables in verse: *monstr' horrend' ingens*. Hence the quantity of the vowel preceding a final *m* cannot be ascertained. It is customarily pronounced short.

§ 5. In this grammar the quantity of every vowel is marked, except in the case of—

- (1) diphthongs (these are always long);
- (2) vowels followed in the same word by two consonants or by *x* or *z* (but see § 4, second paragraph);
- (3) vowels preceding *m* at the end of a word.

Observe also :—

- (4) When the letter *i* occurs in this book without a mark of quantity in a position not included in the above three exceptions, it is consonantal; e.g. *iāciō* (= *jāciō*), *I throw*.

ACCENTUATION.

§ 6. Latin words of two syllables are accentuated on the first syllable (e.g. *pāter*, *father*; *māter*, *mother*), i.e. the first syllable is pronounced with more stress than the second, though the stress is not so marked as in the English words *fāther*, *mōther*.

Latin words of more than two syllables are accentuated on the penultimate (last syllable but one) if that syllable is long, e.g. *sōrōrēs*, *sisters*; but on the ante-penultimate (last syllable but two) if the penultimate is short, e.g. *dōminūs*, *lord*; *fāmiliā*, *household*. Accordingly *tēnēbrae*, *darkness*, is pronounced *tēnēbrae* or *tēnébrae*.

Obs. The mark of accentuation is not used in writing or printing Latin.

PRONUNCIATION.

§ 7. There are two ways of pronouncing Latin at present common in England: (1) as English, but with final *e* never mute (*e.g.* *măre*, *sea*, is a word of two syllables); (2) as the Romans are supposed to have pronounced it.

§ 8. The following are the rules of the latter method:—

CONSONANTS: *C*, always hard, as in *can*.

G, " " " " *go*.

I (in some books printed *J*), as *y* in *ye*.

B, always rolled, as *rr* in *furrier*.

S, always sharp, as in *hiss* (not as in *his*).

V, as *w* in *we*.

X, always as *cs*, not *gs*.

Z, as *dz* in *adze*.

COMBINATIONS: *BS*, as *ps*; *e.g.* *trabs*, *beam*, is pronounced *trraps*.

CH, *PH*, *TH*, as *c*, *p*, *t*, followed by aspirate; compare *inkhorn*, *loophole*, *boathouse*.

GU (before a vowel), as *gu* in *language*.

QU, as *qu* in *queen*.

SU (in *suādēō*, *I recommend*; *suāvīs*, *sweet*, *suescō*, *I become accustomed*; and words formed from these), as *sw* in *sweet*.

The other consonants have their normal English value; *t* is never to be pronounced *sh* as in *diction*.

VOWELS: *ā*, as second *a* in *papa*.

ă, as first *a* in *papa*.

ē, " *ē* in *fête*.

ĕ, " *e* in *set*.

ī, " second *i* in *quinine*.

î, " first *i* in *quinine*.

ō, " " *o* in *follow*.

ô, " " *o* in *follow*.

ū, " *oo* in *boot*.

û, " *oo* in *foot*.

ȳ, like Latin *i* uttered with rounded lips.

ȳ, " " *i* " "

DIPHTHONGS: *ae*, as *ea* in *pear*.*

au, " *ou* in *house*.

oe, " *oi* in *boil*.

ei, " *ei* in *eight*,

eu, " *eu* in *feud*,

ui, " *we*,

} rarely used.

NOTE.—The true pronunciation of the diphthongs is best ascertained by pronouncing the vowels of which they are composed quickly one after the other; the sounds indicated above are only approximations.

Obs. The learner should as occasion requires refer to the above rules for pronunciation until he is thoroughly familiar with them.

* This is the usual pronunciation in England; according to recent authorities it should be approximately as *i* in *side*.

CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech in Latin :—

1. Substantive	} declined	} inflected.
2. Adjective		
3. Pronoun		
4. Verb	} conjugated	}
5. Adverb		
6. Preposition	} not inflected.	}
7. Conjunction		
8. Interjection		

NOTE.—Adverbs, though not subject to any other change, have *Degrees of Comparison* (§ 250).

When we say that a word is “inflected,” we mean that to a certain unchangeable portion of the word, called the “base,” suffixes are added. This system of inflexion is in substantives, adjectives, and pronouns called “declension”; in verbs it is called “conjugation.”

As an example of declension in English the word *child* may be taken: from it are formed by suffixes *child's*, *children*, *children's*. Similarly in the conjugation of the verb *to love* there occur the forms *lovest*, *loves*, *loved*, *lovedst*.

In Latin inflexion plays a much more important part than it does in English, and it is absolutely impossible to ascertain the meaning of a Latin sentence without paying attention to the suffix of every inflected word.

Obs. The department of grammar that deals with inflexion is termed “accidence.”

CHAPTER III.—SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 10. Latin substantives are of **three genders**—masculine, feminine, and neuter. As in English, substantives denoting persons of the male sex are masculine, and those denoting persons of the female sex are feminine; but other substantives, instead of being all neuter, are in Latin some masculine, some feminine, some neuter.

(In this book, m. = masculine, f. = feminine, c. = common, i.e. either masculine or feminine, n. = neuter.)

Substantives have **inflexions** that indicate (*a*) **number** and (*b*) **case**.

§ 11. There are in Latin, as in English, **two numbers**—singular and plural.

§ 12. Latin substantives have **six cases**.

[To illustrate the use of the cases here and in § 18, the following words have been employed :—

Substantives (all of the First Declension, § 16).

cōpiā, *plenty*.

cōronā, *wreath*.

cūrā, *care*.

ēpistōlā, *letter*.

fi-liā, *daughter*.

glōriā, *glory*.

insulā, *island*.

Kālendae (pl.), *Calends* (the Roman name for the first day of each month).

neglēgentiā, *heedlessness*.

portā, *gate*.

pūellā, *girl*.

rēginā, *queen*.

Rōmā, *Rome*.

rōsā, *rose*.

sūperbiā, *pride*.

Verbs.

āmāt, (*he, she*) *loves*; āmātūr,

(*he, she*) *is loved*.

cānīt, (*he, she*) *sings*; cānunt,

(*they*) *sing*.

dāt, (*he, she*) *gives*.

ērīt, (*he, she*) *will be*.

est, (*he, she*) *is*; sunt, (*they*) *are*.

mūnīt, (*he, she*) *fortifies*; mūnītūr,

(*it*) *is being fortified*.

pārēt, (*he, she*) *is obedient*.

vēnī, *come (thou)*; vēnītē, *come*

(*ye*).

vēnīt, (*he, she*) *comes*.

Prepositions.

ā (before a vowel or *h, āb*), *from*.

by (with ablative).

ād, *to* (with accusative).

cum, *with* (with ablative).

īn, *in* (with ablative).]

NOTE.—Where *A* (the subject) performs an action on *B* (direct object) whereby *C* (indirect object) is affected, *A* is nominative, *B* accusative, *C* dative; this is illustrated by the first of the above two examples. In the second example, the verb being intransitive, there is no direct object (*B*), but the indirect object (*C*) is, as before, in the dative.

(6) The **ablative** has three chief significations, in each of which it is used sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition:—

- (a) **local and temporal**, denoting *place where* or *time when*, and usually rendered by the English preposition **in**;
- (b) **instrumental**, denoting that with which (*instrument*) a thing is done, or the *manner* in which it is done, and usually rendered by the English preposition **with**;
- (c) **ablative proper** (ablation = taking away), denoting *place whence*, and usually rendered by the English preposition **from**;

E.g., (a) Place where (with preposition):

in cōrōnā sunt rōsae.
in the wreath are roses.

Time when (without preposition):

Kālendīs vēnī.
come on the Calends.

(b) Instrument (without preposition):

rēgīnā insulam portīs mūnīt.
the queen fortifies the island with gates.

Manner (with preposition):

insulā cum cūrā mūnītūr.
the island is being fortified with care.

(c) Place whence (generally with preposition):

pūellā ā portā vēnīt.
the girl comes from the gate.

(7) A seventh case, the **locative**, is found in the declension of some names of towns and a few other words. It has the same signification as the local use of the ablative, viz. *place where*.

E.g., rēginā Rōmae est.
the queen is at Rome.

NOTE 1.—It will be observed that, of the above examples of case-usage, the examples of the genitive alone contain no verb. The reason is that the genitive shows the relation of the substantive to another substantive in the same sentence; whereas the nominative, accusative, dative, ablative, and locative show the relation of the substantive to the verb. The vocative stands out of the sentence altogether.

NOTE 2.—It will also be observed that the order of words in the above Latin sentences differs from the order of the English. In Latin the extensive use of inflexions makes the order of words less essential to the meaning of the sentence than it is in English; but there is a normal order in sentences such as the above, viz.: (1) subject, (2) indirect object, (3) direct object, (4) ablative, (5) verb.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 13. There are five declensions of substantives, i.e. Latin substantives are severally declined in five different ways.

Dictionaries indicate to which declension a substantive belongs by giving after the nominative singular the suffix of the genitive singular.

The declensions are also known according to the characteristic vowel of the genitive plural, as follows:—

	Gen. Sing. Suffix.	Gen. Pl. Suffix.	Characteristic.
First Declension	ae	Ārum	A
Second „	i	Ōrum	O
Third „	is	um or ūm	Consonant or I
Fourth „	ūs	Ūm	U
Fifth „	ēi	Ērum	E

§ 14. The base of a substantive, *i.e.* the invariable part to which the case-suffixes are added, can always be ascertained by cutting off the suffix from the genitive singular; but, except with substantives of the third declension, and those of the second declension which end in *r*, the base is more readily ascertained from the nominative singular by cutting off—

	in the first declension	ă,
„	second	„ ūs or um,
„	fourth	„ ūs or ū,
„	fifth	„ ēs,

as is indicated by the hyphen in the examples given in the following pages.

The learner must bear in mind that it is impossible for him to “decline” a substantive, *i.e.* to enumerate the forms proper to the several cases, until he has ascertained the base to which the suffixes are to be added.

§ 15. The following remarks apply to all the declensions:—

- (1) The vocative in Latin substantives is always the same as the nominative, except in the singular of substantives of the second declension with nominative singular in *ūs*.
- (2) The accusative of all neuter substantives is the same as the nominative and vocative, both in the singular and in the plural. In the plural of Latin neuter substantives these three cases always end in *ă*.
- (3) The ablative plural is always the same in form as the dative plural.

CHAPTER IV.—FIRST (OR A) DECLENSION.

§ 16. Example: *mensă* (f.*), *table*. Base, *mens-*.

Singular.		Plural.
<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>mens-ă</i>	<i>mens-ae</i>
<i>Vocative.</i>	<i>mens-ă</i>	* <i>mens-ae</i>
<i>Accusative.</i>	<i>mens-am</i>	<i>mens-ās</i>
<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>mens-ae</i>	<i>mens-ārum</i>
<i>Dative.</i>	<i>mens-ae</i>	<i>mens-īs</i>
<i>Ablative.</i>	<i>mens-ā</i>	<i>mens-īs</i>

For the signification of the several cases, see the table on the next page.

Obs. The difference in the quantity (see § 3) of the suffix in the nominative and ablative singular must be carefully marked in pronunciation, *ă* being sounded as the first *a* in *papa*, and *ā* as the second (or, if the "English" pronunciation is adopted, as *a* in *baker*).

§ 17. In the first declension the locative has been displaced by the local ablative, except in the names of towns (singular number); in these words it has the same form as the genitive singular. Thus *Rōmă*, *Rome*, has locative *Rōmae* (§ 12, 7).

NOTE.—*MILITĀ*, *warfare*, also has locative *militiae*, *at the wars*.

For irregularities in the first declension, see §§ 41-43.

For Greek substantives of the first declension, see § 62.

For the gender of substantives of this declension, see § 71.

* Inanimate objects, though almost always neuter in English, are in Latin some masculine, some feminine, some neuter.

§ 18.

TABLE OF CASE-MEANINGS (SINGULAR AND PLURAL).

EXAMPLE: *püellä, girl.*

	Singular.	Plural.
	as in <i>püellä cānūt</i> <i>the girl sings</i>	as in <i>püellae cānunt</i> <i>the girls sing</i>
<i>Nom. girl</i> (subject)	" (predicate with verb <i>to be</i>) <i>rēgīnā est püellā</i> <i>the queen is a girl</i>	" (predicate with verb <i>to be</i>) <i>rēgīnae sunt püellae</i> <i>the queens are girls</i>
<i>Voc. girl</i> ! (addressed)	" <i>vēnī, püellā!</i> <i>come, girl!</i>	" <i>vēnītē, püellae!</i> <i>come, girls!</i>
<i>Acc. girl</i> (direct object)	" <i>rēgīnā püellam āmāt</i> <i>the queen loves the girl</i>	" <i>rēgīnā püellās āmāt</i> <i>the queen loves the girls</i>
" (after many propositions)	" <i>rēgīnā ād püellam vēnīt</i> <i>the queen comes to the girl</i>	" <i>rēgīnā ād püellās vēnīt</i> <i>the queen comes to the girls</i>
<i>Gen. girl's</i> or of a girl	" <i>püellae rōsā</i> <i>the girl's rose</i>	" <i>püellārum rōsae</i> <i>the girls' roses</i>
<i>Dat. girl</i> or to a girl (indirect object)	" <i>rēgīnā püellae rōsam dāt</i> <i>the queen gives the girl a rose, or the queen gives a rose to the girl</i>	" <i>rēgīnā püellis rōsās dāt</i> <i>the queen gives the girls roses, or the queen gives roses to the girls</i>
<i>Abi.</i> {	(in) a girl (local)	(in) girls (local)
	(from) a girl (ablative proper)	(from) girls (ablative proper)
	(by) a girl (§ 376)	(by) girls
	" <i>est in püellā superbā</i> <i>there is pride in the girl</i>	" <i>est in püellis superbā</i> <i>there is pride in the girls</i>
	" <i>ēpistolā ā püellā vēnīt</i> <i>a letter comes from the girl</i>	" <i>ēpistolā ā püellis vēnīt</i> <i>a letter comes from the girls</i>
	" <i>rēgīnā ā püellā āmātūr</i> <i>the queen is loved by the girl</i>	" <i>rēgīnā ā püellis āmātūr</i> <i>the queen is loved by the girls</i>

CHAPTER V.—SECOND (OR 0) DECLENSION.

§ 19. Substantives of this declension may be arranged as follows:—

- (1) Masculines (and a few feminines) with nom. sing. suffix -ūs;
- (2) Masculines with nom. sing. suffix -ēr;
- (3) Neuters with nom. sing. suffix -um.

(1) Example: dōmīnūs (m.), *lord*. Base, dōmīn-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> dōmīn-ūs	dōmīn-ī
<i>Voc.</i> dōmīn-ē	dōmīn-ī
<i>Acc.</i> dōmīn-um	dōmīn-ōs
<i>Gen.</i> dōmīn-ī	dōmīn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> dōmīn-ō	dōmīn-īs
<i>Abl.</i> dōmīn-ō	dōmīn-īs

(2) Example: māgīstēr (m.), *master*. Base, māgīstr-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> māgīstēr	māgīstr-ī
<i>Voc.</i> māgīstēr	māgīstr-ī
<i>Acc.</i> māgīstr-um	māgīstr-ōs
<i>Gen.</i> māgīstr-ī	māgīstr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> māgīstr-ō	māgīstr-īs
<i>Abl.</i> māgīstr-ō	māgīstr-īs

Obs. The vocative singular has the same form as the nominative. In the other cases ē is dropped before r.

A few substantives, however, retain ē before r throughout.

Example: pŭēr (m.), *boy*. Base, pŭēr-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> pŭēr	pŭēr-ī
<i>Voc.</i> pŭēr	pŭēr-ī
<i>Acc.</i> pŭēr-um	pŭēr-ōs
<i>Gen.</i> pŭēr-ī	pŭēr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> pŭēr-ō	pŭēr-īs
<i>Abl.</i> pŭēr-ō	pŭēr-īs

Like **pŭēr** are declined **sōcēr**, *father-in-law*; **gēnēr**, *son-in-law*; **Lībēr**, a name of Bacchus, god of wine; and **libēri** (pl. only), *children*.

Note **sōcēr**, **gēnēr**, **libēri**,
And **Lībēr**, god of revelry;
Like **pŭēr**, these retain the e.

With these may be classed **vīr** (m.), *man*. Base, **vīr-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> vīr	vīr-ī
<i>Voc.</i> vīr	vīr-ī
<i>Acc.</i> vīr-um	vīr-ōs
<i>Gen.</i> vīr-ī	vīr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> vīr-ō	vīr-īs
<i>Abl.</i> vīr-ō	vīr-īs

Words declined like **vīr** are its compounds **trīumvīr**, *member of a commission of three*; **dēcemvīr**, *member of a commission of ten*, etc.

(3) Example: **regnum** (n.), *kingdom*. Base, **regn-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> regn-um	regn-ā
<i>Gen.</i> regn-ī	regn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> regn-ō	regn-īs
<i>Abl.</i> regn-ō	regn-īs

§ 20. In the second declension, as in the first, the locative has been displaced by the local ablative, except in the names of towns (singular number); in these words it has the same form as the genitive singular. Thus **Cōrīnthūs**, *Corinth*, has locative **Cōrīnthī**.

NOTE.—**Hūmūs**, *ground*, also has locative **hūmī**.

For irregularities in the second declension, see §§ 44-47.

For Greek substantives of the second declension, see § 63.

For the gender of substantives of this declension with nom. sing. in -ūs, see § 72.

CHAPTER VI.—THIRD (OR CONSONANT AND I) DECLENSION.

[In this declension the base (*i.e.* the invariable part of the word, to which the suffixes are added) is seldom ascertainable from the form of the nom. sing., and nothing but practice will surmount the difficulty. It is therefore necessary always to learn the gen. sing. as well as the nom. sing. of substantives of the third declension.]

Many of the words here given are declined alike, and are inserted as illustrations of the changes which the base undergoes in the nom. sing.]

§ 21. Substantives of this declension fall into two main classes :—

(I.) Those which have genitive plural ending in **-um** preceded by a consonant (consonant-nouns).

(II.) Those which have genitive plural ending in **-ium** (I-nouns).

The suffixes in this declension also vary according as the substantive is (*a*) masculine or feminine, or (*b*) neuter.

The examples are arranged as follows :—

I. (*a*) Masculine and feminine consonant-substantives.

(*b*) Neuter " "

II. (*a*) Masculine and feminine I-substantives.

(*b*) Neuter

I. (*a*) MASCULINE AND FEMININE CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

These (with the exception of the words mentioned in § 36) are **imparisyllabic**, *i.e.* the number of syllables in the nom. sing. is less than the number of syllables in the gen. sing. (*unpār = unequal*).

§ 22. The nom. sing. frequently ends in **-s**.

Example : *hiems* (f.), *winter*. Base, *hiēm-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>hiēm-s</i>	<i>hiēm-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>hiēm-em</i>	<i>hiēm-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>hiēm-īs</i>	<i>hiēm-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>hiēm-ī</i>	<i>hiēm-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>hiēm-ē</i>	<i>hiēm-ībūs</i>

Often the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a change of vowel (ē to ī).

Example : *princeps* (c.), *chief*. Base, *princīp-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>princep-s</i>	<i>princīp-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>princīp-em</i>	<i>princīp-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>princīp-īs</i>	<i>princīp-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>princīp-ī</i>	<i>princīp-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>princīp-ē</i>	<i>princīp-ībūs</i>

§ 23. A dental (d or t) at the end of the base is dropped before the **-s** of the nom. sing.

First Example : *lāpis* (m.), *stone*. Base, *lāpīd-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>lāpī-s</i>	<i>lāpīd-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>lāpīd-em</i>	<i>lāpīd-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>lāpīd-īs</i>	<i>lāpīd-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>lāpīd-ī</i>	<i>lāpīd-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>lāpīd-ē</i>	<i>lāpīd-ībūs</i>

Second Example (ā long throughout) : *aetās* (f.), *age*. Base, *aetāt-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>aetā-s</i>	<i>aetāt-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>aetāt-em</i>	<i>aetāt-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>aetāt-īs</i>	<i>aetāt-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>aetāt-ī</i>	<i>aetāt-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>aetāt-ē</i>	<i>aetāt-ībūs</i>

NOTE.—An irregular gen. pl. *aetātium* is found occasionally. So *civītās*, *citizenship*, *state*, has gen. pl. *civītātium*, as also have some other similar substantives.

Third Example (*ū* long throughout): *pālūs* (f.), *marsh*.
Base, *pālūd-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>pālū-s</i>	<i>pālūd-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>pālūd-em</i>	<i>pālūd-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>pālūd-īs</i>	<i>pālūd-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>pālūd-ī</i>	<i>pālūd-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>pālūd-ě</i>	<i>pālūd-ībūs</i>

Fourth Example (with vowel change): *mīlēs* (m.), *soldier*.
Base, *mīlīt-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>mīlē-s</i>	<i>mīlīt-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>mīlīt-em</i>	<i>mīlīt-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>mīlīt-īs</i>	<i>mīlīt-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>mīlīt-ī</i>	<i>mīlīt-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>mīlīt-ě</i>	<i>mīlīt-ībūs</i>

§ 24. A guttural (*c* or *g*) followed by the final *-s* of the
nom. sing. becomes *-x*.

First Example: *lex* (f.), *law*. Base, *lēg-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>lex</i>	<i>lēg-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>lēg-em</i>	<i>lēg-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>lēg-īs</i>	<i>lēg-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>lēg-ī</i>	<i>lēg-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>lēg-ě</i>	<i>lēg-ībūs</i>

Second Example: *dux* (c.), *leader*. Base, *dūc-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>dux</i>	<i>dūc-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>dūc-em</i>	<i>dūc-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>dūc-īs</i>	<i>dūc-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>dūc-ī</i>	<i>dūc-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>dūc-ě</i>	<i>dūc-ībūs</i>

Third Example (with vowel change): *iūdex* (c.), *judge*.
Base, *iūdic-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>iūdex</i>	<i>iūdic-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>iūdic-em</i>	<i>iūdic-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>iūdic-īs</i>	<i>iūdic-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>iūdic-ī</i>	<i>iūdic-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>iūdic-ē</i>	<i>iūdic-ībūs</i>

§ 25• Here must be classed a few parisyllabic consonant-substantives (see § 36) with nom. sing. ending in *-ēs* or *-īs* (one in *-x*).

First Example: *cānis* (c.), *dog*. Base, *cān-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>cān-īs</i>	<i>cān-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>cān-em</i>	<i>cān-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>cān-īs</i>	<i>cān-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>cān-ī</i>	<i>cān-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>cān-ē</i>	<i>cān-ībūs</i>

Second Example: *sēnex* (c.), *old man*. Bases, *sēnec-* and *sēn-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>sēnex</i>	<i>sēn-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>sēn-em</i>	<i>sēn-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>sēn-īs</i>	<i>sēn-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>sēn-ī</i>	<i>sēn-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>sēn-ē</i>	<i>sēn-ībūs</i>

§ 26. Often *n* at the end of the base is dropped in the nom. sing.

First Example: *lēō* (m.), *lion*. Base, *lēōn-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>lēō</i>	<i>lēōn-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>lēōn-em</i>	<i>lēōn-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>lēōn-īs</i>	<i>lēōn-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>lēōn-ī</i>	<i>lēōn-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>lēōn-ē</i>	<i>lēōn-ībūs</i>

Second Example (with *ō* in nom. sing. and *ī* in base):
virgō (f.), *maiden*. Base, *virgīn-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>virgō</i>	<i>virgīn-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>virgīn-em</i>	<i>virgīn-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>virgīn-īs</i>	<i>virgīn-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>virgīn-ī</i>	<i>virgīn-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>virgīn-ē</i>	<i>virgīn-ībūs</i>

§ 27. Substantives with base ending in a liquid (*l, n, r*) often have nom. sing. of the same form as the base.

First Example: *consūl* (m.), *consul* (chief civil and military official at Rome). Base, *consūl-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>consūl</i>	<i>consūl-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>consūl-em</i>	<i>consūl-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>consūl-īs</i>	<i>consūl-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>consūl-ī</i>	<i>consūl-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>consūl-ē</i>	<i>consūl-ībūs</i>

Second Example: *ansēr* (m.), *gander*. Base, *ansēr-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>ansēr</i>	<i>ansēr-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>ansēr-em</i>	<i>ansēr-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ansēr-īs</i>	<i>ansēr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ansēr-ī</i>	<i>ansēr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ansēr-ē</i>	<i>ansēr-ībūs</i>

Pătēr, *father*; *mătēr*, *mother*; *frătēr*, *brother*; *accīpītēr*, *hawk*, have *e* before *r* in the nom. and voc. sing. only.

Example: *pătēr* (m.), *father*. Base, *pătr-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>pătēr</i>	<i>pătr-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>pătr-em</i>	<i>pătr-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>pătr-īs</i>	<i>pătr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>pătr-ī</i>	<i>pătr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>pătr-ē</i>	<i>pătr-ībūs</i>

§ 28. A final *s* (not a suffix, but an integral part of the word) changes to *r* in the base.

Example: *flōs* (m.), *flower*. Base, *flōr-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>flōs</i>	<i>flōr-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>flōr-em</i>	<i>flōr-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>flōr-īs</i>	<i>flōr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>flōr-ī</i>	<i>flōr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>flōr-ē</i>	<i>flōr-ībūs</i>

Many such substantives have two forms in the nom. sing., that ending in *r* like the base being the commoner.

Example: *arbōr* or *arbōs* (f.), *tree*. Base, *arbōr-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>arbōr</i> or <i>arbōs</i>	<i>arbōr-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>arbōr-em</i>	<i>arbōr-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>arbōr-īs</i>	<i>arbōr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>arbōr-ī</i>	<i>arbōr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>arbōr-ē</i>	<i>arbōr-ībūs</i>

I. (b) NEUTER CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 29. If the nom. sing. ends in *n* or *t*, the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a vowel change in the base.

First Example: *nōmēn* (n.), *name*. Base, *nōmīn-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> <i>nōmēn</i>	<i>nōmīn-ā</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>nōmīn-īs</i>	<i>nōmīn-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>nōmīn-ī</i>	<i>nōmīn-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>nōmīn-ē</i>	<i>nōmīn-ībūs</i>

Second Example: *cāpūt* (n.), *head*. Base, *cāpīt-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> <i>cāpūt</i>	<i>cāpīt-ā</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>cāpīt-īs</i>	<i>cāpīt-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>cāpīt-ī</i>	<i>cāpīt-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>cāpīt-ē</i>	<i>cāpīt-ībūs</i>

§ 30. Final **s** in the nom. sing. changes to **r** in the base.

First Example : *crūs* (n.), *leg.* Base, *crūr-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> <i>crūs</i>	<i>crūr-ă</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>crūr-īs</i>	<i>crūr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>crūr-ī</i>	<i>crūr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>crūr-ě</i>	<i>crūr-ībūs</i>

Second Example (with vowel change): *öpūs* (n.), *work*.
Base, *öpēr-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> <i>öpūs</i>	<i>öpēr-ă</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>öpēr-īs</i>	<i>öpēr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>öpēr-ī</i>	<i>öpēr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>öpēr-ě</i>	<i>öpēr-ībūs</i>

Third Example (with vowel change): *corpūs* (n.), *body*.
Base, *corpōr-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> <i>corpūs</i>	<i>corpōr-ă</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>corpōr-īs</i>	<i>corpōr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>corpōr-ī</i>	<i>corpōr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>corpōr-ě</i>	<i>corpōr-ībūs</i>

In a few substantives the nom. sing. ends in *-ūr*, as does also the base.

Example : *fulgūr* (n.), *lightning*. Base, *fulgūr-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> <i>fulgūr</i>	<i>fulgūr-ă</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>fulgūr-īs</i>	<i>fulgūr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>fulgūr-ī</i>	<i>fulgūr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>fulgūr-ě</i>	<i>fulgūr-ībūs</i>

II. (a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE I-SUBSTANTIVES.

To this class belong **parisyllabic** substantives (*i.e.* with an equal number of syllables in the nom. sing. and gen. sing. respectively), and substantives with base ending in two consonants, together with a few others mentioned in § 36.

§ 31: Parisyllabic I-substantives add **-ēs** or **-īs** to the base in the nom. sing.

First Example: **nūbēs** (f.), *cloud*. Base, **nūb-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> nūb-ēs .	nūb-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> nūb-em	nūb-ēs or -īs
<i>Gen.</i> nūb-īs	nūb-īum
<i>Dat.</i> nūb-ī	nūb-ībūs
<i>Abl.</i> nūb-ē	nūb-ībūs

Second Example: **hostīs** (c.), *enemy*. Base, **host-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> host-īs	host-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> host-em	host-ēs or -īs
<i>Gen.</i> host-īs	host-īum
<i>Dat.</i> host-ī	host-ībūs
<i>Abl.</i> host-ē	host-ībūs

Obs. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine I-substantives is generally printed with the ending **-ēs**, but the older and more correct ending **-īs** is sometimes used, especially in editions of the poets.

§ 32. A few of these I-substantives have an alternative abl. sing. ending in **-ī**; some have also an alternative acc. sing. ending in **-im**.

Examples: **nāvis** (f.), *ship*. Base, **nāv-**.

īmbēr (m.), *shower*. Base, **imbr-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> nāv-īs	nāv-ēs	īmbēr	imbr-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> nāv-em or -im	nāv-ēs or -īs	imbr-em	imbr-ēs or -īs
<i>Gen.</i> nāv-īs	nāv-īum	imbr-īs	imbr-īum
<i>Dat.</i> nāv-ī	nāv-ībūs	imbr-ī	imbr-ībūs
<i>Abl.</i> nāv-ē or -ī	nāv-ībūs	imbr-ē or -ī	imbr-ībūs

The more important substantives declined like **nāvis** are *classīs*, *fleet*; *puppīs*, *stern*; *clāvis*, *key*; *febris*, *fever*; *messīs*, *harvest*, *turris*, *tower*. *Sītīs*, *thirst*, and *tussīs*, *cough*, have only **-im** and **-ī** in acc. and abl. sing. respectively.

Cānālīs, *channel*; *ignīs*, *fire*; *sēcūrīs*, *axe*; and *śōdālīs*, *boon companion*, have abl. in **-ī**.

Febrīs, messīs, turrīs, clāvīs,
 Classis, puppīs, are (like nāvīs)
 Wout from im and ī to falter;
 Sītīs, tussīs never alter.
 I for ignīs and cānālīs,
 With sēcūrīs and sōdālīs.

Lintēr, *boat*; ūtēr, *leather bottle*; and ventēr, *stomach*, are declined like imbēr.

Restīs, *rope*, has acc. sing. restim or restem, abl. sing. restē.

§ 33. Substantives with base ending in two consonants have the suffix -s in the nom. sing.

First Example: urbs (f.), *city*. Base, urb-.

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. urb-s	urb-ēs
Acc. urb-em	urb-ēs or -īs
Gen. urb-īs	urb-īum
Dat. urb-ī	urb-ībūs
Abl. urb-ē	urb-ībūs

Second Example (with dental dropped before -s in the nom. sing.): dens (m.), *tooth*. Base, dent-.

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. den-s	dent-ēs
Acc. dent-em	dent-ēs or -īs
Gen. dent-īs	dent-īum
Dat. dent-ī	dent-ībūs
Abl. dent-ē	dent-ībūs

To these are to be added a few imparisyllabic substantives (see § 36) with base ending in one consonant. In some of these the final s of the nom. sing. is an integral part of the word, and changes to r in the base.

Example: mūs (c.), *mouse*. Base, mūr-.

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. mūs	mūr-ēs
Acc. mūr-em	mūr-ēs or -īs
Gen. mūr-īs	mūr-īum
Dat. mūr-ī	mūr-ībūs
Abl. mūr-ē	mūr-ībūs

II. (b) NEUTER I-SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 34. Substantives with nom. sing. ending in -ě drop the -ě in the base.

Example: mǎřě (n.), *sea*. Base, mǎř-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> mǎř-ě	mǎř-ĭa
<i>Gen.</i> mǎř-ĭs	not in use
<i>Dat.</i> mǎř-ĭ	mǎř-ĭbŭs
<i>Abl.</i> mǎř-ĭ	mǎř-ĭbŭs

§ 35. In substantives with nom. sing. ending in -ăl or -ăr a final -ě has been dropped and the last vowel of the base (if long) shortened.

First Example: ănimăl (n.), *animal*. Base, ănimăl-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> ănimăl	ănimăl-ĭă
<i>Gen.</i> ănimăl-ĭs	ănimăl-ĭum
<i>Dat.</i> ănimăl-ĭ	ănimăl-ĭbŭs
<i>Abl.</i> ănimăl-ĭ	ănimăl-ĭbŭs

Second Example: calcăr (n.), *spur*. Base, calcăr-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> calcăr	calcăr-ĭă
<i>Gen.</i> calcăr-ĭs	calcăr-ĭum
<i>Dat.</i> calcăr-ĭ	calcăr-ĭbŭs
<i>Abl.</i> calcăr-ĭ	calcăr-ĭbŭs

Ŏs (n.), *bone* (base, oss-), has gen. pl. ossĭum, but in other respects is a consonant-substantive.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> ōs	oss-ĭă
<i>Gen.</i> oss-ĭs	oss-ĭum
<i>Dat.</i> oss-ĭ	oss-ĭbŭs
<i>Abl.</i> oss-ĭ	oss-ĭbŭs

§ 36. On looking out a substantive of the third declension in a vocabulary or dictionary, the student will find (1) the nom. sing.; (2) the gen. sing. (whence, by taking off the suffix *is*, the base may be ascertained); (3) the gender. In order to decline the word fully it is necessary also to know whether it is a consonant-substantive or an *I*-substantive, or (in other words) whether the gen. pl. ends in *-um* or *-ium*.

This last point may be decided thus in the case of masculine and feminine words:—

Imparissyllabic substantives (*i.e.* those in which the number of syllables in the nom. sing. and the gen. sing. respectively is unequal) with base ending in a single consonant are consonant-substantives. (Gen. pl. *-um*.)

Parissyllabic substantives (*i.e.* those in which the number of syllables in the nom. sing. and gen. sing. respectively is equal), and substantives with base ending in two consonants, are *I*-substantives. (Gen. pl. *-ium*.)

These rules are subject to some few exceptions.

(a) The following parissyllabic words are consonant-substantives: *ambāgēs* (gen. pl. *ambāgum*), *circumlocution*; *cānis* (gen. pl. *cānum*), *dog*; *iūvenis* (gen. pl. *iūvenum*), *young man*; *sēnex* (gen. pl. *sēnum*), *old man*; *vātēs* (gen. pl. *vātum*), *prophet*; *vōlūcris* (gen. pl. *vōlūcerum*), *bird* (§ 25); *pātēr* (gen. pl. *pātrum*), *father*; *mātēr* (gen. pl. *mātrum*), *mother*; *frātēr* (gen. pl. *frātrum*), *brother*; *accipitēr* (gen. pl. *accipitrum*), *hawk* (§ 27).

(b) The following imparissyllabic words are *I*-substantives: *falx* (gen. pl. *falcium*), *sickle*; *faux* (gen. pl. *faucium*—in sing. only in use in abl. *faucē*), *throat*; *glis* (gen. pl. *glirium*), *dormouse*; *lis* (gen. pl. *litium*), *dispute*; *mās* (gen. pl. *mārium*), *male*; *mūs* (gen. pl. *mūrīum*), *mouse*; *nix* (gen. pl. *nivium*), *snow*; *vis* (gen. pl. *virium*), *force* (§ 33).

In *-ium* terminate *glis*, *lis*,

Mās, *mūs*, and *nix*, *falx*, *faux*, and *vis*;

But *-um* ends *iūvenis* and *frātēr*,

Ambāgēs, *vātēs*, *sēnex*, *pātēr*,

With *cānis*, *vōlūcris*, and *mātēr*.

Neuters of the third declension are *I*-substantives if the nom. sing. ends in *-ē*, *-āl*, or *-ār*; other neuters are consonant-substantives.

Exception: *ōs* (gen. pl. *ossium*), *bone* (§ 35).

§ 37. The locative case is not distinguishable from the, ablative in the third declension, except in a very few forms, and those of the singular number; *e.g.* *Karthāgō*, *Carthage*, has locative *Karthāgini*.

§ 38. The following is a synoptic view of the suffixes of substantives of the third declension:—

Singular. I. Consonant-Substantives.		Singular. II. I-Substantives.	
(a) Masc. or Fem.	(b) Neut.	(a) Masc. or Fem.	(b) Neut.
N. V. -s or none	none	-ēs, -īs, or -s	ē- or none
Acc. -em	none	-em (rarely -im)	ē- or none
Gen. -īs		-īs	
Dat. -ī		-ī	
Abl. -ē		-ē (rarely -ī)	-ī
Plural. I. Consonant-Substantives.		Plural. II. I-Substantives.	
(a) Masc. or Fem.	(b) Neut.	(a) Masc. or Fem.	(b) Neut.
N. V. -ēs	-ā	-ēs	-īā
Acc. -ēs	-ā	-ēs or -īs	-īā
Gen. -um		-īum	
Dat. -ībūs		-ībūs	
Abl. -ībūs		-ībūs	

For irregularities in the third declension, see §§ 48-50.

For Greek substantives of the third declension, see §§ 64-68.

For the gender of substantives of this declension, see §§ 73-76.

CHAPTER VII.—FOURTH (OR U) DECLENSION.

§ 39. This declension contains substantives of two classes:—

(1) Masculine (and some feminine) words, with nom. sing. ending in -ūs;

(2) Neuter words, with nom. sing. ending in -ū.

(1) Example: grādūs (m.), *step*. Base, grād-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> grād-ūs	grād-ūs
<i>Acc.</i> grād-um	grād-ūs
<i>Gen.</i> grād-ūs	grād-Ūum
<i>Dat.</i> grād-ūī	grād-ībūs
<i>Abl.</i> grād-ū	grād-ībūs

(2) Example: gēnū (n.), *knee*. Base, gēn-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> gēn-ū	gēn-ŭā
<i>Gen.</i> gēn-ūs	gēn-Ūum
<i>Dat.</i> gēn-ū	gēn-ībūs
<i>Abl.</i> gēn-ū	gēn-ībūs

For irregularities in the fourth declension, see §§ 51, 52.

For the gender of substantives of this declension with nom. sing. in -ūs, see § 77.

CHAPTER VIII.—FIFTH (OR **E**) DECLENSION.

§ 40. Example: *děs* (m. or f. in sing., m. in pl.), *day*.
Base, *dĭ-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> <i>dĭ-ēs</i>	<i>dĭ-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>dĭ-em</i>	<i>dĭ-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>dĭ-ēī</i>	<i>dĭ-Ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>dĭ-ēī</i>	<i>dĭ-ēbus</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>dĭ-ē</i>	<i>dĭ-ēbus</i>

The substantives of this declension are all feminine, except *děs* (§ 78).

NOTE.—The rule is that if the last letter of the base is a consonant, the gen. and dat. sing. end in *-ēī* (not *-ēi*); e.g. *fĭd-ēs*, *faith*, has gen. and dat. sing. *fĭd-ēī*.

For irregularities in the fifth declension, see §§ 53, 54.

CHAPTER IX.—IRREGULARITIES IN THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

FIRST DECLENSION (§§ 16-18).

§ 41. **Genitive Singular.** (1) In poetry the old suffix *-āi* is sometimes found instead of the ordinary *-ae*; *e.g.* *āquā*, *water*, occasionally in poetry has genitive *āquāi*.

(2) *Fāmillā*, *household*, has gen. sing. *fāmillās* when used in connection with *pātēr*, *mātēr*, *filīūs* or *filīā*. Thus, *pātēr fāmillās* or *pāterfāmillās*, *master of the house*; *mātēr fāmillās* or *māterfāmillās*, *mistress of the house*. (In the plural either *pātrēs fāmillās* or *pātrēs fāmillārum* may be used.)

§ 42. **Genitive Plural.** The suffix *-um* (instead of *-arum*) is found in the following words:—

- (1) **Patronymics** (§ 279), *e.g.* *Dardānīdae*, *descendants of Dardanus*, gen. *Dardānīdum*;
- (2) Some names of nations or tribes, *e.g.* *Lāpīthae*, *the Lapithae* (a Thessalian tribe), gen. *Lāpīthum*;
- (3) Substantives ending in *-cōlā* (denoting *dweller in*, cp. *cōlō*, *I cultivate, inhabit*), or *-gēnā* (denoting *born in*, cp. *gēnūs*, *birth*), *e.g.* *caelīcōlae*, *dwellers in heaven*, gen. *caelīcōlum*; *terrigēnae*, *earth-born people*, gen. *terrigēnum*;
- (4) *amphōrā*, *a jar*, gen. pl. *amphōrum*; *drachmā* (a Greek silver coin, somewhat smaller than a shilling), gen. pl. *drachmum*.

N.B.—Many of these words have also the regular gen. pl. suffix *-arum*.

§ 43. **Dative and Ablative Plural.** Some feminine substantives of the first declension which correspond to masculines in *-ūs* of the second declension have dat. and abl. pl. in *-ābūs*. In classical Latin this form is found only in *dēā*, *goddess*, which has dat. and abl. pl. *dēābūs*, to avoid confusion with *dēis*, one form of the dat. and abl. pl. of *dēūs*, *god* (§ 47), and *filīā*, *daughter*, which has dat. and abl. pl. *filīābūs*, the form *filīūs* being dat. and abl. pl. of *filīūs*, *son*.

SECOND DECLENSION (§§ 19, 20).

§ 44. **Vocative Singular.** Proper names ending in *-iūs* have voc. sing. in *-ī* instead of *-iē*; *e.g.* *Tullīūs*, voc. *Tullī*; *Vergīliūs*, voc. *Vergīlī*. So too *filīūs*, *son*, has voc. sing. *filī*. These contracted vocatives are, contrary to the rule in § 6, accented on the last syllable but one.

§ 45. **Genitive Singular.** Substantives with nom. sing. ending in -iūs often contract -īl to -ī in the gen. sing.: e.g. flūvīūs, *river*, gen. flūvī or flūvī; ingēnium, *ability*, gen. ingēnī or ingēnī. These contracted genitives are accentuated on the last syllable but one.

§ 46. **Genitive Plural.** The suffix -um may be used (as an alternative for -ōrum) in the gen. pl. of:—

- (1) Substantives denoting coins and measures, e.g. dēnāriūs (a silver coin rather larger than a sixpence), gen. pl. dēnārium; mōdiūs, *peck*, gen. pl. mōdium; nummūs, *coin*, gen. pl. nummum; also fābēr, *artificer*, has gen. pl. fabrum;
- (2) Some names of nations or tribes (in poetry), e.g. Rūtūlī (an ancient Italian tribe), gen. Rūtūlum;
- (3) Many other words in poetry, especially dēūs, *god*, gen. pl. dēum; divūs, *deity*, gen. pl. divum; vīr, *man*, gen. pl. vīrum.

§ 47. **Dēūs, god**, is thus declined:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. dēūs	dēī or dī
Acc. dēum	dēōs
Gen. dēī	dēōrum or (in poetry) dēum
Dat. dēō	dēīs, dīīs, or dīs
Abl. dēō	dēīs, dīīs, or dīs

Obs. The voc. sing. of dēūs is the same as the nominative.

Vīrūs, *venom*, and vulgūs, *populace*, are neuter, and therefore have acc. sing. of the same form as the nom. (Vulgūs is also found masculine, and then has acc. sing. vulgum.) These substantives have no plural. For pēlāgūs, see § 68.

THIRD DECLENSION (§§ 21-38).

§ 48. The following irregular nouns are in common use:—

Bōs (c.), *ox* or *cow*. Sūs (c.), *boar* or *sow*.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. bōs	bōvēs	N. V. sūs	sūēs
Acc. bōvem	bōvēs	Acc. sūem	sūēs
Gen. bōvīs	bōum	Gen. sūīs	sūum
Dat. bōvī	būbūs or bōbūs	Dat. sūī	sūībūs or sūbūs
Abl. bōvē	būbūs or bōbūs	Abl. sūē	sūībūs or sūbūs

Iuppītēr (m.), *Jupiter* (a Roman god). Iūs iūrāndum [frequently written as one word: iusiūrāndum] (n.), *oath*. (No plural.)

Singular.	Singular.
N. V. Iuppītēr	N. V. iūs iūrāndum
Acc. Iōvem	Acc. iūs iūrāndum
Gen. Iōvīs	Gen. iūrīs iūrāndī
Dat. Iōvī	Dat. iūrī iūrāndō
Abl. Iōvē	Abl. iūrē iūrāndō

- Obs.* 1. Iuppit̃er is made up of the base Iōv- and pit̃er (=pāt̃er).
Obs. 2. Each part iusiurandum is declined, viz. iūs (base iūr-),
obligation, and iurandum (verbal adj. from iūrō, *I swear*), *to be sworn*.
 NOTF.—Aeth̃er, the upper air, and āer, air, have Greek acc. sing.
 (§ 65) aeth̃ērā, āērā.

§ 49. The following substantives have nom. sing. differing unusually from the base:—

cārō (f.), *flesh*, gen. sing. carnīs.
 cūcūmīs (m.), *cucumber*, gen. sing. cūcūmērīs.
 fēmūr (n.), *thigh*, gen. sing. fēmōrīs or fēmīnīs.
 iēcūr (n.), *liver*, gen. sing. iēcōrīs or iēcīnōrīs.
 it̃er (n.), *journey*, gen. sing. it̃inērīs.
 sēnex (m.), *old man*, gen. sing. sēnīs.
 sūpellex (f.), *furniture*, gen. sing. sūpellectīlīs.

§ 50. The declension of the following substantives is defective:—

(F.) Aid (in sing.), *resources* (in pl.). (F.) Prayer.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. —	ōpēs	N. V. —	prēcēs
Acc. ōpem	ōpēs	Acc. prēcem	prēcēs
Gen. ōpis	ōpum	Gen. —	prēcum
Dat. —	ōpībūs	Dat. prēcī	prēcībūs
Abl. ōpē	ōpībūs	Abl. prēcē	prēcībūs

(F.) Alternation.

(F.) Force (in sing.), *strength* (in pl.).

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. —	vīcēs	N. V. vīs	vīrēs
Acc. vīcem	vīcēs or vīcīs	Acc. vīm	vīrēs or vīrīs
Gen. vīcis	vīcium	Gen. —	vīrium
Dat. —	vīcībūs	Dat. —	vīrībūs
Abl. vīcē	vīcībūs	Abl. vī	vīrībūs

Nēmō (c.), *no one*, has acc. nēmīnem and dat. nēmīnī. The gen. is supplied by nulliūs, and the abl. by nullō or nullā (see § 81).
 Nom. sing. fors (f.), *chance*; abl. sing. fortē.
 Abl. sing. spontē (f.), *choice*.

FOURTH DECLENSION (§ 39).

§ 51. Dative Singular. This case is sometimes found ending in -ū in substantives not of neuter gender; e.g. mētūs (m.), *fear*, has occasionally dative mētū.

§ 52. Dative and Ablative Plural. The following generally have dat. and abl. pl. ending in -ībūs instead of -ībūs: acūs, *needle*; arcūs, *bow*; artūs, *limb*; lacūs, *lake*; partūs, *birth*; trībūs, *tribe*.

Rhyme:—Six have ūbūs: arcūs, acūs,
 artūs, partūs, trībūs, lacūs

FIFTH DECLENSION (§ 40).

§ 53. **Genitive and Dative Singular.** These cases are sometimes found ending in -ē; thus *dīēs*, *day*, sometimes has gen. and dat. sing. *dīē* instead of *dīēi*, and similarly *fidēs*, *faith*, has *fidē* instead of *fidēi*.

§ 54. *Dīēs*, *day*, and *rēs*, *thing*, are the only substantives of this declension that have gen. dat. and abl. plural.

In *respublicā* (f.), *commonwealth*, each part of the word is declined, viz. *rēs*, *thing*, and *publicā*, fem. of the adjective *publicūs*, -ā, -um, *public*. The plural is rarely used; the singular (sometimes written as two words) is thus declined:—

• *N. V. respublicā*
Acc. rempublicam
Gen. rēipublicae
Dat. rēipublicae
Abl. rēpublicā

HETEROCLITE SUBSTANTIVES (i.e. BELONGING TO TWO DECLENSIONS).

§ 55. The following have singular and plural of different declensions:—

Singular.	Plural.
<i>balnē-um</i> , -ī, -ō (n.), (<i>private</i>) <i>bath.</i>	<i>balnē-ae</i> , -ās, -ārum, -īs (f.), <i>public baths.</i>
<i>dēlicī-um</i> , -ī, -ō (n.), (<i>delight</i>).	<i>dēlicī-ae</i> , -ās, -ārum, -īs (f.), (1) <i>delight</i> , (2) <i>pt.</i>
<i>ēpūl-um</i> , -ī, -ō (n.), (<i>banquet</i>).	<i>ēpūl-ae</i> , -ās, -ārum, -īs (f.).
<i>iūgēr-um</i> , -ī, -ō (n.), (<i>acre</i>).	<i>iūgēr-ā</i> , -um, -ībūs.
<i>vās</i> , <i>vās-īs</i> , -ī, -ē (n.), (<i>vessel</i>).	<i>vās-ā</i> , -ōrum, -īs.

§ 56. Some substantives (mostly names of trees) belonging to the second declension have also fourth declension forms; e.g. *laurūs*, *bay*, has in the singular gen. *laurī* or *laurūs*, abl. *laurō* or *laurū*; and in the plural nom. *laurī* or *laurūs*, acc. *laurōs* or *laurūs*. *Sēnātūs*, *senate*, belongs to the fourth declension, but sometimes has gen. sing. *sēnātī*.

Dōmūs (f.), *house*, belongs to the fourth declension, but prefers second declension forms in abl. sing. (*dōmō*), acc. pl. (*dōmōs*), and gen. pl. (*dōmōrum*), though even there fourth declension forms are occasionally found. The locative is *dōmī*.

Rhyme:—*Dōmō* for ablative we see,
Dōmōs, *dōmōrum* commonly;
 Bear locative *dōmī* in mind;
 The rest like *grādūs* is declined.

Some substantives belong to both first and fifth declensions; *luxuriā* or *luxuriēs*, *luxury*; *māteriā* or *māteriēs*, *timber*. *Rēquiēs* (f.), *rest*, has third and fifth declension forms, and is thus declined in the singular only, the plural not being in use:—

<i>N. V.</i>	<i>rēquī-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēquī-em</i> or <i>rēquīēt-em</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēquīēt-is</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēquī-ē</i> or <i>rēquīēt-ē</i>

Plebs, gen. *plēbis* (f.), *common people*, sometimes has nom. sing. *plēbēs* and gen. sing. *plēbēi*.

Vespēr (m.), *evening*, has in the singular acc. *vespērum*, gen. *vespēri* or *vespēris*, abl. *vespērē* or *vespērē*, locative *vespērī*; the plural is wanting. There is also a first declension form *vespērā* (f.), which is fully declined in the singular.

HETEROGENEOUS SUBSTANTIVES (*i.e.* WITH PLURAL DIFFERING IN GENDER FROM THE SINGULAR).

§ 57. The following are the more important words of this class:—

Singular.	Plural.
<i>carbāsūs</i> , -ī (f.), <i>linen</i> .	<i>carbāsā</i> , -ōrum (n.), <i>sails</i> .
<i>dīēs</i> , -ēī (f. or m.), <i>a day, set time</i> .	
<i>dīēs</i> , -ēī (m.), <i>a day (as a division of time)</i> .	<i>dīēs</i> , -ērū (m.), <i>days</i> .
<i>frēnum</i> , -ī (n.), <i>bridle</i> .	<i>frēnī</i> , -ōrum (m.).
	<i>frēnā</i> , -ōrum (n.).
<i>iōcūs</i> , -ī (m.), <i>jest</i> .	<i>iōcēi</i> , <i>iōcōrum</i> (m.).
	<i>iōcā</i> , <i>iōcōrum</i> (n.).
<i>lōcūs</i> , -ī (m.), <i>place</i> .	<i>lōcēi</i> , -ōrum (m.), <i>places</i> .
	<i>lōcā</i> , -ōrum (n.), <i>region</i> .
<i>rastrum</i> , -ī (n.), <i>harrow</i> .	<i>rastrī</i> , -ōrum (m.).
	<i>rastrā</i> , -ōrum (n.).

SUBSTANTIVES WITH SPECIAL MEANINGS IN THE PLURAL.

§ 58. The following are the more important:—

Singular.	Plural.
<i>aedēs</i> , -īs (f.), <i>temple</i> .	<i>aedēs</i> , -īum, <i>house</i> .
<i>āquā</i> , -ae (f.), <i>water</i> .	<i>āquae</i> , -arum, <i>medicinal springs</i> .
<i>auxilium</i> , -ī (n.), <i>help</i> .	<i>auxiliā</i> , -ōrum, <i>auxiliaries</i> .
<i>balnēum</i> , -ī (n.), (<i>private</i>) <i>bath</i> .	<i>balnēae</i> , -arum (f.), <i>public baths</i> .
<i>bōnum</i> , -ī (n.), <i>good</i> .	<i>bōnā</i> , -ōrum, <i>goods, property</i> .
<i>carcēr</i> , -ēris (m.), <i>prison</i> .	<i>carcērēs</i> , -um, <i>starting place</i> (in rarecourse).
<i>Castrum</i> , -ī (n.), <i>Fort</i> (in names of places).	<i>castrā</i> , -ōrum, <i>camp</i> .

Singular.	Plural.
cōmītium, -ī (n.), <i>place of assembly.</i>	cōmītīā, -ōrum, <i>elective assembly, election.</i>
cōpiā, -ae (f.), <i>plenty.</i>	cōpiæ, -ārum, <i>supplies or troops.</i>
finis, -is (m.), <i>end.</i>	finēs, -ium, <i>territory.</i>
fortūnā, -ae (f.), <i>fortune.</i>	fortūnæ, -ārum, <i>possessions.</i>
grātiā, -ae (f.), <i>favour.</i>	grātiæ, -ārum, <i>thanks, the Graces.</i>
hortūs, -ī (m.), <i>(kitchen-) garden.</i>	horti, -ōrum, <i>pleasure-grounds.</i>
impēdimentum, -ī (n.), <i>hindrance.</i>	impēdimentā, -ōrum, <i>baggage.</i>
litterā, -ae (f.), <i>letter (of the alphabet).</i>	litteræ, -ārum, <i>letter (epistle) or literature.</i>
lūdus, -ī (m.), <i>game or school.</i>	lūdi, -ōrum, <i>public games.</i>
opēra, -ae (f.), <i>work.</i>	opērae, -ārum, <i>workmen.</i>
opem (acc.), -is (f.), <i>aid.</i>	opēs, -um, <i>resources.</i>
pars, -tis (f.), <i>part.</i>	partēs, -ium, <i>a part (in a play), party.</i>
rostrum, -ī (n.), <i>beak of a ship.</i>	rostrā, -ōrum, <i>platform in the Forum which was adorned with the beaks of ships.</i>
sāl, -is (m. or n.), <i>salt.</i>	sālēs, -um (m.), <i>witticisms.</i>
tābulā, -ae (f.), <i>board, picture.</i>	tābulæ, -ārum (f.), <i>writing-tablets.</i>
vīs (f.), <i>force.</i>	virēs, -ium, <i>strength.</i>

SUBSTANTIVES USED IN THE PLURAL ONLY.

§ 59. The following are very common :—

armā, -ōrum (n.), <i>armour.</i>
divitīæ, -ārum (f.), <i>riches.</i>
indūtīæ, -ārum (f.), <i>truce.</i>
liberi, -ōrum (m.), <i>children.</i>
mānēs, -ium (m.), <i>spirits of the dead.</i>
moeniā, -ium (n.), <i>city walls.</i>
tēnēbrae, -ārum (f.), <i>darkness.</i>

Many names of towns are plural in form; e.g. *Āthēnæ*, -ārum (f.), *Athens*; *Gābī*, -ōrum (m.), *Gabii*; *Syrācūsæ*, -ārum (f.), *Syracuse*. Some proper names are singular or plural, as *Pergānum*, -ī (n.), or *Pergamā*, -ōrum (n.), *the citadel of Troy*. So *Tartārus*, -ī (m.), or *Tartārā* -ōrum (n.), *Tartarus, the infernal regions*.

INDECLINABLE SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 60. The following are of neuter gender, and are used in the nom. and acc. sing. only :—

fās, <i>right, the dictates of religion.</i>	nīhīl or nīl, <i>nothing.</i>
instār, <i>resemblance.</i>	pārum, <i>too little.</i>
mānē, <i>morning.</i>	sātis, <i>enough.</i>
nēfās, <i>sin.</i>	

NOTE.—*Nīhīlum* or *nīlum*, -ī (n.), *nothing*, is declined throughout the singular.

CHAPTER X.—GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 61. Greek proper names and other Greek substantives, when used in Latin, are sometimes declined like Latin words, but often retain the Greek inflexions.

N.B.—The Latin forms are given here only where no distinctive Greek form exists, but are in many other instances in use; *e.g.*, *Aenēās* has accusative *Aenēān* or *Aenēam*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

- § 62. (1) Masculines with nom. sing. ending in -ās or -ēs;
(2) Feminines " " " " -ā or -ē.

NOTE.—The plurals of words of this class (if used) have Latin suffixes only.

- (1) Examples: *Aenēās* (m.), *Aeneas*; *Týdidēs* (m.), son of *Týdēus* (see § 280).

Singular.	Singular
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Aenē-ās</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>Týdid-ēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Aenē-ā</i>	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Týdid-ē</i> *
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Aenē-ān</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Týdid en</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Aenē-ae</i>	<i>Gen.</i> <i>Týdid-ae</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Aenē-ae</i>	<i>Dat.</i> <i>Týdid-ae</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Aenē-ā</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Týdid-ē</i>

- (2) Examples: *Ēlectrā* (f.), *Electra*; *Phoebē* (f.), *Phoebe*.

Singular.	Singular.
<i>N. V.</i> <i>Ēlectr-ā</i>	<i>N. V.</i> <i>Phoeb-ē</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Ēlectr-ān</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Phoeb-ēn</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Ēlectr-ae</i>	<i>Gen.</i> <i>Phoeb-ēs</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Ēlectr-ae</i>	<i>Dat.</i> <i>Phoeb-ae</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Ēlectr-ā</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Phoeb-ē</i>

SECOND DECLENSION.

- § 63. (1) Masculines and Feminines with nom. sing. ending in -ōs;
(2) Masculines " " " " -ōs;
(3) Masculines " " " " -ūs;
(4) Neuters " " " " -ōn.

- Examples: (1) *Dēlōs* (f.), *Delos*;
(2) *Andrōgēōs* (m.), *Androgeos*;
(3) *Panthūs* (m.), *Panthus*;
(4) *rhōdōdendrōn* (n.), *rhododendron*.

* The vocative may also end in -ā or -ā.

Singular.

Nom. Dēl-ōs

Voc. Dēl-ē

Acc. Dēl-ōn

Gen. Dēl-i

D. Abl. Dēl-ō

Singular.

Nom. Panth-ūs

Voc. Panth-ū

Acc. Panth-ūm

Gen. Panth-i

D. Abl. Panth-ō

Singular.

Nom. Andrōgē-ōs

Voc. Andrōgē-ōs

Acc. Andrōgē-ōn cr -ō

Gen. Andrōgē-ō

D. Abl. Andrōgē-ō

Singular.

Nom. rhōdōdendr-ōn

Voc. rhōdōdendr-ōn

Acc. rhōdōdendr-ōn

Gen. rhōdōdendr-i

D. Abl. rhōdōdendr-ō

Greek plural forms of the second declension occur:—

(1) In the nominative of a few masculine and feminine words; e.g. *Adelphōē*, m. (title of a comedy), "*The Brothers*"; *aretōē* (f.), *bears*;

(2) In the genitive of names of books (neuter); e.g. *Gēorgiēā* (Vergil's treatise on husbandry) has gen. *Gēorgiēōn*: *Gēorgiēōn librī*. *the books of the Georgics*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 64. (1) Imparissyllabic masculines and feminines with base ending in a consonant, -ō, or -ŷ;

(2) Feminines (and a few masculines) with nom. sing. ending in -īs, in some cases declined both as imparissyllabics and as parissyllabics;

(3) Parissyllabic feminines with nom. sing. ending in -ō.

§ 65. (1) Examples: *lampās* (f.), *torch*;

Phāsthōn (m.), *Phaëthon*;

hērōs (m.), *hero*;

Tēthŷs (f.), *Tethys*.

Singular.

N. V. lampā-s •

Acc. lampād-ā

Gen. lampād-ōs

Dat. lampād-i

Abl. lampād-ē

Plural.

lampād-ēs

lampād-ās

lampād-um

lampād-ībūs

lampād-ībūs

Singular.

N. V. Phāsthōn

Acc. Phāsthont-ā

Gen. Phāsthont-īs

Dat. Phāsthont-i

Abl. Phāsthont-ē

Singular.

Nom. hērō-s

Voc. hērō-s

Acc. hērō-ā

Gen. hērō-īs

Dat. hērō-i

Abl. hērō-ē

Plural.

hērō-ēs

hērō-ēs

hērō-ās

hērō-um

hērō-ībūs

hērō-ībūs

Singular.

Nom. Tēthŷ-s

Voc. Tēthŷ

Acc. Tēthŷ-n

Gen. Tēthŷ-ōs

Dat. Tēthŷ-i

Abl. Tēthŷ-ē

§ 66. (2) Example : *tigrīs* (c.), *tiger*.

Singular.	Plural
<i>N. V.</i> <i>tigr-īs</i>	<i>tigr-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>tigr-im</i>	<i>tigr-ēs</i> or <i>tigrīd-ās</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>tigr-īs</i> or <i>tigrīd-īs</i>	<i>tigr-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>tigr-i</i> or <i>tigrīd-i</i>	<i>tigr-ībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>tigr-ē</i> or <i>tigrīd-ē</i>	<i>tigr-ībūs</i>

§ 67. (3) Example : *ēchō* (f.), *echo*.

Singular.
<i>N. V. A.</i> <i>ēch-ō</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ēch-ūs</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ēch-ō</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ēch-ō</i>

NOTE.—*Didō* (f.), *Dido*, is declined as above, and has also *Didōn-em*, -is, -i, -ē.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE GREEK THIRD DECLENSION WITH SOME LATIN SECOND DECLENSION FORMS.

- § 68. (1) Masculine proper names with nom. sing. ending in -ēs ;
 (2) " " " " " " " " -ēūs ;
 (3) Neuters with nom. sing. in -ōs (one -ūs).

(1) Example : *Sōcrātēs* (m.),
Socrates.

Singular.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Sōcrāt-ēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Sōcrāt-ē</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Sōcrāt-ēn</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Sōcrāt-i</i> or -īs
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Sōcrāt-i</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Sōcrāt-ē</i>

(2) Example : *Ātrēūs* (m.),
Atreus.

Singular.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Ātr-ēūs</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Ātr-ēū</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Ātr-ēum</i> or -ēā
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Ātr-ēi</i> or -ēōs
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Ātr-ēō</i> or -ēi
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Ātr-ēō</i>

(3) Examples : *mēlōs* (n.), *song* ; *pēlāgūs* (n.), *sea*.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V. A.</i> <i>mēl-ōs</i>	<i>mēl-ē</i>	<i>N. V. A.</i> <i>pēlāg-ūs</i>	<i>pēlāg-ē</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>mēl-i</i>	—	<i>Gen.</i> <i>pēlāg-i</i>	—
<i>Dat.</i> <i>mēl-ō</i>	—	<i>Dat.</i> <i>pēlāg-ō</i>	—
<i>Abl.</i> <i>mēl-ō</i>	—	<i>Abl.</i> <i>pēlāg-ō</i>	—

NOTE.—*Pōēmā* (n.), *poem*, and other such words, have a dat. abl. plural according to the second declension ; e.g. *pōēmātis*.

CHAPTER XI.—GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.*

§ 69. The gender of some Latin substantives is determined by their meaning, that of others by the declension to which they belong and the ending of their nominative singular.

Obs. In the following rules and lists of exceptions it is to be understood that **the gender, if determined by the meaning, is not affected by the form of the word**; e.g. *gīgās*, *giant*, is masculine, though words of the third declension with nom. sing. ending in *-as* are (according to the rule in § 73) feminine.

RULES FOR ASCERTAINING GENDER BY THE MEANING.

§ 70. **Masculine.** Words denoting persons of the male sex and most names of rivers.

Examples: *Sullā* (name of a man); *pūēr*, *boy*; *Mōsā*, *Meuse*; *Tībērīs*, *Tiber*.

Feminine. Words denoting persons of the female sex and most names of countries, islands, cities, and trees and plants.

Examples: *ānūs*, *old woman*; *Ēpīrūs* (the modern *Albania*); *Zācynthūs*, *Zante*; *Cōrīnthūs*, *Corinth*; *quercūs*, *oak*.

† Male are rivers; female these:
Countries, islands, cities, trees.

* Of the rhymes here given, only those in large type are to be learnt at first.

† In the rhymes *male* is for convenience used for *masculine*, *female* for *feminine*, and words of which the gender is sometimes masculine sometimes feminine, are called *common*.

Exc. All plural names of towns in -ī
 Are masculine, as Thūrī;
 So are of plants in -ēr a few
 Belonging to declension two.
 With ending -um (declension second)
 Both plants and towns are neuter reckoned.

Substantives which denote persons of either sex are said to be of **common** gender; *e.g.* incōlă, *inhabitant*; testīs, *witness*.

NOTE.—The gender of names of animals is, as a rule, determined by their form, but domestic animals are often personified and become masculine or feminine according to sex; *e.g.* cānis, *dog* or *litch*; bōs, *bull* or *cow*.

RULES FOR ASCERTAINING GENDER BY THE FORM.

FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 71. All substantives of this declension are feminine, except (1) those denoting persons of the male sex; *e.g.* naută, *sailor*, and family or personal names, *e.g.* Mūrēnă, Scaevōlă; and (2) most names of rivers (§ 70).

Classed among the males must be
 Hădriă, *Adriatic Sea*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 72. Substantives of this declension are masculine if the nom. sing. ends in -ūs or -ēr, neuter if it ends in -um.

Obs. The above rule does not apply to such words as are feminine by meaning. See § 70, and the examples there given.

RULE. *Exc.* Neuters twain* begin our rhyme:
 Masc. Vulgūs, *mob*, and virūs, *slime*;
 in -ūs. Vulgūs—neuter commonly—
 Sometimes masculine may be.

Feminine in -ūs are found
 Alvūs, *paunch*, and hūmūs, *ground*;

Also arctōs,† carbāsūs, *Constellation of the Bear, linen*,
 Cōlūs, vannūs, pampinūs. *Distaff, winnowing-fan, vine-leaf*.

* For pēlāgūs, see § 68.

† Greek form; see § 63.

THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 73. The gender of substantives of this declension is determined according to the ending of the nom. sing. as follows:—

Masculine: Words ending in *-er, -o, -or, -os*; also imparisyllabic words in *-es*.

Feminine: Words ending in *-as, -aus, -is, -x; -s* following another consonant; also parisyllabic words in *-es*.

Neuter: Words ending in *-ar, -ur, -us; -l, -a, -n, -c, -e, -t*.

Obs. In this as in other declensions the form does not affect a word's gender when the latter is determined by the meaning; *e.g.* *für, thief*, is masculine, notwithstanding the rule that words ending in *-ur* are neuter.

Rhyme.—The genders of declension three
 From each word's ending we may see:
-er, -o, -or, -os are masculine;
-as, -aus, -is, -x are feminine,
-s also after a consonant,
 and *-es* that has no increment;
-es otherwise is masculine.
 Of neuter endings there are nine:
 Note *-ar*, and *-ur*, and *-us*; the rest
 By *lancet* are remembered best.

EXCEPTIONS.

The exceptions to the above rules are somewhat numerous; they are here arranged in three classes:—

A. Feminine and Neuter Substantives with endings usually characteristic of Masculine Substantives;

B. Masculine and Neuter Substantives with endings usually characteristic of Feminine Substantives;

C. Masculine and Feminine Substantives with endings usually characteristic of Neuter Substantives.

§ 74. A. *Feminine and Neuter Substantives with Masculine Endings.*

RULE. *Exc.* Feminine is *lîntër*, *boat* ;
 Masc. Learn these neuters nine by rote :
 in -er. *Îtër*, *journey*, *vēr*, *the spring*,
Verbër, *lash*—unpleasant thing !
sübër, *pîpër*, and *cădăvër*, ' *Cork*, *pepper*, *corpse*.
Ăcër, *übër*, and *păpăvër*. *Maple*, *fertility*, *poppy*.

Masc. *Exc.* Female are words in -do and -go,
 in -o. Though *cardō*, *hinge*, and *ordō*, *row*,
 Are masculine, with *ligō*, *hoe*.
Margō is common. Female call *Border*.
 The abstract * nouns in -îō all.
 To *êchō* give the female gender, *Echo*.
 The same to *cărō* (*carnis*) render. *Flesh*.

Masc. *Exc.* A feminine is *arbör*, *tree* ;
 in -or. As neuter substantives we see
Cör (*cordis*), *heart* ; and *ădör*, *grain* ;
 With *marmör*, *marble* ; *aequör*, *main*.

Masc. *Exc.* Call feminine the *whetstone cōs*,
 in -os. Likewise the woman's *dowry dōs* ;
 Of Latin substantives alone
 These neuter are : *ōs* (*ossis*), *bone*,
 And eke *ōs* (*oris*), *mouth* ; a few
 Greek nouns in -ōs are neuter too.

Masc. *Exc.* *Aes* (*aeris*), *bronze*, has increment,
 impari- Yet with the neuter nouns it went.
 syllabic And *quîēs*, *rest*, with *mercēs*, *pay*,
 in -es. Are classed as feminine alway ;
 So also five more—*mergēs*, *sěgēs*, *Sheaf*, *cornfield*.
 With *compēs*, *rēquîēs*, and *těgēs*. *Fetter*, *repose*, *mat*.

* An abstract noun is properly the name of a quality, attribute, or circumstance, of a thing ; often it is transferred to denote a thing with which that quality, etc., is in some way associated ; e.g. *stătîō*, *a standing*, commonly means *a standing-place*, *station*.

§ 75. B. *Masculine and Neuter Substantives with Feminine Endings.*

RULE. *Exc.* *Ās*, copper coin, is known as male,
Fem. *Vās* (*vādīs*), too, who offers bail; *Surety.*
in -as. *Vās* (*vāsīs*), neuter, means a *pail. Vessel.*

Fem. *Exc.* Here such nouns in -is as be
in -is. Masculine set forth you see:
Amnis, *lāpis*, both from *collis* *Stream, stone, hill.*
Falling; *ignis* blown by *folis*; *Fire, bellows.*
Sanguis, blood, and *sword-blade ensis*;
Orbis too, wherein each *mensis* *Circuit, month.*
Year by year recurs; and *crinis*,
Hair, is male, and (mostly) *finis*; *End.*
He who *pānis*, *piscis* spurneth *Bread, fish.*
Soon to *cinis*, *pulvis* turneth. *Ash, dust.*

Rarer *fascis*, *sentis*, *callis*, *Fagot, bramble, rough path.*
Axis, *postis*, and *nātālis*, *Axle-tree, door-post, birthday.*
Vectis, *fustis*, and *cānālis*, *Crow-bar, cudgel, channel.*
Torris, *caulis*, *cūcūmis*, *Firebrand, cabbage, cucumber.*
Unguis, *fūnis*, *vermis*, *glis*. *Finger- or toe-nail, rope, worm, dormouse.*

Fem. *Exc.* Masculine are found in -x,
in -x. *Āpex*, *vertex*, shepherd's *grex*, *Summit, eddy, flock.*

Cālix, *cortex*, *thōrax*, *frūtex*, *Cup, bark of tree, breastplate, shrub.*
Pollex, *pūmex*, *sīlex*, *cōdex*. *Thumb, pumice-stone, flint, book.*

Fem. *Exc.* As masculine count *mons*, a *mount*;
in -s following another consonant. With *pons*, a *bridge*, and *fons*, a *fount*;
So *dens*, a *tooth*, and *bīdens*, *hoe*;
But *bīdens*, *sheep*, for female *know*.
Male, too, are *trīdens*, *occīdens*, *Trident.*
The *West*, and dawning *ōriens*, *East.* [*rope.*]
With *chālybs*, *hydrops*, *torrens*, *rūdens*, *Steel, dropsy, torrent,*
And *gryps* and fractions such as *triens*. *Griffin, one-third of*
an *as* or other unit.

Fem. *Exc.* Masculine is found in -es
parisyllabic in -es. *Scimitar ācinācēs.*

§ 76. C. Masculine and Feminine Substantives with Neuter Endings.

- RULE. *Exc.* These are masculine in -ur:
 Neut. in -ur. Vultūr, turtūr, and furfūr. *Vulture, turtle-dove, bran.*
- Neut. in ūs. *Exc.* A group of well-known nouns in -ūs
 Are female: *slavery, servītūs,*
 And *virtūs, valour; safety, sālūs,*
 With *tellūs, earth, and swampy pālūs, Marsh.*
Iūventūs, youth, sēnectūs, eld
 (Throughout these nouns u long is held);
 So *incūs, anvil; short u keep*
 In *pēcūs (pēcūdis), a sheep.*
 With feminines count long-necked *grūs, Crane.*
 But *lēpūs, hare, is male; and mūs,*
The mouse, is common; so is sūs. Pig.
- Neut. n -l. *Exc.* Of males in -l take note of one
 Besides *sāl, salt: that's sōl, the sun.*
- Neut. in -n. *Exc.* Two males in -n are *pectēn, comb,*
 And *delphīn* in his ocean home. *Dolphin.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 77. Substantives of this declension are masculine if the nom. sing. ends in -ūs, neuter if it ends in -ū. (Some in -ūs are feminine in accordance with § 70).

- RULE. *Exc.* Feminine are found in -ūs,
 Masc. in -ūs. Ācūs, *needle, porticūs, Portico.*
 Mānūs, *hand, and dōmūs, home,*
 Tribūs, *civil tribe at Rome,*
 Īdūs * (plural word), *the Ides—*
Day on which the month divides.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 78. All words of this declension are feminine, except *dīēs, day, and mēridīēs, mid-day, both masculine.*

NOTE.—*Dīēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially when meaning *an appointed day or lapse of time.* In the plural *dīēs* is always masculine.

* *Īdūs* was the name given to the 13th day of some months, to the 15th of others. See *Appendix on the Roman Calendar.*

CHAPTER XII.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 79. The form of a Latin adjective varies in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it refers, either as attribute or predicate. Thus: we may write *tīmīdūs nautā*, *a timid sailor*, or *nautā est tīmīdūs*, *the sailor is timid*; but if we wish to express in Latin *a timid girl* or *the girl is timid*, *tīmīdūs*, the masculine form of the adjective, is inadmissible, and we must write *tīmīdā pūellā*, *pūellā est tīmīdā*, because the feminine substantive *pūellā* requires a feminine form of the adjective. The same holds good with regard to number and case: we say *tīmīdī nautae*, *timid sailors*, *tīmīdē nautā* (vocative), *timid sailor!* in each instance changing the suffix of the adjective in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it is applied.

Accordingly, in the declension of an adjective, the form which it assumes in each of the three genders must be given for each case singular and plural.

Adjectives are divided, according to the form of their declension, into two classes:—

- I. Adjectives with masculine and neuter like the second declension of substantives, and feminine like the first declension of substantives;
- II. Adjectives declined in all genders like the third declension of substantives.

In the declension of adjectives, as in that of substantives, the various endings are added to the base; the latter must, therefore, be ascertained before an adjective can be declined.

The base is ascertained by taking away the case-ending of the genitive singular masculine; this is

for adjectives of the first class -ī (-īūs for those in § 81);

“ “ “ second “ -īs.

The base of adjectives of the first class with nom. sing. masc. ending in -ūs may be seen at once on dropping the -ūs.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS.

§ 80. This class consists of adjectives with nominative singular ending in the masculine in -ūs or -ēr, in the feminine in -ā, and in the neuter in -um.

They are declined as follows:—

Masculine: in -ūs, like *dōmīnūs*, § 19, 1; in -ēr, like *māgīstēr*, § 19, 2; with a few retaining *e* before *r* throughout, like *pūēr*, § 19, 2, *Obs.*

Feminine: like *mensā*, § 16.

Neuter: like *regnum*, § 19, 3.

Examples: *bōnūs*, *bōnā*, *bōnum*, *good*. Base, *bōn-*.
nīgēr, *nīgrā*, *nīgrum*, *black*. Base, *nīgr-*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
<i>Voc.</i> bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
<i>Acc.</i> bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā
<i>Gen.</i> bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs
<i>Abl.</i> bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs

Obs. In committing the above table to memory, the learner should repeat the form for each of the three genders in the nom. sing., then the three forms for the voc. sing., and so on for each case in the singular, and afterwards similarly for each case in the plural.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.V.</i> nīgēr	nīgr-ā	nīgr-um	nīgr-ī	nīgr-ae	nīgr-ā
<i>Acc.</i> nīgr-um	nīgr-am	nīgr-um	nīgr-ōs	nīgr-ās	nīgr-ā
<i>Gen.</i> nīgr-ī	nīgr-ae	nīgr-ī	nīgr-ōrum	nīgr-ārum	nīgr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> nīgr-ō	nīgr-ae	nīgr-ō	nīgr-īs	nīgr-īs	nīgr-īs
<i>Abl.</i> nīgr-ō	nīgr-ā	nīgr-ō	nīgr-īs	nīgr-īs	nīgr-īs

NOTE.—Some few adjectives of this class with nom. sing. masc. in -ēr retain *e* before *r* in the base.

Example: *tēnēr*, *tēnērā*, *tēnērūm*, *tender*. Base, *tēnēr-*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.V.</i> tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā
<i>Acc.</i> tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā
<i>Gen.</i> tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs
<i>Abl.</i> tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs

Like *tēnēr*, the following retain *e* before *r* throughout.

(1) Adjectives ending in *-fer*, denoting *bearing* (cp. *fērō*, *I bear*), or *-gēr*, denoting *carrying* (cp. *gērō*, *I carry*); e.g. *frūgiferā*, *frūgiferum*, *fruit-bearing*; *armīgēr*, *armīgērā*, *armīgērum*, *carrying armour*.

(2) *aspēr*, *aspērā*, *aspērum*, *rough*. *libēr*, *libērā*, *libērum*, *free*.
lēcēr, *lēcērā*, *lēcērum*, *torn*. *mīsēr*, *mīsērā*, *mīsērum*, *wretched*.

Dextēr, *right, on the right hand*, sometimes retains and sometimes drops the *ē*, making fem. *dextērā* or *dextrā*, neut. *dextērum* or *dextrum*.

Like *tēnēr* is declined *sātūr*, *sātūrā*, *sātūrum*, *sated*.

Rhyme :—Like *tēnēr* compound words in *-fēr*
 Retain the *e*; so those in *-gēr*;
 Add *aspēr*, *rough*, and *lēcēr*, *torn*,
 With *libēr*, *free*, and *mīsēr*, *torn*.

§ 81. The following nine adjectives of the first class have genitive singular of all genders ending in *-iūs* (sometimes *-iūs*), and dative singular of all genders ending in *-ī*.

Sōlūs, *sōlā*, *sōlum*, *alone*.

Tōtūs, *tōtā*, *tōtum*, *whole*.

Ūnūs, *ūnā*, *ūnum*, *one*.

Ullūs, *ullā*, *ullum*, *any* (after a negative).

Nullūs, *nullā*, *nullum*, *no, none*.

Ūter, *ūtrā*, *ūtrum*, *which* (of the two) ?

Neutēr, *neutrā*, *neutrum*, *neither*.

Altēr, *altērā*, *altērum*, *the one* (of two), *the other* (of two).

Āliūs, *āliā*, *āliūd*, *one* (of several), *another* (of several).

Example: *nullūs*, *nullā*, *nullum*, *no, none*. Base, *null-*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> null-ūs	null-ā	null-um	null-ī	null-ae	null-ā
<i>Acc.</i> null-um	null-am	null-um	null-ōs	null-ās	null-ā
<i>Gen.</i> null-iūs	null-iūs	null-iūs	null-ōrum	null-ārum	null-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> null-ī	null-ī	null-ī	null-is	null-is	null-is
<i>Ab.</i> null-ō	null-ā	null-ō	null-is	null-is	null-is

Obs. **Āliūs** has nom. and acc. sing. neut. **āliūd**, and gen. sing. **āliūs**; the latter is rarely found, **altēriūs** being generally used instead. (The dative singular is **ālii**.)

NOTE 1.—The quantity of **-i** in the gen. sing. ending is, as a rule, long, except in **altēriūs**, gen. sing. of **altēr**.

NOTE 2.—**Ūtēr** has the following compounds, in which the second part is indeclinable, while the former part is declined just as when not compounded :—

Ūtercumquē, utrācumquē, utrumcumquē, *whichever (of the two)*.

Ūterlibēt, utrālibēt, utrumlibēt, *which (of the two) you please*.

Ūterquē, utrāquē, utrumquē, *each (of the two)*.

Ūtervis, utrāvis, utrumvis, *which (of the two) you will*.

Obs. **Libēt** is an impersonal verb denoting *it pleases* (§ 233); **vis** means *thou wilt*, and is 2nd person sing. of **vōlō**, *I will* (§ 211).

In the compound **altērūtēr**, *the one or the other (of the two)*, the latter member only is, as a rule, declined; thus the nom. sing. fem. is **altērūtērā**, and the dat. sing. for all genders is **altērūtēri**.

§ 82. Some few adjectives of the first class that denote number or quantity have a **locative** case formed by adding **-ī** to the base; *e.g.* **ūnī**, from **ūnūs**, *one*; **tantī**, from **tantūs**, *so great*; **parvī**, from **parvūs**, *small*. The use of these locatives is explained in the Syntax.

§ 83. EXAMPLES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS DECLINED TOGETHER WITH SUBSTANTIVES.

Lātūs āgēr, *wide field*.

Āgēr (m.), like **māgistēr**, § 19, 2; **lāt-ūs**, **-ā**, **-um**, like **bōnūs**, § 80.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>Nom.</i>	lātūs āgēr	lāti	āgrī
<i>Voc.</i>	lātē āgēr	lāti	āgrī
<i>Acc.</i>	lātum āgrum	lātōs	āgrōs
<i>Gen.</i>	lāti āgrī	lātōrum	āgrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	lātō āgrō	lātīs	āgrīs
<i>Abl.</i>	lātō āgrō	lātīs	āgrīs

Magnā rēs, *great matter*.

Rēs (f.), like **diēs**, § 40; **magn-ūs**, -ā, -um, like **bōnūs**, § 80.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> magnā rēs	magnæ rēs
<i>Acc.</i> magnam rem	magnās rēs
<i>Gen.</i> magnæ rēi	magnārum rerum
<i>Dat.</i> magnæ rēi	magnīs rēbūs
<i>Abl.</i> magnā rē	magnīs rēbūs

Curvum litūs, *winding shore*.

Litūs (n.), base, **litōr-**, like **corpūs**, § 30; **curv-ūs**, -ā, -um, like **bōnūs**, § 80.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.A.</i> curvum litūs	curvā litōrā
<i>Gen.</i> curvī litōris	curvōrum litōrum
<i>Dat.</i> curvō litōri	curvis litōribūs
<i>Abl.</i> curvō litōrē	curvis litōribūs

Impīgēr nautā, *active seaman*.

Nautā (m.), like **mensā**, § 16; **impīgēr**, **impīgrā**, **impīgrum**, like **nīgēr**, § 80.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.V.</i> impīgēr nautā	impīgrī nautæ
<i>Acc.</i> impīgrum nautam	impīgrōs nautās
<i>Gen.</i> impīgrī nautæ	impīgrōrum nautārum
<i>Dat.</i> impīgrō nautæ	impīgris nautīs
<i>Abl.</i> impīgrō nautā	impīgris nautīs

Tōtā nox, *whole night*.

Nox (f.), base, **noct-**, like **urbs**, § 33; **tōt-ūs**, -ā, -um, like **nullūs**, § 81.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> tōtā nox	tōtæ noctēs
<i>Acc.</i> tōtam noctem	tōtās noctēs or noctīs
<i>Gen.</i> tōtiūs noctīs	tōtārum noctium
<i>Dat.</i> tōtī noctī	tōtis noctibūs
<i>Abl.</i> tōtā noctē	tōtis noctibūs

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

§ 84. Adjectives of this class fall into two main divisions:—

- (1) Adjectives with genitive plural in *-um*, declined like consonant-substantives of the third declension;
- (2) Adjectives with genitive plural in *-ium*, declined like *I*-substantives of the third declension.

Obs. Whenever in the following tables one form only is given for any case, it is to be understood to serve for all genders alike.

(1) ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 85. The following are declined like consonant-substantives of the third declension:—

- (a) Adjectives of the comparative degree;
- (b) Adjectives having in the nom. sing. one form for all genders alike, and with base ending in a short syllable.

Examples: (a) *longiŕ, longiŭs, longer* (comparative of *longŭs, longă, longum, long*, see § 89). Base, *longiŕ-*.

(b) *paupŕ, poor*. Base, *paupŕ-*.

Singular.			Plural.		
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>longiŕ</i>	<i>longiŭs</i>	<i>longiŕ-ēs</i>	<i>longiŕ-ă</i>	<i>longiŕ-ă</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>longiŕ-em</i>	<i>longiŭs</i>	<i>longiŕ-ēs</i>	<i>longiŕ-ă</i>	<i>longiŕ-ă</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>longiŕ-is</i>			<i>longiŕ-um</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>longiŕ-i</i>			<i>longiŕ-ibŭs</i>	
<i>Abł.</i>	<i>longiŕ-ě</i>			<i>longiŕ-ibŭs</i>	

Singular.			Plural.		
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>paupŕ</i>		<i>paupŕ-ēs</i>	<i>none</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>paupŕ-em</i>	<i>paupŕ</i>	<i>paupŕ-ēs</i>	<i>none</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>paupŕ-is</i>			<i>paupŕ-um</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>paupŕ-i</i>			<i>paupŕ-ibŭs</i>	
<i>Abł.</i>	<i>paupŕ-ě</i>			<i>paupŕ-ibŭs</i>	

NOTE 1.—The following adjectives of this class have abl. sing. ending in -ī :—

mēmōr	<i>mindful</i>	abl. sing. mēmōrī
immēmōr	<i>unmindful</i>	„ immēmōrī
dēgēnēr	<i>degenerate</i>	„ •dēgēnērī
inōps	<i>helpless</i>	„ inōpī

NOTE 2.—Like the comparatives is declined vētūs, *old* (base, vētēr-), except that it has vētūs for all genders of nom. and voc. sing. and for acc. sing. neut.

NOTE 3.—Ālēs, *winged* (also used as a substantive of common gender denoting *bird*), base ālit-, has in poetry a lengthened genitive plural ālitūm.

(2) ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE I-SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 86. This division consists of :—

- Adjectives which have three forms in the nom. sing., one for each gender;
- Adjectives which have two forms in the nom. sing., one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter;
- Adjectives having in the nom. sing. one form which serves for all genders alike, and with base ending in a long syllable.

Under this last heading all present participles (§ 125) are included; in poetry the genitive plural frequently ends in -um instead of -ium.

Examples : (a) ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē, *sharp*. Base, ācr-.
 (b) tristīs, tristē, *sad*. „ trist-.
 (c) { fēlix, *fortunate*. „ fēlic-.
 { prūdēns, *discreet*. „ prūdēt-.

	Singular.				Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
*N.V.	ācēr	ācr-īs	ācr-ē		ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
Acc.	ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ē		ācr-ēs or -īs	ācr-īā
Gen.		ācr-īs			ācr-īum	
Dat.		ācr-ī			ācr-ībūs	
Abl.		ācr-ī			ācr-ībūs	

NOTE 1.—Cēlēr, cēlērīs, cēlērē, *swift*, alone retains the ē before r throughout; it has genitive plural cēlērūm.

L. G.

Singular.			Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>N.V.</i>	trist-īs	trist-ě	trist-ēs	trist-īā
<i>Acc.</i>	trist-em	trist-ě	trist-ēs or -īs	trist-īā
<i>Gen.</i>	trist-īs			trist-īum
<i>Dat.</i>	trist-ī			trist-ībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	trist-ī			trist-ībūs

Singular.			Plural.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
<i>N.V.</i>	fēlix		fēlic-ēs		fēlic-īā
<i>Acc.</i>	fēlic-em	fēlix	fēlic-ēs or -īs		fēlic-īā
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlic-īs			fēlic-īum	
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlic-ī			fēlic-ībūs	
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlic-ī or -ě			fēlic-ībūs	

Singular.			Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>N.V.</i>	prūdēns		prūdēnt-ēs	prūdēnt-īā
<i>Acc.</i>	prūdēnt-em	prūdēns	prūdēnt-ēs or -īs	prūdēnt-īā
<i>Gen.</i>	prūdēnt-īs		prūdēnt-īum	
<i>Dat.</i>	prūdēnt-ī		prūdēnt-ībūs	
<i>Abl.</i>	prūdēnt-ī or -ě		prūdēnt-ībūs	

NOTE 2.—The following, though they have one form for all genders in the nom. sing., and have a base ending in a short syllable (see § 85, *b*), are declined like I-substantives, *i.e.* have abl. sing. in *-ī*, nom. and acc. pl. neut. in *-īā*, and gen. pl. in *-īum* :—

	Base,	Base,
pār	equal	pār-
hēbēs	blunt	hēbēt-
tērēs	rounded	tērēt-
anceps	wavering	ancipit-
praeceps	hvaðlong	praecipit-
with simplex	simple	simplific-

and other adjectives ending in *-plex* (§ 106).

Obs. Note that whereas the ablative singular of certain I-substantives only (see § 32) ends in *-ī*, the ablative singular of all adjectives with genitive plural in *-īum* may end in *-ī* and that an alternative form in *-ě* is found only in those adjectives whose nom. sing. neut. does not end in *-ě*.

§ 87. EXAMPLES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS
DECLINED TOGETHER WITH SUBSTANTIVES.

Dīvēs ģrūs, rich master.

Ģrūs (m.), like *dōmīnūs*, § 19, 1; *dīvēs* (base, *dīvīt-*), like *paupēr*, § 85.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dīvēs ģrūs</i>		<i>divītēs ģrī</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>dīvēs ģrē</i>		<i>divītēs ģrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dīvitem ģrum</i>		<i>divītēs ģrōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dīvītīs ģrī</i>		<i>divītum ģrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dīvītī ģrō</i>		<i>divītībūs ģrīs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dīvītē ģrō</i>		<i>divītībūs ģrīs</i>

Cēlērīs sāgittā, swift arrow.

Sāgittā (f.), like *mensā*, § 16; *cēlēr*, *cēlērīs*, *cēlērē*, like *ācēr*, § 86, but retaining *e* before *r* throughout.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>cēlērīs sāgittā</i>		<i>cēlērēs sāgittae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cēlērem sāgittam</i>		<i>cēlērēs (or cēlērīs) sāgittās</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cēlērīs sāgittae</i>		<i>cēlērū sāgittārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cēlērī sāgittae</i>		<i>cēlērībūs sāgittīs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cēlērī sāgittā</i>		<i>cēlērībūs sāgittīs</i>

Brēvis sermō, short discourse.

Sermō (m.), base *sermōn-*, like *lēō*, § 26; *brēv-*is, -ē, like *tristīs*, § 86.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>brēvis sermō</i>		<i>brēvēs sermōnēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>brēvem sermōnem</i>		<i>brēvēs (or brēvis) sermōnēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>brēvis sermōnīs</i>		<i>brēvium sermōnum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>brēvī sermōnī</i>		<i>brēvībūs sermōnībūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>brēvī sermōnē</i>		<i>brēvībūs sermōnībūs</i>

Grāvė ōņūs, *heavy burden*.

Ōņūs (n.), base ōņēr-, like ōpūs, § 30; grāv-īs, -ē, like tristīs, § 86.

Singular. •		Plural.	
<i>N.V.</i>	grāvė ōņūs		grāvīā ōņērā
<i>Gen.</i>	grāvīs ōņērīs		grāvīum ōņērum.
<i>Dat.</i>	grāvī ōņērī		grāvībūs ōņērībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	grāvī ōņērē		grāvībūs ōņērībūs

Audax cīvīs, *daring citizen*.

Cīvīs (c.), base cīv-, like hostīs, § 31; audax, base audāc-, like fēlix, § 86.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>N.V.</i>	audax cīvīs		audācēs cīvēs
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem cīvem		audācēs (or -īs) cīvēs (or -īs)
<i>Gen.</i>	audācīs cīvīs		audācīum cīvīum
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī cīvī		audācībūs cīvībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī (or audācē) cīvē		audācībūs cīvībūs

Ingens spēcūs, *enormous cavern*.

Spēcūs (m.), like grādūs, § 39; ingens, base ingent-, like prūdēns, § 86.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>N.V.</i>	ingens spēcūs		ingentēs spēcūs
<i>Acc.</i>	ingentem spēcum		ingentēs (or ingentīs) spēcūs
<i>Gen.</i>	ingentīs spēcūs		ingentīum spēcūum
<i>Dat.</i>	ingentī spēcūī		ingentībūs spēcībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	ingentī (or -ē) spēcū		ingentībūs spēcībūs

INDECLINABLE ADJECTIVES.

§ 88. These are frūgī, *of worth* (properly dative singular of frux, *fruit*), nēquam, *worthless*, sātīs, *sufficient*; also many numeral adjectives (§ 101), and tōt, *so many*, quōt, *how many?* or *as many as*, with their compounds (§ 118).

CLASSES OF EXCEPTIONS TO THE ABOVE RULE.

§ 91. I. The Superlative of adjectives with nom. sing. masc. ending in *-ēr* is formed by adding *-rīmūs* to the nom. sing. masc. (The Comparative is formed by adding *-iōr* to the base according to the rule.)

EXAMPLES.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>pulchēr</i>	<i>beautiful</i>	<i>pulchr-</i>	<i>pulchr-iōr</i>	<i>pulcher-rīmūs</i>
<i>tēnēr</i>	<i>tender</i>	<i>tēnēr-</i>	<i>tēnēr-iōr</i>	<i>tēner-rīmūs</i>
<i>paupēr</i>	<i>poor</i>	<i>paupēr-</i>	<i>paupēr-iōr</i>	<i>pauper-rīmūs</i>
<i>ācēr</i>	<i>sharp</i>	<i>ācr-</i>	<i>ācr-iōr</i>	<i>ācer-rīmūs</i>
<i>cēlēr</i>	<i>swift</i>	<i>cēlēr-</i>	<i>cēlēr-iōr</i>	<i>cēler-rīmūs</i>
Note also—				
<i>vētūs</i>	<i>old</i>	<i>vētēr-</i>	<i>(vētust-iōr)</i>	<i>vēter-rīmūs</i>

§ 92. II. Adjectives ending in *-dicūs*, *-ficūs*, and *-vōlūs* form their Comparative and Superlative as if their Positive ended in *-dicens* (base, *dicent-*; cp. *dicō*, *I say*), *-ficens* (base, *ficent-*; cp. *fāciō*, *I make*), *-vōlens* (base, *vōlent-*; cp. *vōlō*, *I will*).

EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Base from which Comp. and Superl. are formed.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>mālēdicūs</i>	<i>mālēdicent-</i>	<i>mālēdicent-iōr</i>	<i>mālēdicent-issimūs</i>
<i>slanderous</i>			
<i>magnificūs</i>	<i>magnificent-</i>	<i>magnificent-iōr</i>	<i>magnificent-issimūs</i>
<i>magnificent</i>			
<i>bēnēvōlūs</i>	<i>bēnēvōlent-</i>	<i>bēnēvōlent-iōr</i>	<i>bēnēvōlent-issimūs</i>
<i>benevolent</i>			

Note also—

<i>ēgēnūs</i>	<i>ēgent-</i>	<i>ēgent-iōr</i>	<i>ēgent-issimūs</i>
<i>needy</i>			
<i>prōvidūs</i>	<i>prōvident-</i>	<i>prōvident-iōr</i>	<i>prōvident-issimūs</i>
<i>foreseeing</i>			

§ 93. III. Adjectives with base ending in a vowel (other than *u* in the combination *gu* or *qu*) have no special forms for the Comparative or Superlative; the Comparative is expressed by *māgis* and the Superlative by *maximē* preceding the positive.

EXAMPLES.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>piūs</i>	<i>dutiful</i>	<i>pi-</i>	<i>māgis piūs</i>	<i>maximē piūs</i>
<i>ardūūs</i>	<i>lofty</i>	<i>ardū-</i>	<i>māgis ardūūs</i>	<i>maximē ardūūs</i>

But—

<i>pinguūs</i>	<i>fat</i>	<i>pingu-</i>	<i>pingu-iōr</i>	<i>pingu-issimūs</i>
<i>antiquūs</i>	<i>ancient</i>	<i>antiqu-</i>	<i>antiqu-iōr</i>	<i>antiqu-issimūs</i>

ADJECTIVES IRREGULARLY COMPARED.

§ 94. I. The following six adjectives form their Superlative by adding *-līmūs* to the base :—

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>fācilis</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>fācil-</i>	<i>fācil-iōr</i>	<i>fācil-līmūs</i>
<i>difficilis</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>difficil-</i>	<i>difficil-iōr</i>	<i>difficil-līmūs</i>
<i>similis</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>simil-</i>	<i>simil-iōr</i>	<i>simil-līmūs</i>
<i>dissimilis</i>	<i>unlike</i>	<i>dissimil-</i>	<i>dissimil-iōr</i>	<i>dissimil-līmūs</i>
<i>grācilis</i>	<i>thin</i>	<i>grācil-</i>	<i>grācil-iōr</i>	<i>grācil-līmūs</i>
<i>hūmilis</i>	<i>low</i>	<i>hūmil-</i>	<i>hūmil-iōr</i>	<i>hūmil-līmūs</i>

Obs. All other adjectives in *-ilis* form the Superlative in the ordinary way; *e.g.* *frāgilis*, *brittle*, *frāgilissimūs*.

§ 95. II. Three indeclinable adjectives are thus compared :—

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>frūgī</i>	<i>of worth</i>	<i>frūgālīōr</i>	<i>frūgālissimūs</i>
<i>nēquam</i>	<i>worthless</i>	<i>nēquīōr</i>	<i>nēquissimūs</i>
<i>sātis</i>	<i>sufficient</i>	<i>satiūs</i> (n.), <i>preferable</i>	—

§ 96. III. The following adjectives have a Comparative and Superlative not formed from the Positive :—

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>bōnūs</i>	<i>good</i>	<i>mēliōr</i>	<i>optimūs</i>
<i>mālūs</i>	<i>bad</i>	<i>pēiōr</i>	<i>pessimūs</i>
<i>magnūs</i>	<i>great</i>	<i>māiōr</i>	<i>maximūs</i>
<i>parvūs</i>	<i>small</i>	<i>mīnōr</i>	<i>mīnimūs</i>
<i>multūs</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>plūrēs</i> (pl.)	<i>plūrimūs</i>
<i>dīvēs</i>	<i>rich</i>	<i>ditiōr</i> or <i>dīvitiōr</i>	<i>dītissimūs</i> or <i>dīvītissimūs</i>

NOTE.—*Plūrēs* is thus declined : N. V. Acc. (masc. and fem.) *plūrēs*, (neut.) *plūrā*, Gen. (all genders) *plūrium*, Dat. Abl. (all genders) *plūribūs*. The singular *plūs*, Gen. *plūris*, *more*, is a neuter substantive ; the Dat. and Abl. are not in use.

§ 97. IV. The following adjectives have no Positives :—

(Cp. <i>iūvenīs</i> , <i>young man</i>)	<i>iūnīōr</i> <i>younger</i>	(<i>nātū minīmūs</i>)
	<i>ōcīōr</i> <i>swifter</i>	<i>ōcissimūs</i>
(Cp. <i>sēnex</i> , <i>old man</i>)	<i>sēnīōr</i> <i>older</i>	(<i>nātū maxīmūs</i>)

Obs. *Nātū* is ablative, and is a substantive used only in that case and denoting *birth*. Hence *nātū minīmūs*, *nātū maxīmūs*, mean respectively *least* and *greatest by birth*.

§ 98. V. The following adjectives, derived from prepositions, are irregularly compared :—

Preposition.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>citrā</i> , <i>on this side</i>	—	<i>cītērīōr</i> , <i>nearer</i>	<i>cītīmūs</i>
<i>dē</i> , <i>down from</i>	—	<i>dētērīōr</i> , <i>worse</i>	<i>dētērrīmūs</i>
<i>extrā</i> , <i>outside</i>	(<i>extērūs</i>)	<i>extērīōr</i> , <i>outer</i>	{ <i>extrēmūs</i> <i>extīmūs</i>
<i>infā</i> , <i>below</i>	<i>infērūs</i> , <i>lower</i>	<i>infērīōr</i>	<i>infīmūs</i> or <i>īmūs</i>
<i>intrā</i> , <i>within</i>	—	<i>intērīōr</i> , <i>inner</i>	<i>intīmūs</i>
<i>post</i> , <i>after</i>	(<i>postērūs</i>)	<i>postērīōr</i> , <i>later</i>	{ <i>postrēmūs</i> , <i>last</i> <i>postūmūs</i> , <i>last</i>
<i>prae</i> , <i>before</i>	—	<i>prīōr</i> , <i>former</i>	<i>prīmūs</i> [<i>born</i>
<i>prōpē</i> , <i>near</i>	—	<i>prōpīōr</i> , <i>nearer</i>	<i>proxīmūs</i>
<i>sūprā</i> , <i>above</i>	<i>sūpērūs</i> , <i>upper</i>	<i>sūpērīōr</i>	{ <i>sūprēmūs</i> , <i>highest</i> , <i>last</i>
<i>ultrā</i> , <i>beyond</i>	—	<i>ultērīōr</i> , <i>farther</i>	{ <i>summūs</i> , <i>highest</i> <i>ultīmūs</i> , <i>farthest</i> , <i>last</i>

NOTE.—*Extērūs* and *postērūs* are regularly declined throughout, all forms except the nom. sing. masc. being in use.

CHAPTER XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

§ 99. The Numerals may conveniently be treated here, though they are not all adjectives.

(1) There is one numeral substantive: *miliă* (n.), *thousands*.

(2) There are three series of numeral adjectives:—

(a) **Cardinal**, corresponding to the English series *one, two, three*, etc.;

(b) **Ordinal**, corresponding to the English series *first, second, third*, etc.;

(c) **Distributive**, denoting *one a-piece, two a-piece, three a-piece*, etc.; and also used instead of cardinals in expressions of multiplication, as *bīs bīnă* (neut. pl.), *twice two*, and (except *singŭlī*) with substantives plural in form and singular in meaning (§ 58), as *bīnă castră*, *two camps*, *bīnae aedēs*, *two houses*. (But *dŭae aedēs*, *two temples*.)

(3) There is a series of numeral adverbs denoting *once, twice, three times*, etc.

TABLE OF NUMERALS.

§ 100. In the table on p. 58 a hyphen divides the base from the variable ending of such of the numerals as are declinable. The portions of the table printed in lighter type may be passed over by the beginner.

VARIANT SPELLING.—In some editions of classical Latin writers the ending of the ordinals from 18 upwards is spelt *-ensim-ūs* instead of *-ēsīm-ūs*, and that of the adverbials from 5 upwards *-gns* instead of *-ēs*; e.g. *vīcensim-ūs*, *trīcensim-ūs*, *quīnquēns*, *sexiēns*. *Mil-īă* is sometimes (wrongly) spelt *mill-īă*.

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	ūn-ūs, <i>one</i>	prim-ūs, <i>first</i>	singul-ī, <i>one a-</i>	sēmēl, <i>once</i>
2	dū-ō	sēcund-ūs or altēr *	bin-ī [<i>piece</i>]	bīs
3	tr-ēs	terti-ūs	tern-ī or trin-ī †	tēr
4	quattŭōr	quart-ūs	quātern-ī	quātēr
5	quinquē	quint-ūs	quīn-ī	quinqŭēs
6	sex	sext-ūs	sēn-ī	sexiēs
7	septem	septim-ūs	septēn-ī	septiēs
8	octō	octāv-ūs	octōn-ī	octiēs
9	nōvem	nōn-ūs	nōvēm-ī	nōviēs
10	dēcem	dēcim-ūs	dēn-ī	dēciēs
11	undēcim	undēcim-ūs	undēn-ī	undēcīēs
12	dūdēcim	duōdēcim-ūs	dūdōdēn-ī	dūdōdēcīēs
13	trēdēcim	terti-ūs dēcim-ūs	tern-ī dēn-ī	terdēcīēs
14	quattŭordēcim	quart-ūs dēcim-ūs	quātern-ī dēn-ī	quātēr dēcīēs
15	quindēcim	quint-ūs dēcim-ūs	quīn-ī dēn-ī	quindēcīēs
16	sēdēcim	sext-ūs dēcim-ūs	sēn-ī dēn-ī	sēdēcīēs
17	septemdēcim	septim-ūs dēcim-ūs	septēn-ī dēn-ī	septīēs dēcīēs
18	dūdōdevigintī	duōdēvicēsīm-ūs	dūdōdēvicēn-ī	dūdōdēvicīēs
19	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīm-ūs	undēvicēn-ī	undēvicīēs
20	vigintī	vicēsīm-ūs	vicēn-ī	vicīēs
21	ūn-ūs ēt vigintī or vigintī ūn-ūs	ūn-ūs ēt vicēsīm-ūs or vicēsīm-ūs prim-ūs	vicēn-ī singul-ī	sēmēl ēt vicīēs
22	dū-ō ēt vigintī or vigintī dū-ō	alt-ēr ēt vicēsīm-ūs or vicēsīm-ūs alt-ēr	vicēn-ī bin-ī	bīs ēt vicīēs
28	dūdōdetrīgintā	duōdētricēsīm-ūs	dūdōdētricēn-ī	dūdōdētricīēs
29	undētrīgintā	undētricēsīm-ūs	undētricēn-ī	undētricīēs
30	trīgintā	tricēsīm-ūs	tricēn-ī	trīciēs
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīm-ūs	quadrāgēn-ī	quadrāgīēs
50	quinquāgintā	quinqŭāgēsīm-ūs	quinqŭāgēn-ī	quinqŭāgīēs
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīm-ūs	sexāgēn-ī	sexāgīēs
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīm-ūs	septuāgēn-ī	septuāgīēs
80	octōgintā	octōgēsīm-ūs	octōgēn-ī	octōgīēs
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīm-ūs	nōnāgēn-ī	nōnāgīēs
100	centum	centēsīm-ūs	centēn-ī	centīēs
200	dūcent-ī	dūcentēsīm-ūs	dūcēn-ī	dūcentīēs
300	trēcent-ī	trēcentēsīm-ūs	trēcēn-ī	trēcentīēs
400	quadrīngent-ī	quadrīngentēsīm-ūs	quadrīngēn-ī	quadrīngentīēs
500	quīngent-ī	quīngentēsīm-ūs	quīngēn-ī	quīngentīēs
600	sescent-ī	sescentēsīm-ūs	sescēn-ī	sescentīēs
700	septīngent-ī	septīngentēsīm-ūs	septīngēn-ī	septīngentīēs
800	octīngent-ī	octīngentēsīm-ūs	octīngēn-ī	octīngentīēs
900	nongent-ī	nongentēsīm-ūs	nongēn-ī	nongentīēs
1000	millē	millēsīm-ūs	singul-ā mil-īā	millīēs
2000	dū-ō mil-īā	bīs millēsīm-ūs	bin-ā mil-īā	bīs millīēs

* Altēr, *second (of two)*; sēcundūs, *second (of a larger number than two)*.

† Trinī (not ternī) is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning; e.g. trināe aedēs, *three houses*.

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS.

§ 101. CARDINALS.—*Ūnūs* is declined like *nullūs* (§ 81). The plural is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning (§ 58); *e.g.* *ūnā castrā*, *one camp*.

Dŭō and *trēs* are thus declined:—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>dŭō</i>	<i>dŭae</i>	<i>dŭō</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>triā</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dŭōs</i> or <i>dŭō</i>	<i>dŭās</i>	<i>dŭō</i>	<i>trēs</i> or <i>trīs</i>	<i>triā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dŭōrum</i> or <i>dŭum</i>	<i>dŭārum</i> or <i>dŭum</i>	<i>dŭōrum</i> or <i>dŭum</i>	<i>triūm</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dŭōbŭs</i>	<i>dŭābŭs</i>	<i>dŭōbŭs</i>	<i>tribŭs</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dŭōbŭs</i>	<i>dŭābŭs</i>	<i>dŭōbŭs</i>	<i>tribŭs</i>	

NOTE.—*Ambō*, *both*, *the two*, is declined like *dŭō*.

The cardinals denoting hundreds from 200 to 900 are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*, § 80, except that they usually have genitive plural in *-um*, not in *-ōrum* or *-ārum*; *e.g.* *dūcentum*.

The other cardinal numerals, *viz.* 4 to 20, the tens up to 100, and *millē*, 1000, are indeclinable.

The substantive *mīliā* (n.) is declined in the plural only:—

<i>N.V.A.</i>	<i>mīliā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīlibŭs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mīlibŭs</i>

Obs. A declinable numeral qualifying *mīliā* must, of course, be in agreement with it, and the substantive dependent on *mīliā* is put in the genitive; *e.g.* *triā mīlia ēquitum*, 3000 *horsemen*.

§ 102. ORDINALS.—These are declined like *bōnūs* (§ 80), with the exception of *altēr*, *second* (*of two*), for which see § 81.

§ 103. DISTRIBUTIVES.—These are all declined like *bōnūs*, except that the genitive plural generally ends in *-um*, not in *-ōrum* or *-ārum*; *e.g.* *dēnum*. In the singular they are used only in poetry.

ON COMPOUNDING NUMERALS.

§ 104. 21 to 99.—As may be inferred from the preceding table, the smaller number follows the larger without *et* or precedes it with *et*; e.g. *viginti quinque* or *quinque et viginti*, just as in English we say *twenty-five* or *five-and-twenty*.

The two numbers preceding each ten are commonly expressed by prefixing *duode-*, *undē-* respectively to it; see 28 and 29 in the table. (*Dē* is a preposition denoting *from*.) Such expressions as *viginti octo* and *octo et viginti* occur, but are less usual.

101 and upwards.—The larger number, as a rule, precedes the smaller, and *et* may be inserted (except in distributives); e.g. *duo milia (et) quingenti (et) quadraginta equites* or *equitum duo milia (et) quingenti (et) quadraginta*, 2540 *horsemen*. (Note that the substantive is not put in the genitive if separated from *milia* by numerals that do not qualify *milia*.)

Obs. Where *unus* is used with other numerals it agrees with the substantive in case and gender, but remains singular in number; e.g. *feminis viginti uni* or *uni et viginti feminis*, 21 *women* (dative); *unus et ducentum equitum* or *equitum ducentum unus*, 201 *horsemen* (genitive).

FRACTIONS.

§ 105. (a) Fractions with 1 for numerator are denoted by the ordinal corresponding to the denominator in agreement with *pars*, *part*; e.g. *dimidia pars*, *half*; *tertia (pars)*, *one-third*; *quarta (pars)*, *a quarter*. *Pars* may be omitted, except after *dimidia*; *half* is also expressed by the neuter *dimidium*.

(b) In fractions with a numerator greater than 1, the numerator is expressed by a cardinal, the denominator by an ordinal in agreement with *partes* understood; e.g. *tres septimae*, *three-sevenths*; *duae nonae*, *two-ninths*.

(c) But if the numerator is only one less than the denominator, the latter is not expressed, and *partes* is added to the cardinal that denotes the numerator; e.g. *duae partes*, *two-thirds*; *tres partes*, *three-quarters*; *quattuor partes*, *four-fifths*.

For the expression of fractions by means of the parts of the ās, see *Appendix on Roman Money*.

MULTIPLICATIVES.

§ 106. There is an incomplete series of numeral adjectives with the ending -plex (base, -plic-), *-fold*; the following are in use :—

simplex, *single*.

quādrūplex, *fourfold*.

dūplex, *double, twofold*.

septemplex, *sevenfold*.

trīplex, *triple, threefold*.

dēcemplex, *tenfold*.

All are declined like fēlix (§ 86), but with ī (not i) in the base; e.g. simplex, gen. simplicis.

SIGNS FOR NUMERALS.

§ 107. The use of the letters I, V, X, L, C, D, M to represent respectively 1, 5, 10, 50, 100, 500, 1000 (and, in combination, other numbers) has remained unchanged to the present day and is well known to all. It is only necessary to point out that in some editions of the classics I_Q is used instead of D for 500 and CI_Q instead of M for 1000.

CHAPTER XV.—PRONOUNS.

§ 108. Under this heading are included many words which do not “stand in place of a substantive,” but are either always or sometimes used adjectivally; *e.g.* *měūs*, *my* (always used adjectivally); *idem*, *the same* (used either substantivally or adjectivally).

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 109. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, *ěgō*, *I*, and *tū*, *thou*, are substantival and of common gender. They are thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ěgō</i>		<i>nōs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>		<i>nōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>měī</i>		{ <i>nostrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīhī</i> or (in poetry) <i>mī</i>		{ <i>nostrum</i> (partitive *)
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>		<i>nōbīs</i>
			<i>nōbīs</i>
Singular.		Plural.	
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>tū</i>		<i>vōs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tē</i>		<i>vōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tūī</i>		{ <i>vestrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tībī</i>		{ <i>vestrum</i> (partitive *)
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tē</i>		<i>vōbīs</i>
			<i>vōbīs</i>

NOTE 1.—To any of the above forms (except *tū*) the particle *-mēt* may be added for emphasis, *e.g.* *ěgōmēt*; *tū* is lengthened to *tūtēmēt*.

NOTE 2.—*Vōs* is never, like the English *you*, used of a single person. *You*, therefore, must always be rendered by the singular (*tū*, etc.) unless it is clear that more than one person is addressed. *Nōs*, however, sometimes denotes *I*.

* *I.e.* dependent on a word denoting *part*, *e.g.* *multī nostrum*, *many of us*.

There is in Latin no pronoun of the third person exactly corresponding to the English *he, she, it*; but its place can when necessary be supplied by one of the Demonstratives (§ 112).

PERSONAL PRONOUNS—REFLEXIVES.

§ 110. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are used as reflexives; e.g. *mē dēfendō, I defend myself*; *tibi indulgēs, you are indulgent to yourself*.

For the third person reflexive there is a special form, viz. *sē, himself, herself, itself, themselves*, which is thus declined for both numbers and all genders:—

Singular and Plural.

Acc. *sē* or *sēsē*

Gen. *sūi*

Dat. *sibi*

Abl. *sē* or *sēsē*

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 111. These are formed from the personal pronouns, singular and plural:—

From Singular Pronouns.

mēus, mēā, mēum, my (mine).

tūus, tūā, tūum, thy (thine).

sūus, sūā, sūum, his, her (hers), its.

From Plural Pronouns.

nostēr, nostrā, nostrum, our (ours).

vestēr, vestrā, vestrum, your (yours).

sūus, sūā, sūum, their (theirs).

Obs. These adjectives are translated by the English words in brackets when they do not stand as attributes.

Mēus, tūus, and sūus are declined like *bōnūs* (§ 80), except that *mēus* has voc. sing. masc. *mī*; *nostēr* and *vestēr* are declined like *nīgēr* (§ 80).

NOTE 1.—One or other of the particles *-mēt, -ptē*, may be added for emphasis to the abl. sing. of the possessive adjectives; e.g. *mēōmēt, nostrāptē*.

NOTE 2.—*Nostēr* is sometimes used as an equivalent for *mēus*, just as *nōs* is used for *egō*; but *vestēr* never takes the place of *tūus*.

NOTE 3.—*Sūūs*, being formed from the reflexive *sē*, generally refers (except, of course, in the nominative) to the subject of the sentence. Hence, if *his* in a principal sentence refers to the subject of the sentence, we must use *sū-ūs*, -ā, -um; if it does not refer to the subject, we must use *ēiūs* (genitive of *is*, *ēā*, *id*, § 112); e.g. *Patrem sūum occidit*, *He kills his (own) father*; *Patrem ēiūs occidit*, *He kills his (somebody else's) father*.

NOTE 4.—From *nostr̄* and *vestr̄* respectively are formed the adjectives—

nostrās (gen. sing. *nostrātīs*), *of our country*;

vestrās („ „ „ *vestrātīs*), *of your country*;

both declined like *prūdēs* (§ 86).

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 112. The Latin demonstrative pronouns are used both substantivally and adjectivally, just as in English we may say either “this (*substantival*) is true,” or “this (*adjectival*) statement is true.”

The demonstrative pronouns are five in number, as follows:—

(1) *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*, *this*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the speaker.

In the paradigm on the next page the forms placed in brackets () are rarely found, and should not be used in translating English into Latin.

(2) *istē*, *istā*, *istūd*, *that (of yours)*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the person spoken to.

The demonstrative particle -*cē* (seen in the declension of *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*) is sometimes added to *istē*, which is then declined *istiē*, *istaec*, *istūc*, as shown in the paradigm.

(3) *illē*, *illā*, *illūd*, *that (yonder)*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, neither the speaker nor the person spoken to.

(4) *is*, *ēā*, *id*, *that*; used of what has just been mentioned, and (when used substantivally) often to be translated *he*, *she*, *it*.

Idem, *ēādem*, *idem*, *the same*, is formed from *is*, *ēā*, *id*, and the particle -*dem*. Its declension is given in full after that of *is*.

(5) *ipsē*, *ipsā*, *ipsum*, *self*, or *himself*, *herself*, *itself*.

Ipsē has a superlative form *ipsissim-ūs*, -ā, -um, *very self* declined like *bōnūs* (§ 80).

The demonstratives are thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae (haec)	haec
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs (hoscē)	hās (hascē)	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	• hūiūs (hūiuscē)			hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic *				hīs (hiscē)	
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc		hīs (hiscē)	

Obs. The forms in brackets are comparatively rare, and should not be used in translating English into Latin.

Singular.			Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	istē	istā	istūd	istī	istae	istā
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istūd	istōs	istās	istā
<i>Gen.</i>		istiūs		istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		istī			istīs	
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō		istīs	

Singular.			Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	istīc	istaec	istūc	istīcē	istaec	istaec
<i>Acc.</i>	istunc	istanc	istūc	istoscē	istascē	istaec
<i>Gen.</i>		istiuscē		istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
<i>Dat.</i>		istī			istiscē	
<i>Abl.</i>	istōc	istāc	istōc		istiscē	

Singular.			Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	illē	illā	illūd	illī †	illae	illā
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illūd	illōs	illās	illā
<i>Gen.</i>		illius		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		illī †			illīs ‡	
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō		illīs ‡	

* In *huic* the vowels *ui* form a diphthong (§ 8). According to the "English" pronunciation *huic* rhymes with "like."

† In poetry also *ollī*.

‡ In poetry also *ollīs*.

L. G.

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ēā	īd	ēī or īī	ēae	ēā	
<i>Acc.</i>	ēum	ēam	īd	ēōs	ēās	ēā	
<i>Gen.</i>		ēūs		ēōrum	ēārum	ēōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>		ēī			ēīs or īīs		
<i>Abl.</i>	ēō	ēā	ēō		ēīs or īīs		

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	ēādem	īdem	īdem or ēīdem	ēādem	ēādem	
<i>Acc.</i>	ēundem	ēandem	īdem	ēōdem	ēasdem	čādem	
<i>Gen.</i>		ēiusdem		ēōrundem	ēārundem	ēōrundem	
<i>Dat.</i>		ēīdem			īdem or ēīdem		
<i>Abl.</i>	ēōdem	ēādem	ēōdem		īdem or ēīdem		

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā	
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā	
<i>Gen.</i>		ipsiūs		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>		ipsī			ipsīs		
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs		

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 113. The relative pronouns are three in number, *viz.*—

Quī, quae, quōd, who, which, that (generally substantival);
Quicumquē, quaecumquē, quodcumquē, whoever, whatever
 (substantival or adjectival);

Quisquis, quidquid, whoever, whatever (substantival or adjectival).

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quōd	quōs	quās	quae	
<i>Gen.</i>		cuiūs		quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>		cui *		quībūs	(in poetry also quīs)		
<i>Abl.</i>	{ quō	quā	quō }	quībūs	(in poetry also quīs)		
	{ quī						

* In *cui* the vowels *ui* form a diphthong (§ 8). According to the "English" pronunciation *cui* is sounded like *ki* in *kind*.

In the declension of *quicumquē* the ending *-cumquē* (sometimes spelt *-cunquē*) is invariable, and the first part of the word is declined like the simple relative *quī*, *e.g.* :—

	M.	F.	N.
Sing. nom.	<i>quicumquē</i>	<i>quaecumquē</i>	<i>quodcumquē</i>
„ acc.	<i>quemcumquē</i>	<i>quaecumquē</i>	<i>quodcumquē</i>
	etc.	etc.	etc.

Of *quisquīs* the only forms in common use are :—

Sing. nom. masc.	<i>quisquīs</i> , neut. <i>quidquid</i> or <i>quicquid</i>
„ abl. masc. and neut.	<i>quōquō</i> .

NOTE.—From the genitive singular of the relative *quī* an adjective is formed, *viz.* *cūi-ūs*, *-ā*, *-um*, *whose* (declined like *bōnūs*, § 80).

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 114. The interrogative pronoun is *quīs*, *quae*, *quid*, *who? which? what?* It is used both substantively and adjectively, except in the forms *quī* (nom. sing. masc.) and *quōd* (nom. and acc. sing. neut.), which are adjectival only.

Examples: *Quīs vēnit?* *Who is coming?* (substantival).
Quī milēs vēnit? *What soldier is coming?* (adjectival).
Quid vidēs? *What do you see?* (substantival).
Quōd ānimāl vidēs? *What animal do you see?* (adjectival).

Singular.				Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	{ <i>quīs</i> }	{ <i>quae</i> }	{ <i>quid</i> } { <i>quōd</i> }	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	{ <i>quid</i> } { <i>quōd</i> }	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūiūs</i>			<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>			<i>quībūs</i> (in poetry also <i>quīs</i>)		
<i>Abl.</i>	{ <i>quō</i> }	{ <i>quā</i> }	{ <i>quō</i> }	<i>quībūs</i> (in poetry also <i>quīs</i>)		
	{ <i>quī</i> (only as adverb, <i>how?</i>) }					

Obs. Except in the forms *quīs*, *quid*, the interrogative pronoun is identical with the relative.

Quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, *who, pray? what, pray?* is an emphatic interrogative formed by adding the invariable particle **-nam** to the simple interrogative.

NOTE 1.—Which (of the two)? is generally expressed by **utër** (§ 81).

NOTE 2.—From the genitive singular of the interrogative **quīs** two adjectives are formed:—**cūi-ūs, -ā, -um**, *whose?* (declined like **bōnūs**, § 80); **cūi-ās** (gen. sing. **cūiātis**), *of what country?* (declined like **prūdēns**, § 86); e.g. **Cūiū est pēcūs?** *Whose flock is it?* (**Cūiūs** belongs to colloquial Latin, but is used by Vergil.)

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 115. The indefinite pronouns are **quīs, quā, quīd**, *any*, and its compounds. This indefinite **quīs** is, generally speaking, used only after **nē**, *lest*, **num**, interrogative particle, **sī**, *if*, **nīsī**, *unless*, and may be written as one word with any of the first three of these words; thus: **nē quīs** or **nēquīs**, *lest any one*; **num quīs** or **numquīs**, *any one?* (like **ecquīs**, § 116, 4); **sī quīs** or **sīquīs**, *if any one*; **nīsī quīs**, *unless any one*; e.g. **Sī quīd** (or **sīquīd**) **hābēt, dāt**, *If he has any thing, he gives it*. Like the interrogative it has the forms **quī** (nom. sing. masc.) and **quōd** (nom. and acc. sing. neut.), which are adjectival only. These forms appear in some of its compounds even when used substantively.

Singular.			Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	{ quīs }	quā	{ quīd }	quī	quae	quā
	{ quī }		{ quōd }			
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	{ quīd }	quōs	quās	quā
			{ quōd }			
<i>Gen.</i>	cūiūs			quōrum quārum quōrum		
<i>Dat.</i>	cui			quībūs (in poetry also quīs)		
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quībūs (in poetry also quīs)		

Obs. Except in the nom. sing. fem. and the nom. and acc. pl. neut. the indefinite pronoun is identical with the interrogative, and even in those cases **quae** is sometimes used instead of **quā**.

§ 116. The compound indefinite pronouns are numerous and somewhat confusing; they are best classified by means of their significations according as they imply—

- (1) *all*,
- (2) *some* (opposed to *none*),
- (3) *any* (with a negative = *none*),
- (4) *any*? (i.e. *is there any that . . . ?*).

These pronouns are used both substantivally and adjectivally, except that in the nom. and acc. sing. of some of them two forms exist—one substantival, the other adjectival—as shown below.

(1) The indefinite pronouns which imply *all* (though, of course, they are not to be so translated) are:—

quisquē, quaequē, quidquē or *quicquē* (subst.), *quodquē* (adj.), *each*.

Ūnūs quisquē, each one, is sometimes written as one word, *ūnusquisquē*; both parts are declined exactly as if written separately; e.g. Nom. *ūnusquisquē, ūnāquaequē, ūnumquidquē* or *ūnumquodquē*; Gen. *ūnūscuiusquē*.

quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (subst.), *quodlibet* (adj.), *any you please*.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis (subst.), *quodvis* (adj.), *any you will*.

Cp. § 81, NOTE 2, on the compounds of *utēr*.

(2) Under the heading of indefinite pronouns implying *some* come:—

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (subst.), *quoddam* (adj.), *a certain one, a certain*;

āliquis (no feminine), *āliquīd* (subst.), *some one, some thing* (opposed to *no one, nothing*);

āliquī, āliquā, āliquōd (adj.), *some*;

quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam or *quippiam* (subst.), *quodpiam* (adj.), *some one, some thing, some*.

(3) With a negative, and in expressions implying a negative, *any* is rendered by the indefinite adjective ullus, or (especially where a substantival word is required) by the indefinite pronoun

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, *any, any one, any thing.*

Example: *Nēc quisquam vēnit, And no one comes.*

(4) To introduce a question beginning *Is there any that . . . ? Are there any who . . . ?* numquīs (§ 115) may be used, or the interrogative-indefinite pronoun

ecquīs (no feminine), ecquid? (subst.), *is there any one that . . . ?*

ecquī, ecquae or ecquā, ecquōd (adj.), *is there any . . . that?*

Examples: *Ecquīs nōs vidēt? Does any one see us?*

Ecquōd animāl vidēs? Is there any animal that you see?

§ 117. The variable portion of the above compound indefinite pronouns is declined like the simple indefinite quīs or quī, except that (1) the nom. sing. forms are as given above; (2) the nom. and acc. pl. neut. is the same as the nom. sing. fem.; and (3) there is no ablative form quī or quīs.

The endings -quē, -libēt, -vīs, -dam, -pīam, -quam are invariable. Quīdam is declined below as an example:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. quīdam	quaedam	{ quīddam } { quōddam }	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Acc. quemdam	quamdam	{ quīddam } { quōddam }	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
Gen.	cūiusdam		quōrumdam	quārumdam	quōrumdam
Dat.	cuidam			quibusdam	
Abl. quōdam	quādam	quōdam		quibusdam	

Obs. In the above declension *n* is sometimes written instead of *m* before -d; e.g. *quendam, quandam*. Cp. the declension of *idem*, § 112.

The Table on the next page is not to be learnt column by column, but across from left to right.

§ 118. SYNOPSIS OF DEMONSTRATIVE, RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (§§ 112—117; ALSO § 81).

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Interrogative.	Indefinite.
hic, <i>this</i> istē (istē), <i>that</i> (of yours) ille, <i>that</i> (yonder) is, <i>that</i> ; idem, <i>the same</i> ; ipse, <i>he himself</i>	{ qui, <i>who</i> quicumque, <i>whoever</i> quisquis, <i>whoever</i>	{ quis, <i>who?</i> quisnam, <i>who, pray?</i>	{ quidam, <i>a certain one</i> aliquis (subst.), <i>some one</i> aliqui (adj.), <i>some</i> quispiam, <i>some one</i> quisquam, } with negative, nullus (adj.), } <i>any one, any</i> quis (adj. quī), <i>any</i> (§ 115)
Referring to two objects only (§ 401):—	{ ūtōr, <i>which of two</i> ūterumque, <i>which-ever</i>	{ ūtōr, <i>which of two?</i>	alterūter, <i>the one or the other</i>
tālis, <i>such</i>	quālis, <i>as</i> quālescunque, <i>of what kind soever</i>	quālis, <i>of what kind?</i>	
tantū, <i>so great</i> tantusdem, <i>just so great</i>	{ quantū, (as great) <i>as</i> quantescunque, <i>how great soever</i>	quantū, <i>how great?</i>	āliquantū, <i>of a considerable size</i>
tantūlū, <i>so small</i>	{ quantūlū, (as small) <i>as</i> quantūlescunque, <i>how small soever</i>	quantūlū, <i>how small?</i>	āliquantūlū, <i>of a small size</i>
tōt, <i>so many</i> tōtīdem, <i>just so many</i>	{ quot, (as many) <i>as</i> quotescunque, <i>or</i> quotquot, <i>how many soever</i>	quot, <i>how many?</i>	

*quotū, *which (in numerical order)?*

* Quōtū asks a question answered by an ordinal numeral; e.g. Quōtā pars? (Answer: Tertīa, one-third, etc.). It is often used in conjunction with quisque, each, to signify how few! e.g. Quōtusquisque (or quōtū quisque) bonū est! *How few good men there are!*

CHAPTER XVI.—REMARKS ON VERBS.

The beginner should read this chapter before, and also after, learning the conjugation of sum (Ch. XVII.) and the regular verbs (Ch. XVIII.).

§ 119. Latin Verbs have inflections that indicate (1) voice, (2) mood, (3) tense, (4) person, (5) number.

§ 120. (1) **Voice.** There are in Latin, as in English, two voices, *viz.* **active** and **passive**: *e.g.* *ămō, I love*; *ămōr, I am loved.*

NOTE 1.—The passive of some transitive Latin verbs has a **reflexive** meaning, and may often be rendered by the intransitive use of the corresponding English verb: *e.g.* *mōvēō, I move, set in motion*, *mōvēōr, I move, am in motion*; *pascīt, he feeds, supplies with food*; *pascitūr, it (an animal) feeds, takes food.*

NOTE 2.—Some verbs which are conjugated in the passive only are the equivalents of English active verbs; these are called **deponents** (§ 171).

§ 121. (2) **Mood.** There are, properly speaking, three moods: the **indicative**, the **subjunctive**, and the **imperative**. The **infinitive**, which is in reality a verbal substantive, is often regarded as a fourth mood.

The rules for the use of these moods belong to syntax; but in order that the student may learn intelligently the tables in the following chapters, the various meanings there assigned to the subjunctive are illustrated here.

The **subjunctive** is used:—

(a) To express a **wish** or **command**.

Examples: *Vivāt rēgīnā! (Long) live the queen!*

Audiant omnēs, Let all hear.

Ůtīnam illē ādhūc vivērēt! Would that he were still alive!

Ůtīnam vicissēmūs! Would that we had won!

Obs. In the first of these examples the Latin subjunctive is represented by the same mood in English.

(b) In both clauses of some **conditional sentences**.

Examples: *Sī venīās, gaudēam, If you were to come, I should be glad.*

The infinitive has three tenses: present, perfect, and future.

The meaning of the tenses is given in the tables of the regular verbs. It must be noted that the **perfect** has two meanings: e.g. *āmāvi*, *I loved* or *I have loved*. The second meaning is the less common of the two, and is therefore, to save needless repetition, omitted in the tables from the conjugation of the perfect subjunctive.

§ 123. (4) **Person.** There are in Latin special forms in each tense to be used according as the subject is of the **first**, **second**, or **third person**. This is to some extent the case in English also (e.g. *I love, thou lovest, he loves*); but the Latin forms not only vary according to the person of the subject: they often **contain the subject in themselves**, especially in the first and second persons, e.g. *āmō*, *I love*; *āmās*, *thou lovest*; but the pronouns may be inserted for emphasis, e.g. *ēgō āmō*, *tū nōn āmās*, *I love, thou dost not love*. In the third person the subject is frequently expressed by a substantive, but by no means always; thus we may have *āmāt*, *he loves*, or *she loves*, or *it loves*, according to the context, or *Caesār āmāt*, *Caesar loves*.

Obs. In English the only part of the verb which contains the subject in itself, and accordingly may form a complete sentence, is the imperative, e.g. "Go."

§ 124. (5) **Number.** The two numbers, **singular** and **plural**, are used as in English, except in two points (cp. § 109, NOTE 2). (i.) The use of plural for singular in the second person, which is common in modern English, never occurs in Latin; e.g. *you love* is *āmās* (singular), never (unless more persons than one are addressed) *āmātis* (plural). (ii.) The plural is in Latin occasionally used for the singular in the first person; this usage often indicates an affectation of modesty, thus differing from the "royal" *we* in English.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES (PARTICIPLES).

§ 125. Verbal adjectives or participles are adjectives implying verbal action, the base of the participle indicating the voice and tense of the action. There are four **participles**, two with active and two with passive meaning, viz. :—

Active	{	Present participle, declined like <i>prūdēns</i> , § 86.	}	
		Future " "		
Passive	{	Perfect " "	}	
		Gerundive (in transitive verbs only)		" " <i>bōnūs</i> , § 80.

The gerundive has two chief usages: (1) as a verbal adjective denoting fitness to be the object of the active verb, e.g. *āmandūs*, *fit to be loved, lovable*; (2) as a substitute for the gerund in what is known as the "gerundive attraction," the rules of which will be found in the Syntax.

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 126. Certain verbal substantives (*i.e.* substantives implying verbal action) are usually appended to the conjugation of a Latin verb.

These are :—(1) the Gerund ;
(2) the Supine ;
(3) the Infinitive.

§ 127. (1) The gerund is an abstract substantive of neuter gender declined (like *regnum*, § 19) in the singular only; it expresses the action denoted by the verb, e.g. *amandum*, *loving*, i.e. *the act of loving*, and corresponds to the English gerund, a verbal noun in *-ing* (e.g. "I take exercise by *walking*"), which originally ended in *-ung*, and so was distinct in form from the present participle with which it is now often confounded. The nominative of the gerund is not, as a rule, found except in the case of intransitive verbs; it is therefore included in brackets () in the tables of the regular conjugations.

§ 128. (2) The **supine** is the name given to two cases (accusative and ablative singular) of a masculine verbal substantive (declined like *grādūs*, § 39), which is in meaning similar to the gerund, though differently used. The accusative supine is found, after verbs of motion, to denote the purpose or goal of that motion (*e.g.* *ēō audītum*, *I go to hear*), just as the English gerund is used *e.g.* in *I go fishing* (formerly *I go a-fishing*). The ablative supine is in common use only in the case of certain verbs, but for the sake of uniformity it is given in all the tables of conjugation.

The other cases of the verbal substantives of which the supine is the accusative and ablative singular exist in many instances, but are never included in the conjugation of the verb; e.g. *audītus* (nominative), *hearing, the act or sense of hearing*.

§ 129. (3) The infinitive is distinguished from the other verbal substantives (a) in being indeclinable and (b) in possessing forms expressive of voice and tense, as follows:—

Active.		Passive.	
PRESENT.	Special form	Special form	“
PAST.	“ “	Past participle + <i>essē</i> (to be)	
FUTURE.	Future participle + <i>essē</i> (to be)	Accusative supine + <i>īrī</i>	

NOTE.—*īrī*, used in the phrase which serves as the future infinitive passive, is the present infinitive passive of *ēō*, *I go* (§ 214), used impersonally, and the supine expresses the act which is the goal of that motion; e.g. *Sentiō rēginam amātum īrī*, *I perceive that it is* (lit. *I perceive it to be*) *being gone about to love the queen*, i.e. *I perceive the queen to be about to be loved*.

THE THREE BASES OF A VERB.

§ 130. In order to conjugate a verb it is necessary, as in the declension of substantives, to ascertain the base to which the inflections are to be added. In a verb these inflections denote voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

§ 131. Latin verbs, except deponent (§ 171) and defective verbs, have **three bases**, from one or other of which all their various parts are formed, viz. (1) the present base, (2) the perfect base, (3) the supine base.

The **present base** is found by cutting off the last three letters of the present infinitive active, which are always either *-ārē*, *-ērē*, *-ērē*, or *-irē*; e.g. the present base of *amō*, which has present infinitive active *amārē*, is *am-*.

Obs. In a few irregular verbs the infinitive ends otherwise and there is then no single “present base.”

To find the **perfect base** cut off the final **-ī** of the first person singular perfect indicative active, and to find the **supine base** cut off the final **-um** of the accusative supine; e.g. the perfect base of *āmō* is *āmāv-* and the supine base *āmāt-*, the first person singular perfect indicative active and the accusative supine being respectively *āmāvī* and *āmātum*.

§ 132. These three forms—

- (1) Present infinitive active,
- (2) Perfect indicative active (first person singular),
- (3) Supine (accusative),

together with the present indicative active (first person singular), are called the **principal parts** of a verb, and must be known before a verb can be conjugated (§ 136).

§ 133. The following table shows from which of the three bases each part of a Latin verb is formed:—

	Indicative. Subjunctive. Imperative.			Verbals.	
Present Base	Present	Act. & Pass.	Act. & Pass.	Act. & Pass.	Pres. Part. Gerundive Pres. Inf. Act. & Pass. Gerund
	Imperfect	" "	" "	" "	
	Future	" "	" "	" "	
Perfect Base	Perfect	Active	Active	—	Perf. Inf. Act. — —
	Pluperfect	"	"	—	
	Future Perf.	"	—	—	
Supine Base	Perfect	Passive	Passive	—	Perf. Part. (and Inf.) Pass. Fut. Part. (and Inf.) Act. Supine (& Fut. Inf. Pass.)
	Pluperfect	"	"	—	
	Future Perf.	"	—	—	

CHAPTER XVII.—THE VERB *SUM*.

§ 134. The conjugation of this verb, though irregular, is given before that of the regular verbs, as it serves as an auxiliary in the conjugation of the latter.

PRINCIPAL PARTS (§ 132): *sum, esse, fū-ī*, (no supine).

* PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: *none*.
FUTURE: *fūtūrūs, fūtūrā, fūtūrum*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>sum,</i>	<i>I am</i>	<i>sūmūs,</i>	<i>we are</i>
<i>ēs,</i>	<i>thou art</i>	<i>estis,</i>	<i>ye are</i>
<i>est,</i>	<i>he is</i>	<i>sunt,</i>	<i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>eram,</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>erāmūs,</i>	<i>we were</i>
<i>erās,</i>	<i>thou wast</i>	<i>erātis,</i>	<i>ye were</i>
<i>erāt,</i>	<i>he was</i>	<i>erant,</i>	<i>they were</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>erō,</i>	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>erimūs,</i>	<i>we shall be</i>
<i>eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt be</i>	<i>eritis,</i>	<i>ye will be</i>
<i>erit,</i>	<i>he will be</i>	<i>erunt,</i>	<i>they will be</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>fū-ī,</i>	<i>I was or I have been</i>	<i>fū-imūs,</i>	<i>we were or we have been</i>
<i>fū-istī,</i>	<i>thou wast or thou hast</i>	<i>fū-istis,</i>	<i>ye were or ye have</i>
	<i>been</i>		<i>been</i>
<i>fū-īt,</i>	<i>he was or he has been</i>	<i>fū-erunt</i>	<i>they were or they have</i>
		<i>or fū-erēt†</i>	<i>been</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>fū-eram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>fū-erāmūs,</i>	<i>we had been</i>
<i>fū-erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>fū-erātis,</i>	<i>ye had been</i>
<i>fū-erāt,</i>	<i>he had been</i>	<i>fū-erant,</i>	<i>they had been</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>fū-erō,</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>fū-erimūs,</i>	<i>we shall have been</i>
<i>fū-eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	<i>fū-eritis,</i>	<i>ye will have been</i>
<i>fū-erit,</i>	<i>he will have been</i>	<i>fū-erint,</i>	<i>they will have been</i>

* In this and other tables of the conjugation of verbs the participles are given first, as some parts of the verb are formed by means of a participle and the auxiliary.

† See § 140.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

sim,	<i>I should be</i>	{	(if) <i>I were to be</i> (in order that) <i>I may be</i> (so that) <i>I am</i> (although) <i>I am</i>
sīs,	<i>thou wouldst be</i>		
sīt,	<i>he would be</i>		
simūs,	<i>we should be</i>		
sītis,	<i>ye would be</i>		
sint,	<i>they would be</i>		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

essem or förem,	<i>I should be</i>	{	(if) <i>I were</i> (in order that) <i>I might be</i> (so that) <i>I was</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I was</i>
essēs or förēs,	<i>thou wouldst be</i>		
essēt or förēt,	<i>he would be</i>		
essēmūs or föremūs,	<i>we should be</i>		
essētis or fөрētis,	<i>ye would be</i>		
essent or förent,	<i>they would be</i>		

PERFECT TENSE.

fū-ērim	{	rare in principal sentences	{	(if) <i>I were to have been</i> (so that) <i>I was or have been</i> (although) <i>I have been</i>
fū-ērīs				
fū-ērīt				
fū-ērīmūs				
fū-ērītis				
fū-ērint				

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

fū-issem,	<i>I should have been</i>	{	(if) <i>I had been</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I had been</i>
fū-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been</i>		
fū-issēt,	<i>he would have been</i>		
fū-issēmūs,	<i>we should have been</i>		
fū-issētis,	<i>ye would have been</i>		
fū-issent,	<i>they would have been</i>		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

ēs,	<i>be (thou)</i>	estē,	<i>be (ye)</i>
-----	------------------	-------	----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

estō,	<i>thou shalt or must be</i>	estōtē,	<i>ye shall or must be</i>
estō,	<i>he shall or must be</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall or must be</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: essē,	<i>to be</i>
PERFECT: fū-issē,	<i>to have been</i>
FUTURE: före or fütür-ūs essē,	<i>to be about to be</i>

GERUND.

None.

SUPINE.

None.

For rare forms of the present subjunctive of **sum**, see § 208, and for its compounds, see §§ 209, 210.

CHAPTER XVIII.—THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

EXTENT OF THEIR DIVERGENCE.

§ 135. A Latin verb belongs to one or other of four conjugations, *i.e.* it has *in such parts as are formed from the present base* (§ 133) inflections similar to one of the four model verbs given in this chapter. **In those parts which are formed from the perfect base or the supine base all verbs add the same inflections** to those bases, though the formation of the bases themselves varies.

Obs. A few verbs belonging to the third conjugation have some forms according to the fourth conjugation (§ 170), and a very few are so irregular as not to be usually classed with any one of the four conjugations.

The four conjugations are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive active, which is

in the first conjugation	- Ārē (A conjugation)
„ second „	- Ērē (E „)
„ third „	- ĕrē (consonant conjugation)
„ fourth „	- Īrē (I conjugation)

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE BASES.

§ 136. From what has been said above (§ 135) it follows that, if the present infinitive active of a regular verb is known, all parts of the verb formed from the present base can be ascertained by reference to one of the model verbs.

To form any other parts of a verb, it is necessary to know the perfect base or the supine base. These bases cannot, in the case of verbs of the third conjugation, be ascertained from the present base by any rule; but the perfect and supine of each verb of this conjugation must be committed to memory. A list is given in §§ 189, 190.

In the case of verbs of the other three conjugations, the perfect and supine bases are, with some exceptions (§§ 187, 188, 191), regularly formed from the present base as follows:—

	Given the Present Base, found by cutting off from pres. infin. act.	To find the Perfect Base, add to the present base	To find the Supine Base, add to the present base
First Conjugation } Second Conjugation } Fourth Conjugation }	-āre, as from ām-āre -ēre, „ mōn-ēre -īre, „ aud-īre	-āv-, as in ām-āv-ī -ū-, „ mōn-ū-ī -iv-, „ aud-iv-ī	-āt-, as in ām-āt-um -īt-, „ mōn-īt-um -it-, „ aud-īt-um

In committing to memory the four regular conjugations the learner should notice the following points:—

PRESENT INDICATIVE AND IMPERATIVE.

§ 137. In the present indicative and in the imperative the characteristic vowel (*i.e.* **A** in the first conjugation, **E** in the second, and **I** in the fourth) occurs throughout, after the first person singular. In the third conjugation the place of a characteristic vowel is taken by *ē*, *ī*, or *u*.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

§ 138. The imperfect indicative ends in -bam, -bās, etc., in the active, and in -bār, -bāris, etc., in the passive, in all four conjugations, though the vowel preceding the *b* varies.

FUTURE INDICATIVE.

§ 139. The futura in the second conjugation resembles that in the first, except in the characteristic vowel; in the third conjugation the future is quite differently formed, and the future of the fourth conjugation resembles that of the third.

L. G.

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

§ 140. In the perfect indicative active the third person plural termination *-ērē* is chiefly used in poetry.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 141. In the third and fourth conjugations the present subjunctive is, in the first person singular, the same as the future indicative; in succeeding persons the future indicative has *e*, the present subjunctive *a*.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 142. The imperfect subjunctive (first person singular) may always be found by adding *m* for the active and *r* for the passive to the present infinitive active; and the pluperfect subjunctive active may be found by adding *m* to the perfect infinitive active.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE.

§ 143. The perfect subjunctive active is always (except in the first person singular) identical in form with the future-perfect indicative active.

FORMATION OF PASSIVE FROM ACTIVE.

§ 144. The passive (first person singular) of any tense formed from the present base may be found by adding *r* to the active, after the final *m* (if any) of the active has been dropped.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR PASSIVE.

§ 145. The second person singular in tenses of the passive which are formed from the present base ends in *-rē* more commonly than in *-rīs*, except in the present indicative; in that tense the ending *-rē* is so rare that it has not been included in the tables. (The preference for *-rīs* in the present indicative is due to a desire to avoid confusion with present infinitive active.)

MARKS OF QUANTITY.

§ 146. Attention must be paid to the marks of quantity over the terminations. In some instances the quantity is the only difference between two entirely different parts of the verb; e.g. *rĕgĕrĕ* is present infinitive active (*to rule*) or present imperative passive (*be ruled*), whereas *rĕgĕrĕ* is future indicative passive (*thou wilt be ruled*).

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.

§ 147. (i.) In the English translation of the second-person forms in the tables *thou* and *ye* are used for the sake of distinguishing singular and plural; the natural rendering is, of course, *you* for both numbers.

(ii.) The English renderings given in the following tables are by no means the only ones of which the several tenses admit; e.g. *mŏnĕō* may be rendered either *I advise* or *I am advising*; *mŏnĕōr*, *I am advised* or *I am being advised*.

(iii.) Various meanings are assigned to the subjunctive in order that the learner may not be misled into attempting to render this mood into English without regard to the context.

The translations in the paradigm, supplemented by § 121, will suffice until the syntax of the complex sentence is reached, if the following additional renderings in the present subjunctive are borne in mind in the case of each verb:—

<i>ām-ēt</i> , <i>let him love</i>		<i>ām-ēmūs</i> , <i>let us love</i>
		<i>ām-ent</i> , <i>let them love</i>
<i>am-ētūr</i> , <i>let him be loved</i>		<i>ām-ēmūr</i> , <i>let us be loved</i>
		<i>ām-entūr</i> , <i>let them be loved</i>

§ 148. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

* MODEL: *āmō, I love, I like.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ām-ārē, āmāv-ī, āmāt-um.*

BASES: *ām-* (present); *āmāv-* (perfect); *āmāt-* (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: *ām-ans* (gen. *āmant-is*), *loving.*
FUTURE: *āmāt-ūrus, āmāt-ūrā, āmāt-ūrum*, *about to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>ām-ō,</i>	<i>I love</i>	<i>ām-āmūs,</i>	<i>we love</i>
<i>ām-ās,</i>	<i>thou lovest</i>	<i>ām-ātis,</i>	<i>ye love</i>
<i>ām-āt,</i>	<i>he loves</i>	<i>ām-ant,</i>	<i>they love</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>ām-ābam,</i>	<i>I was loving</i>	<i>ām-ābāmūs,</i>	<i>we were loving</i>
<i>ām-ābās,</i>	<i>thou wast loving</i>	<i>ām-ābātis,</i>	<i>ye were loving</i>
<i>ām-ābāt,</i>	<i>he was loving</i>	<i>ām-ābant,</i>	<i>they were loving</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>ām-ābō,</i>	<i>I shall love</i>	<i>ām-ābimūs,</i>	<i>we shall love</i>
<i>ām-ābis,</i>	<i>thou wilt love</i>	<i>ām-ābitis,</i>	<i>ye will love</i>
<i>ām-ābit,</i>	<i>he will love</i>	<i>ām-ābunt,</i>	<i>they will love</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>āmāv-ī,</i>	<i>I loved or have loved</i>	<i>āmāv-īmūs,</i>	<i>we loved or have loved</i>
<i>āmāv-istī,</i>	<i>thou lovedst or hast loved</i>	<i>āmāv-istīs,</i>	<i>ye loved or have loved</i>
<i>āmāv-it,</i>	<i>he loved or has loved</i>	<i>āmāv-ērunt</i> or <i>āmāv-ērē,</i>	<i>they loved or have loved</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>āmāv-ēram,</i>	<i>I had loved</i>	<i>āmāv-ērāmūs,</i>	<i>we had loved</i>
<i>āmāv-ērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst loved</i>	<i>āmāv-ērātīs,</i>	<i>ye had loved</i>
<i>āmāv-ērāt,</i>	<i>he had loved</i>	<i>āmāv-ērant,</i>	<i>they had loved</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>āmāv-ērō,</i>	<i>I shall have loved</i>	<i>āmāv-ērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall have loved</i>
<i>āmāv-eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have loved</i>	<i>āmāv-ērītīs,</i>	<i>ye will have loved</i>
<i>āmāv-erit,</i>	<i>he will have loved</i>	<i>āmāv-ērint,</i>	<i>they will have loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

ām-em,	<i>I should love</i>	} (if) <i>I were to love</i> (in order that) <i>I may love</i> (so that) <i>I love</i> (although) <i>I love</i>
ām-es,	<i>thou wouldst love</i>	
ām-ēt,	<i>he would love</i>	
ām-ēmūs,	<i>we should love</i>	
ām-ētīs,	<i>ye would love</i>	
ām-ent,	<i>they would love</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ām-ārem,	<i>I should be loving</i>	} (if) <i>I were loving</i> (in order that) <i>I might love</i> (so that) <i>I loved</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I was loving</i>
ām-ārēs,	<i>thou wouldst be loving</i>	
ām-ārēt,	<i>he would be loving</i>	
ām-ārēmūs,	<i>we should be loving</i>	
ām-ārētīs,	<i>ye would be loving</i>	
ām-ārent,	<i>they would be loving</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

āmāv-ērim	} rare in principal sentences	} (if) <i>I were to have loved</i> (so that) <i>I loved or have loved</i> (although) <i>I have loved</i>
āmāv-ēris		
āmāv-ērit		
āmāv-ērimūs		
āmāv-ēritīs		
āmāv-ērint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

āmāv-issem,	<i>I should have loved</i>	} (if) <i>I had loved</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I had loved</i>
āmāv-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have loved</i>	
āmāv-issēt,	<i>he would have loved</i>	
āmāv-issēmūs,	<i>we should have loved</i>	
āmāv-issētīs,	<i>ye would have loved</i>	
āmāv-issent,	<i>they would have loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

ām-ā,	<i>love (thou)</i>	ām-ātē,	<i>love (ye)</i>
-------	--------------------	---------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

ām-ātō,	<i>thou shalt or must love</i>	ām-ātōtē,	<i>ye shall or must love</i>
ām-ātō,	<i>he shall or must love</i>	ām-antō,	<i>they shall or must love</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: ām-ārē,	<i>to love</i>
PERFECT: āmāv-issē,	<i>to have loved</i>
FUTURE: āmātūr-ūs essē,	<i>to be about to love</i>

GERUND.

(Nom. ām-andum)
Acc. ām-andum, <i>loving</i>
Gen. ām-andī
Dat. ām-andō
Abl. ām-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. āmāt-um, <i>to love</i>	Abl. āmāt-ū, <i>in loving</i>
------------------------------	-------------------------------

§ 149. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: mōnēō, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: mōn-ērē, mōnū-ī, mōnīt-um.

BASES: mōn- (present); mōnū- (perfect); mōnīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: mōn-ens (gen. mōnent-is), *advising.*
FUTURE: mōnīt-ūrus, mōnīt-ūrā, mōnīt-ūrum, *about to advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mōn-ēō,	<i>I advise</i>	mōn-ēmūs,	<i>we advise</i>
mōn-ēs,	<i>thou advisest</i>	mōn-ētis,	<i>ye advise</i>
mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises</i>	mōn-ent,	<i>they advise</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>we were advising</i>
mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	mōn-ēbātis,	<i>ye were advising</i>
mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising</i>	mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advising</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

mōn-ēbō,	<i>I shall advise</i>	mōn-ēbīmūs,	<i>we shall advise</i>
mōn-ēbīs,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	mōn-ēbītis,	<i>ye will advise</i>
mōn-ēbīt,	<i>he will advise</i>	mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

mōnū-ī,	<i>I advised or have advised</i>	mōnū-īmūs,	<i>we advised or have advised</i>
mōnū-istī,	<i>thou advisedst or hast advised</i>	mōnū-istīs,	<i>ye advised or have advised</i>
mōnū-īt,	<i>he advised or has advised</i>	mōnū-ērunt or mōnū-ērē,	<i>they advised or have advised</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

mōnū-ēram,	<i>I had advised</i>	mōnū-ērāmūs,	<i>we had advised</i>
mōnū-ērās,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	mōnū-ērātīs,	<i>ye had advised</i>
mōnū-ērāt,	<i>he had advised</i>	mōnū-ērant,	<i>they had advised</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

mōnū-ērō,	<i>I shall have advised</i>	mōnū-ērīmūs,	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have advised</i>
mōnū-ērīs,	<i>thou wilt have advised</i>	mōnū-ērītīs,	<i>ye will</i>	
mōnū-ērīt,	<i>he will have advised</i>	mōnū-ērint,	<i>they will</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. (See §§ 121, 147.)

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mõn-ëam,	<i>I should advise</i>	{	(if) <i>I were to advise</i> (in order that) <i>I may</i> advise (so that) <i>I advise</i> (although) <i>I advise</i>
mõn-ëas,	<i>thou wouldst advise</i>		
mõn-ëät,	<i>he would advise</i>		
mõn-ëamüs,	<i>we should advise</i>		
mõn-ëätis,	<i>ye would advise</i>		
mõn-ëant,	<i>they would advise</i>		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mõn-ërem,	<i>I should be advising</i>	{	(if) <i>I were advising</i> (in order that) <i>I might</i> advise (so that) <i>I advised</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I</i> was advising
mõn-ëres,	<i>thou wouldst be advising</i>		
mõn-ëret,	<i>he would be advising</i>		
mõn-ëremüs,	<i>we should be advising</i>		
mõn-ëretis,	<i>ye would be advising</i>		
mõn-ërent,	<i>they would be advising</i>		

PERFECT TENSE.

mõnũ-ërim	{	rare in principal sentences	{	(if) <i>I were to have ad-</i> vised (so that) <i>I advised or</i> have advised (although) <i>I have advised</i>
mõnũ-ëris				
mõnũ-ërit				
mõnũ-ërimüs				
mõnũ-ëritis				
mõnũ-ërint				

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

mõnũ-issēm,	<i>I should have advised</i>	{	(if) <i>I had advised</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I</i> had advised
mõnũ-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have advised</i>		
mõnũ-issēt,	<i>he would have advised</i>		
mõnũ-issēmüs,	<i>we should have advised</i>		
mõnũ-issētis,	<i>ye would have advised</i>		
mõnũ-issent,	<i>they would have advised</i>		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mõn-ë,	<i>advise (thou)</i>		mõn-ëtē,	<i>advise (ye)</i>
--------	----------------------	--	----------	--------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

mõn-ëtō,	<i>thou shalt or must advise</i>		mõn-ëtōtē,	<i>ye shall or must advise</i>
mõn-ëtō,	<i>he shall or must advise</i>		mõn-entō,	<i>they shall or must advise</i>

INFINITIVE:

GERUND.

PRESENT: mõn-ërē, to advise	(Nom. mõn-endum)
PERFECT: mõnũ-issē, to have advised	Acc. mõn-endum, advising
FUTURE: mõnitũr-üs essē, to be about to advise	Gen. mõn-endī
	Dat. mõn-endō
	Abl. mõn-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. mõnit-um, to advise		Abl. mõnit-ũ in advising
--------------------------	--	--------------------------

§ 150. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.— ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL : rĕgō, *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : rĕg-ĕrĕ, rex-ī, rect-um.

BASES : rĕg- (present); rex- (perfect); rect- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: rĕg-ens (gen. rĕgent-is), *ruling.*
FUTURE: rect-ūrus, rect-ūra, rect-ūrum, *about to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-ō,	<i>I rule</i>	rĕg-īmūs,	<i>we rule</i>
rĕg-is,	<i>thou rulest</i>	rĕg-ītīs,	<i>ye rule</i>
rĕg-it,	<i>he rules</i>	rĕg-unt,	<i>they rule</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

rĕg-ĕbam,	<i>I was ruling</i>	rĕg-ĕbāmūs,	<i>we were ruling</i>
rĕg-ĕbās,	<i>thou wast ruling</i>	rĕg-ĕbātīs,	<i>ye were ruling</i>
rĕg-ĕbāt,	<i>he was ruling</i>	rĕg-ĕbant,	<i>they were ruling</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

rĕg-am,	<i>I shall rule</i>	rĕg-ēmūs,	<i>we shall rule</i>
rĕg-ēs,	<i>thou wilt rule</i>	rĕg-ētīs,	<i>ye will rule</i>
rĕg-ēt,	<i>he will rule</i>	rĕg-ent,	<i>they will rule</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

rex-ī,	<i>I ruled or have ruled</i>	rex-īmūs,	<i>we ruled or have ruled</i>
rex-istī,	<i>thou ruledst or hast ruled</i>	rex-istīs,	<i>ye ruled or have ruled</i>
rex-īt,	<i>he ruled or has ruled</i>	rex-ērunt or rex-ĕrĕ,	<i>they ruled or have ruled</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rex-ĕram,	<i>I had ruled</i>	rex-ĕrāmūs,	<i>we had ruled</i>
rex-ĕrās,	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	rex-ĕrātīs,	<i>ye had ruled</i>
rex-ĕrāt,	<i>he had ruled</i>	rex-ĕrant,	<i>they had ruled</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

rex-ĕrō,	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	rex-ĕrīmūs,	<i>we shall have ruled</i>
rex-ĕris,	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	rex-ĕrītīs,	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
rex-ĕrit,	<i>he will have ruled</i>	rex-ĕrint,	<i>they will have ruled</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-am,	<i>I should rule</i>	} (if) <i>I were to rule</i> (in order that) <i>I may rule</i> (so that) <i>I rule</i> (although) <i>I rule</i>
rĕg-ās,	<i>thou wouldst rule</i>	
rĕg-āt,	<i>he would rule</i>	
rĕg-āmūs,	<i>we should rule</i>	
rĕg-ātis,	<i>ye would rule</i>	
rĕg-ant,	<i>they would rule</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

rĕg-ĕrem,	<i>I should be ruling</i>	} (if) <i>I were ruling</i> (in order that) <i>I might rule</i> (so that) <i>I ruled</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I was ruling</i>
rĕg-ĕrēs,	<i>thou wouldst be ruling</i>	
rĕg-ĕrēt,	<i>he should be ruling</i>	
rĕg-ĕrēmūs,	<i>we should be ruling</i>	
rĕg-ĕrētis,	<i>ye would be ruling</i>	
rĕg-ĕrent,	<i>they would be ruling</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

rex-ĕrim	} rare in principal sentences	} (if) <i>I were to have ruled</i> (so that) <i>I ruled or have ruled</i> (although) <i>I have ruled</i>
rex-ĕris		
rex-ĕrit		
rex-ĕrimūs		
rex-ĕritis		
rex-ĕrint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rex-issēm,	<i>I should have ruled</i>	} (if) <i>I had ruled</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I had ruled</i>
rex-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have ruled</i>	
rex-issēt,	<i>he would have ruled</i>	
rex-issēmūs,	<i>we should have ruled</i>	
rex-issētis,	<i>ye would have ruled</i>	
rex-issent,	<i>they would have ruled</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-ĕ,	<i>rule (thou)</i>	rĕg-itĕ,	<i>rule (ye)</i>
--------	--------------------	----------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

rĕg-itō,	<i>thou shalt or must rule</i>	rĕg-itōtĕ,	<i>ye shall or must rule</i>
rĕg-itō,	<i>he shall or must rule</i>	rĕg-untō,	<i>they shall or must rule</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

PRESENT: rĕg-ĕrĕ, to rule	(Nom. rĕg-endum)
PERFECT: rex-issē, to have ruled	Acc. rĕg-endum, ruling
	Gen. rĕg-endi
FUTURE: rectūr-ūs essē, to be about to rule	Dat. rĕg-endō
	Abl. rĕg-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. rect-um, to rule	Abl. rect-ū, in ruling
-----------------------	------------------------

§ 151. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: audīō, *I hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: aud-īrē, audīv-ī, audīt-um.

BASES: aud- (present); audīv- (perfect); audīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: aud-īens (gen. audient-is), *hearing*.
FUTURE: audit-ūrus, audit-ūrā, audit-ūrum, *about to hear*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-īō, <i>I hear</i>	aud-īmūs, <i>we hear</i>
aud-īs, <i>thou hearest</i>	aud-itīs, <i>ye hear</i>
aud-it, <i>he hears</i>	aud-iunt, <i>they hear</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-ībam, <i>I was hearing</i>	aud-ībāmūs, <i>we were hearing</i>
aud-ībās, <i>thou wast hearing</i>	aud-ībātīs, <i>ye were hearing</i>
aud-ībāt, <i>he was hearing</i>	aud-ībant, <i>they were hearing</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iam, <i>I shall hear</i>	aud-īemūs, <i>we shall hear</i>
aud-ies, <i>thou wilt hear</i>	aud-ietīs, <i>ye will hear</i>
aud-iēt, <i>he will hear</i>	aud-ient, <i>they will hear</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ī, <i>I heard or have heard</i>	audīv-īmūs, <i>we heard or have heard</i>
audīv-istī, <i>thou heardst or hast heard</i>	audīv-istīs, <i>ye heard or have heard</i>
audīv-it, <i>he heard or has heard</i>	audīv-ērunt, <i>they heard or have heard</i>
	or audīv-ērē, <i>heard</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-eram, <i>I had heard</i>	audīv-ērāmūs, <i>we had heard</i>
audīv-ērās, <i>thou hadst heard</i>	audīv-ērātīs, <i>ye had heard</i>
audīv-ērāt, <i>he had heard</i>	audīv-erant, <i>they had heard</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ērō, <i>I shall have heard</i>	audīv-ērīmūs, <i>we shall have heard</i>
audīv-ērīs, <i>thou wilt have heard</i>	audīv-eritīs, <i>ye will have heard</i>
audīv-erit, <i>he will have heard</i>	audīv-erint, <i>they will have heard</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-īam,	<i>I should hear</i>	} (if) <i>I were to hear</i> (in order that) <i>I may hear</i> (so that) <i>I hear</i> (although) <i>I hear</i>
aud-īās,	<i>thou wouldst hear</i>	
aud-īāt,	<i>he would hear</i>	
aud-īāmūs,	<i>we should hear</i>	
aud-īātīs,	<i>ye would hear</i>	
aud-īant,	<i>they would hear</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-īrem,	<i>I should be hearing</i>	} (if) <i>I were hearing</i> (in order that) <i>I might hear</i> (so that) <i>I heard</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I was hearing</i>
aud-īrēs,	<i>thou wouldst be hearing</i>	
aud-īrēt,	<i>he would be hearing</i>	
aud-īrēmūs,	<i>we should be hearing</i>	
aud-īrētīs,	<i>ye would be hearing</i>	
aud-īrent,	<i>they would be hearing</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ērim	} rare in principal sentences	} (if) <i>I were to have heard</i> (so that) <i>I heard or have heard</i> (although) <i>I have heard</i>
audīv-ērīs		
audīv-ērīt		
audīv-ērīmūs		
audīv-ērītīs		
audīv-ērīnt		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-issem,	<i>I should have heard</i>	} (if) <i>I had heard</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I had heard</i>
audīv-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have heard</i>	
audīv-issēt,	<i>he would have heard</i>	
audīv-issēmūs,	<i>we should have heard</i>	
audīv-issētīs,	<i>ye would have heard</i>	
audīv-issent,	<i>they would have heard</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ī,	<i>hear (thou)</i>	aud-ītē,	<i>hear (ye)</i>
--------	--------------------	----------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ītō,	<i>thou shalt or must hear</i>	aud-ītōtē,	<i>ye shall or must hear</i>
aud-ītō,	<i>he shall or must hear</i>	aud-īuntō,	<i>they shall or must hear</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT:	aud-īrē, <i>to hear</i>
PERFECT:	audīv-issē, <i>to have heard</i>
FUTURE:	audītūr-ūs <i>essē, to be about to hear</i>

GERUND.

(Nom.)	aud-īendum
Acc.	aud-īendum, <i>hearing</i>
Gen.	aud-īendī
Dat.	aud-īendō
Abl.	aud-īendō

SUPINE.

Acc. audīt-um, <i>to hear</i>	Abl. audīt-ū, <i>in hearing</i>
-------------------------------	---------------------------------

ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF VERBS (ACTIVE).

§ 152. *Imperfect Indicative*.—In the fourth conjugation **i** is occasionally found instead of **iē** before the **b**; e.g. **audībant** is sometimes used for the ordinary form **audiēbant**.

§ 153. *Tenses formed from the Perfect Base*.—Most verbs of which the perfect base ends in **v** have also a shorter form of their perfect tenses without the **v**. In such forms the absence of **v** leads (except in the case of **ie**, and sometimes of **ii**) to a contraction of vowels in which the latter vowel disappears; e.g.—

	First Conjugation.		Fourth Conjugation.	
	Longer Form.	Shorter Form.	Longer Form.	Shorter Form.
Indic. Perf.	āmāvistī	āmastī	audīvistī	{ audīistī audistī
" "	—	—	audīvīt	audīīt
" "	āmāvistīs	āmastīs	audīvistīs	{ audīistīs audistīs
" "	āmāvērunt	āmārunt	audīvērunt	audīērunt
" "	—	—	audīvērē	audīērē
" Plupf.	āmāvēram	āmāram	audīvēram	audīēram
" Fut.-Perf.	āmāvērō	āmārō	audīvērō	audīērō
Subj. Perf.	āmāvērim	āmārim	audīvērim	audīērim
" Plupf.	āmāvissem	āmassem	audīvissem	{ audīissem audissem
Inf. Perf.	āmāvissē	āmassē	audīvissē	{ audīissē audissē

Obs. 1. The shorter forms are hardly ever found in the perfect indicative (1) in the first person, singular or plural, (2) in the third person singular of the first conjugation, (3) in the third person plural ending in **-rē** in the first conjugation, as a form such as **āmārē** (for **āmāvērē**) would not be distinguishable from the present infinitive. In other tenses the shorter forms occur in all three persons both singular and plural.

Obs. 2. Where no contraction of vowels takes place in the shorter forms, i.e. with **ie** and sometimes with **ii**, the former vowel is short; e.g. **audīērē** (longer form **audīvērē**), **audīīt** (longer form **audīvīt**).

§ 154. *Future-Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive*.—In the first person plural and the second person singular and plural of these tenses the **i** following the **r** in the suffix is in the tables marked short (e.g. **audīvērimūs**, **audīvērīs**, **audīvērītīs**), and it is usually so pronounced. This **i** is, however, occasionally found long; e.g. from **audīō** we have in one passage **audīēris** (= **audīvēris**), and in other places forms occur corresponding to **audīvērimūs**, **audīvērītīs**.

§ 155. *Gerund*.—For the ending **-undum**, see § 161.

ADDITIONAL TENSES OF VERBS (ACTIVE).

§ 156. The future participle of any verb may be used with the indicative or subjunctive or the infinitive (present or perfect) of the verb *sum*, *I am*, as shown below.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

WITH THE PRESENT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs <i>sum</i> , <i>I am about to</i> <i>love</i>	āmātūr-ī sūmūs, <i>we are about to</i> <i>love</i>
āmātūr-ūs <i>ēs</i> , <i>thou art about to</i> <i>love</i>	āmātūr-ī estīs, <i>ye are about to</i> <i>love</i>
āmātūr-ūs <i>est</i> , <i>he is about to love</i>	āmātūr-ī <i>sunt</i> , <i>they are about to</i> <i>love</i>

WITH THE IMPERFECT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *eram*, *I was about to love.* etc. etc.

WITH THE FUTURE TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *erō*, *I shall be about to love.* etc. etc.

WITH THE PERFECT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *fui*, *I was or have been about to love.* etc. etc.

WITH THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *fueram*, *I had been about to love.* etc. etc.

WITH THE FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *fuerō*, *I shall have been about to love.* etc. etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

WITH THE PRESENT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *sim*.

WITH THE IMPERFECT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *essem* (or *forem*).

WITH THE PERFECT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *fuissem*.

WITH THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

āmātūr-ūs *fuissem*.

INFINITIVE.

WITH THE PRESENT TENSE: āmātūr-ūs *essē*, *to be about to love.*

„ „ PERFECT „ āmātūr-ūs *fuisse*, *to have been about to*
love.

Obs. The future participle, being an adjective, must be in the same gender, number, and case as the substantive to which it refers: e.g. *rex āmātūrūs est*, *the king is about to love*; *rēginā āmātūrā est*, *the queen is about to love.* Cp. § 122, *Obs.*

§ 157. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: *ămō, I love, I like.*

BASES: *ăm-* (present); *ămāv-* (perfect); *ămāt-* (supine).

FARTICIPLES { PERFECT: *ămāt-ūs, ămāt-ă, ămāt-um, loved or having been loved.*
GERUNDIVE: *ăm-andūs, ăm-andă, ăm-andum, fit to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>ăm-ōr,</i>	<i>I am loved</i>	<i>ăm-ămūr,</i>	<i>we are loved</i>
<i>ăm-ăris,</i>	<i>thou art loved</i>	<i>ăm-ăminī,</i>	<i>ye are loved</i>
<i>ăm-ătūr,</i>	<i>he is loved</i>	<i>ăm-antūr,</i>	<i>they are loved</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>ăm-ăbār,</i>	<i>I was being loved</i>	<i>ăm-ăbămūr,</i>	<i>we were being loved</i>
<i>ăm-ăbăris or</i>	<i>thou wast being</i>	<i>ăm-ăbăminī,</i>	<i>ye were being loved</i>
<i>ăm-ăbărē,</i>	<i>loved</i>		
<i>ăm-ăbătūr,</i>	<i>he was being loved</i>	<i>ăm-ăbantūr,</i>	<i>they were being loved</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>ăm-ăbōr,</i>	<i>I shall be loved</i>	<i>ăm-ăbīmūr,</i>	<i>we shall be loved</i>
<i>ăm-ăbăris or</i>		<i>ăm-ăbīminī,</i>	<i>ye will be loved</i>
<i>ăm-ăbărē,</i>	<i>thou wilt be loved</i>		
<i>ăm-ăbitūr,</i>	<i>he will be loved</i>	<i>ăm-ăbuntūr,</i>	<i>they will be loved</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>ămāt-ūs sum,</i>	<i>I was or have been loved</i>	<i>ămāt-ī sūmūs,</i>	<i>we were or have been loved</i>
<i>ămāt-ūs ēs,</i>	<i>thou wast or hast been loved</i>	<i>ămāt-ī estīs,</i>	<i>ye were or have been loved</i>
<i>ămāt-ūs est,</i>	<i>he was or has been loved</i>	<i>ămāt-ī sunt,</i>	<i>they were or have been loved</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>ămāt-ūs eram,</i>	<i>I had</i>	} <i>been loved</i>	<i>ămāt-ī eramūs,</i>	<i>we had</i>	} <i>been loved</i>
<i>ămāt-ūs erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst</i>		<i>ămāt-ī erātīs,</i>	<i>ye had</i>	
<i>ămāt-ūs ērāt,</i>	<i>he had</i>		<i>ămāt-ī erant,</i>	<i>they had</i>	

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>ămāt-ūs erō,</i>	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have been loved</i>	<i>ămāt-ī erēmūs,</i>	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have been loved</i>
<i>ămāt-ūs ērīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt</i>		<i>ămāt-ī ērītīs,</i>	<i>ye will</i>	
<i>ămāt-ūs ērīt,</i>	<i>he will</i>		<i>ămāt-ī erunt,</i>	<i>they will</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

ăm-ēr,	<i>I should be loved</i>	{ (if) <i>I were to be loved</i> (in order that) <i>I may be loved</i> (so that) <i>I am loved</i> (although) <i>I am loved</i>
ăm-ērīs or ăm-ērē,	<i>thou wouldst be loved</i>	
ăm-ētūr,	<i>he would be loved</i>	
ăm-ēmūr,	<i>we should be loved</i>	
ăm-ēmīnī, ăm-entūr,	<i>ye would be loved</i> <i>they would be loved</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ăm-ārēr,	<i>I should be loved</i>	{ (if) <i>I were being loved</i> (in order that) <i>I might be loved</i> (so that) <i>I was loved</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I was being loved</i>
ăm-ārēmīs or ăm-ārērē,	<i>thou wouldst be loved</i>	
ăm-ārētūr,	<i>he would be loved</i>	
ăm-ārēmūr,	<i>we should be loved</i>	
ăm-ārēmīnī, ăm-ārentūr,	<i>ye would be loved</i> <i>they would be loved</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

ămāt-ūs sim ămāt-ūs sīs ămāt-ūs sīt ămāt-i simūs ămāt-i sītīs ămāt-i sint	{ rare in principal sentences	{ (if) <i>I were to have been loved</i> (so that) <i>I was loved or have been loved</i> (although) <i>I have been loved</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ămāt-ūs essem,	<i>I should have been loved</i>	{ (if) <i>I had been loved</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I had been loved</i>
ămāt-ūs essēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved</i>	
ămāt-ūs essēt,	<i>he would have been loved</i>	
ămāt-i essēmūs,	<i>we should have been loved</i>	
ămāt-i essētīs, ămāt-i essent,	<i>ye would have been loved</i> <i>they would have been loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

ăm-ārē, <i>be (thou) loved</i>		ăm-āmīnī, <i>be (ye) loved</i>
--------------------------------	--	--------------------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

ăm-ātōr, <i>thou shalt or must be loved</i>		ăm-antōr, <i>they shall or must be loved</i>
ăm-ātōr, <i>he shall or must be loved</i>		

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: ăm-ārī,	<i>to be loved</i>
PERFECT: ămāt-ūs essē,	<i>to have been loved</i>
FUTURE: ămātum irī	<i>to be about to be loved</i>

§ 15: ND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL : mōnēō, *I advise.*

BASES : mōn- (present) ; mōnŭ- (perfect) ; mōnīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT : mōnīt-ūs, mōnīt-ā, mōnīt-um, *advised* or *having been advised.*
GERUNDIVE : mōn-endŭs, mōn-endā, mōn-endum, *fit to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mōn-ēōr,	<i>I am advised</i>	mōn-ēmŭr,	<i>we are advised</i>
mōn-ēris,	<i>thou art advised</i>	mōn-ēmīnī,	<i>ye are advised</i>
mōn-ētŭr,	<i>he is advised</i>	mōn-entŭr,	<i>they are advised</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mōn-ēbār,	<i>I was being</i>	mōn-ēbāmŭr,	<i>we were being</i>
mōn-ēbāris or	<i>thou wast</i>	mōn-ēbāmīnī,	<i>ye were being</i>
mōn-ēbārē,	<i>being</i>		
mōn-ēbātŭr,	<i>he was being</i>	mōn-ēbantŭr,	<i>they were being</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

mōn-ēbōr,	<i>I shall be advised</i>	mōn-ēbīmŭr,	<i>we shall be advised</i>
mōn-ēbēris or	<i>thou wilt be advised</i>	mōn-ēbīmīnī,	<i>ye will be advised</i>
mōn-ēbērē,	<i>vised</i>		
mōn-ēbitŭr,	<i>he will be advised</i>	mōn-ēbuntŭr,	<i>they will be advised</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

mōnīt-ūs sum,	<i>I was or have been advised</i>	mōnīt-ī sūmŭs,	<i>we were or have been advised</i>
mōnīt-ūs ēs,	<i>thou wast or hast been advised</i>	mōnīt-ī estis,	<i>ye were or have been advised</i>
mōnīt-ūs est,	<i>he was or has been advised</i>	mōnīt-ī sunt,	<i>*they were or have been advised</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

mōnīt-ūs ēram,	<i>I had been</i>	mōnīt-ī ērāmŭs,	<i>we had been</i>
mōnīt-ūs ērās,	<i>thou hadst</i>	mōnīt-ī ērātis,	<i>ye had been</i>
	<i>been</i>		
mōnīt-ūs ērāt,	<i>he had. been</i>	mōnīt-ī ērant,	<i>they had been</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

mōnīt-ūs ērō,	<i>I shall have been</i>	mōnīt-ī ērīmŭs,	<i>we shall have been</i>
mōnīt-ūs ēris,	<i>thou wilt</i>	mōnīt-ī ērītis,	<i>ye will</i>
mōnīt-ūs ērit,	<i>he will</i>	mōnīt-ī ērunt,	<i>they will</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mön-ëär,	<i>I should be advised</i>	<i>(if) I were to be advised (in order that) I may be advised (so that I am advised (although) I am advised</i>
mön-ëäris or mön-ëärë,	<i>thou wouldst be advised</i>	
mön-ëätür,*	<i>he would be advised</i>	
mön-ëämür,	<i>we should be advised</i>	
mön-ëäminī,	<i>ye would be advised</i>	
mön-ëantür,	<i>they would be advised</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mön-ërër,	<i>I should be advised</i>	<i>(if) I were being advised (in order that) I might be advised (so that) I was advised (when, although, etc.) I was being advised</i>
mön-ërëri or mön-ërëre,	<i>thou wouldst be advised</i>	
mön-ërëtür,	<i>he would be advised</i>	
mön-ërëmür,	<i>we should be advised</i>	
mön-ërëminī,	<i>ye would be advised</i>	
mön-ërentür,	<i>they would be advised</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

mönit-üs sim	<i>rare in principal sentences</i>	<i>(if) I were to have been advised (so that) I was advised or have been advised (although) I have been advised</i>
mönit-üs sis		
mönit-üs sit		
mönit-i simūs		
mönit-i sitis		
mönit-i sint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

mönit-üs essem,	<i>I should have been advised</i>	<i>(if) I had been advised (when, although, etc.) I had been advised</i>
mönit-üs essēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been advised</i>	
mönit-üs essēt,	<i>he would have been advised</i>	
mönit-i essēmūs,	<i>we should have been advised</i>	
mönit-i essētis,	<i>ye would have been advised</i>	
mönit-i essent,	<i>they would have been advised</i>	

• IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mön-ërë,	<i>be (thou) advised</i>		mön-ëminī, <i>be (ye) advised</i>
----------	--------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

mön-ëtör,	<i>thou must be advised</i>		mön-entür, <i>they must be advised</i>
mön-ëtör,	<i>he must be advised</i>		

INFINITIVE:

PRESENT : mön-ëri,	<i>to be advised</i>
PERFECT : mönit-üs essē,	<i>to have been advised</i>
FUTURE : mönitum iri,	<i>to be about to be advised</i>

§ 159. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.— PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL : rēgō, *I rule.*

BASES : rēg- (present) ; rex- (perfect) ; rect- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT : rect-ūs, rect-ā, rect-um, *ruled or having been ruled.*
GERUNDIVE : rēg-endūs, rēg-endā, rēg-endum, *fit to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rēg-ōr,	<i>I am ruled</i>	rēg-īmūr,	<i>we are ruled</i>
rēg-ēris,	<i>thou art ruled</i>	rēg-imīni,	<i>ye are ruled</i>
rēg-itūr,	<i>he is ruled</i>	rēg-untūr,	<i>they are ruled</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

rēg-ēbār,	<i>I was being ruled</i>	rēg-ēbāmūr,	<i>we were being ruled</i>
rēg-ēbāris or	<i>thou wast being</i>	rēg-ēbāmīni,	<i>ye were being ruled</i>
rēg-ēbārē,	<i>ruled</i>		
rēg-ēbātūr,	<i>he was being ruled</i>	rēg-ēbantūr,	<i>they were being ruled</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

rēg-ār,	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	rēg-ēmūr,	<i>we shall be ruled</i>
rēg-ēris or		rēg-ēmīni,	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
rēg-ērē	<i>thou wilt be ruled</i>		
rēg-ētūr,	<i>he will be ruled</i>	rēg-entūr,	<i>they will be ruled</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-ūs sum,	<i>I was or have been ruled</i>	rect-i sūmūs,	<i>we were or have been ruled</i>
rect-ūs es,	<i>thou wast or hast been ruled</i>	rect-i estis,	<i>ye were or have been ruled</i>
rect-ūs est,	<i>he was or has been ruled</i>	rect-i sunt,	<i>they were or have been ruled</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-ūs ēram,	<i>I had</i>	} <i>been ruled</i>	rect-i ērāmūs,	<i>we had</i>	} <i>been ruled</i>
rect-ūs ēras,	<i>thou hadst</i>		rect-i ērātīs,	<i>ye had</i>	
rect-ūs ērāt,	<i>he had</i>		rect-i ērant,	<i>they had</i>	

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

rect-ūs ērō,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have been ruled</i>	rect-i ērīmūs,	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have been ruled</i>
rect-ūs ēris,	<i>thou wilt</i>		rect-i ēritīs,	<i>ye will</i>	
rect-ūs ērit,	<i>he will</i>		rect-i ērunt,	<i>they will</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-ār,	<i>I should be ruled</i>	} (if) <i>I were to be ruled</i> (in order that) <i>I may be ruled</i> (so that) <i>I am ruled</i> (although) <i>I am ruled</i>
rĕg-āris or rĕg-ārē,	<i>thou wouldst be ruled</i>	
rĕg-ātūr,	<i>he would be ruled</i>	
rĕg-āmūr,	<i>we should be ruled</i>	
rĕg-āmīnī,	<i>ye would be ruled</i>	
rĕg-antūr,	<i>they would be ruled</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

rĕg-ērĕr,	<i>I should be ruled</i>	} (if) <i>I were being ruled</i> (in order that) <i>I might be ruled</i> (so that) <i>I was ruled</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I was being ruled</i>
rĕg-ērĕrĭs or rĕg-ērĕrē,	<i>thou wouldst be ruled</i>	
rĕg-ērĕtūr,	<i>he would be ruled</i>	
rĕg-ērĕmūr,	<i>we should be ruled</i>	
rĕg-ērĕmīnī,	<i>ye would be ruled</i>	
rĕg-ĕrentūr,	<i>they would be ruled</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-ūs sim	} rare in principal sentences	} (if) <i>I were to have been ruled</i> (so that) <i>I was ruled or have been ruled</i> (although) <i>I have been ruled</i>
rect-ūs sis		
rect-ūs sit		
rect-ī simūs		
rect-ī sitīs		
rect-ī sint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-ūs essem,	<i>I should have been ruled</i>	} (if) <i>I had been ruled</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I had been ruled</i>
rect-ūs essēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been ruled</i>	
rect-ūs essēt,	<i>he would have been ruled</i>	
rect-ī essēmūs,	<i>we should have been ruled</i>	
rect-ī essētīs,	<i>ye would have been ruled</i>	
rect-ī essent,	<i>they would have been ruled</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-ērē,	<i>be (thou) ruled</i>		rĕg-īmīnī,	<i>be (ye) ruled</i>
----------	------------------------	--	------------	----------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

rĕg-ītōr,	<i>thou must be ruled</i>		rĕg-untōr,	<i>they must be ruled</i>
rĕg-itōr,	<i>he must be ruled</i>			

INFINITIVE:

PRESENT: rĕg-ī,	<i>to be ruled</i>
PERFECT: rect-ūs essē,	<i>to have been ruled</i>
FUTURE: rectum īrī,	<i>to be about to be ruled</i>

§ 160. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: audiō, *I hear.*

BASES: aud- (present); audi- (perfect); audit- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: audit-ūs, audit-ā, audit-um, *heard or having been heard*
GERUNDIVE: aud-iendūs, aud-iendā, aud-iendum, *fit to be heard*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iōr,	<i>I am heard</i>	aud-iēmūr,	<i>we are heard</i>
aud-iris,	<i>thou art heard</i>	aud-imīnī,	<i>ye are heard</i>
aud-itūr,	<i>he is heard</i>	aud-iuntūr,	<i>they are heard</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-iēbār,	<i>I was being heard</i>	aud-iēbāmūr,	<i>we were being heard</i>
aud-iēbāris or	<i>thou wast being heard</i>	aud-iēbāmīnī,	<i>ye were being heard</i>
aud-iēbārē,	<i>he was being heard</i>	aud-iēbantūr,	<i>they were being heard</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iār,	<i>I shall be heard</i>	aud-iēmūr,	<i>we shall be heard</i>
aud-iēris or	<i>thou wilt be heard</i>	aud-imīnī,	<i>ye will be heard</i>
aud-iērē,	<i>he will be heard</i>	aud-iēntūr,	<i>they will be heard</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

audit-ūs sum,	<i>I was or have been heard</i>	audit-i sūmūs,	<i>we were or have been heard</i>
audit-ūs es,	<i>thou wast or hast been heard</i>	audit-i estīs,	<i>ye were or have been heard</i>
audit-ūs est,	<i>he was or has been heard</i>	audit-i sunt,	<i>they were or have been heard</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audit-ūs eram,	<i>I had been heard</i>	audit-i ērāmūs,	<i>we had been heard</i>
audit-ūs erās,	<i>thou hadst been heard</i>	audit-i ērātīs,	<i>ye had been heard</i>
audit-ūs erāt,	<i>he had been heard</i>	audit-i erant,	<i>they had been heard</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audit-ūs erō,	<i>I shall have been heard</i>	audit-i ērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been heard</i>
audit-ūs eris,	<i>thou wilt have been heard</i>	audit-i ērītīs,	<i>ye will have been heard</i>
audit-ūs erit,	<i>he will have been heard</i>	audit-i erunt,	<i>they will have been heard</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-īār,	<i>I should be heard</i>	} (if) <i>I were to be heard</i> (in order that) <i>I may be heard</i> (so that) <i>I am heard</i> (although) <i>I am heard</i>
aud-īāris or aud-īārē,	<i>thou wouldst be heard</i>	
aud-īātūr,	<i>he would be heard</i>	
aud-īāmūr,	<i>we should be heard</i>	
aud-īāminī,	<i>ye would be heard</i>	
aud-īantūr,	<i>they would be heard</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-irēr,	<i>I should be heard</i>	} (if) <i>I were being heard</i> (in order that) <i>I might be heard</i> (so that) <i>I was heard</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I was being heard</i>
aud-irērī or aud-irērē,	<i>thou wouldst be heard</i>	
aud-irētūr,	<i>he would be heard</i>	
aud-irēmūr,	<i>we should be heard</i>	
aud-irēmīnī,	<i>ye would be heard</i>	
aud-irentūr,	<i>they would be heard</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

audit-ūs sim	} rare in principal sentences	} (if) <i>I were to have been heard</i> (so that) <i>I was heard or have been heard</i> (although) <i>I have been heard</i>
audit-ūs sis		
audit-ūs sit		
audit-i simūs		
audit-i sitīs		
audit-i sint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audit-ūs essem,	<i>I should have been heard</i>	} (if) <i>I had been heard</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I had been heard</i>
audit-ūs essēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been heard</i>	
audit-ūs essēt,	<i>he would have been heard</i>	
audit-ilessēmūs.	<i>we should have been heard</i>	
audit-i essētīs,	<i>ye would have been heard</i>	
audit-i essent,	<i>they would have been heard</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-irē,	<i>be (thou) heard</i>	aud-īmīnī,	<i>be (ye) heard</i>
----------	------------------------	------------	----------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ītōr,	<i>thou must be heard</i>	} aud-īuntōr,	<i>they must be heard</i>
aud-ītōr,	<i>he must be heard</i>		

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :	aud-īrī,	<i>to be heard</i>
PERFECT :	audit-ūs essē,	<i>to have been heard</i>
FUTURE :	auditum īrī,	<i>to be about to be heard</i>

ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF VERBS (PASSIVE).

§ 161. *Gerundive*. In the third and fourth conjugations the terminations *-und-ūs*, *-iund-ūs*, are sometimes used instead of *-end-ūs*, *-iend-ūs*; thus we find *rēgundūs* for the more usual *rēgendūs*, and forms corresponding to *audiundūs* instead of *audiendūs*.

[A similar variation is found in the gerund; *e.g.* *pētundi* (genitive), from *pētō*, *I seek*; *vēniundum* (nominative), from *vēnō*, *I come*.]

§ 162. *Pluperfect Subjunctive*.—This tense consists of the perfect participle of the verb and the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*. On reference to § 134 it will be seen that the latter has two forms, *essem* and *fōrem*, *essēs* and *fōrēs*, etc. Either of these may be used in the formation of the pluperfect subjunctive, though only the more usual form (*essem*, etc.) is, to save space, given in the preceding tables.

Thus, the pluperfect subjunctive passive of *āmō* may be conjugated as follows:—

<i>āmāt-ūs fōrem</i> , <i>I should have been loved</i>	<i>āmāt-i fōrēmūs</i> , <i>we should have been loved</i>
<i>āmāt-ūs fōrēs</i> , <i>thou wouldst have been loved</i>	<i>āmāt-i fōrētis</i> , <i>ye would have been loved</i>
<i>āmāt-ūs fōrēt</i> , <i>he would have been loved</i>	<i>āmāt-i fōrent</i> , <i>they would have been loved</i>

§ 163. *Present Infinitive*.—A longer form, common in early Latin, is occasionally found in the poetry of the classical age; it consists of the ordinary present infinitive passive (of which the final *i* is shortened) and the syllable *-ēr*. The following are examples:—

	Present Indic. Act.		Pres. Inf. Pass.	Pres. Inf. Pass. (old form).
First Conjugation	{ <i>cūr-ō</i> , <i>I care for</i> <i>laud-ō</i> , <i>I praise</i>		<i>cūr-ārī</i> <i>laud-ārī</i>	<i>cūr-ārīēr</i> <i>laud-ārīēr</i>
Second Conjugation	{ <i>immisc-ēō</i> , <i>I mingle</i> <i>torqu-ēō</i> , <i>I twist</i>		<i>immisc-ērī</i> <i>torqu-ērī</i>	<i>immisc-ērīēr</i> <i>torqu-ērīēr</i>
Third Conjugation	{ <i>admitt-ō</i> , <i>I admit</i> <i>dēfend-ō</i> , <i>I defend</i>		<i>admitt-ī</i> <i>dēfend-ī</i>	<i>admitt-īēr</i> <i>dēfend-īēr</i>
Fourth Conjugation	{ <i>moll-iō</i> , <i>I soften</i> <i>rēpēr-iō</i> , <i>I find</i>		<i>moll-irī</i> <i>rēpēr-irī</i>	<i>moll-irīēr</i> <i>rēpēr-irīēr</i>

ADDITIONAL TENSES OF VERBS (PASSIVE).

§ 164. The perfect participle is frequently found in combination with one or other of those portions of the verb *sum*, *I am*, which are formed from the perfect base, as shown below. To illustrate the exact meaning of these tenses (to which no special names have been given), it will be convenient to take, instead of one of the model verbs conjugated in this chapter, the verb

pār-ō, pār-ārē, pārāv-i, pārāt-um, I make ready,
which has perfect participle *pārāt-ūs, ready or made ready.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

WITH THE PERFECT TENSE.

<i>pārāt-ūs fūi, I was ready</i>	<i>pārāt-i fūimūs, we were ready</i>
<i>pārāt-ūs fūisti, thou wast ready</i>	<i>pārāt-i fūistis, ye were ready</i>
<i>pārāt-ūs fūit, he was ready</i>	<i>pārāt-i fūerant or fūerē, they were ready</i>

WITH THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

pārāt-ūs fūeram, I had been ready. etc. etc.

WITH THE FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

pārāt-ūs fūerō, I shall have been ready. etc. etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

WITH THE PERFECT TENSE.

pārāt-ūs fūerim.

WITH THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

pārāt-ūs fūissem, I should have been ready.

INFINITIVE.

WITH THE PERFECT TENSE : *pārāt-ūs fūissē, to have been ready.*

Obs. The perfect participle with perfect indicative of *sum* is never used by the best writers as the equivalent of the perfect participle with the present indicative of *sum*, e.g. *pārātūs fūi* means *I was ready*, never (like *pārātūs sum*) *I was made ready* or *I have been made ready*.

But the other tenses given above, though they have the assigned meanings where the sense admits it, are often respectively equivalent to the forms given in the tables (§§ 157—160), e.g. :—

<i>āmātūs fūeram</i> = <i>āmātūs eram</i>	<i>āmātūs fūerim</i> = <i>āmātūs sim</i>
<i>āmātūs fūerō</i> = <i>āmātūs erō</i>	<i>āmātūs fūissem</i> = <i>āmātūs essem</i>
<i>āmātūs fūissē</i> = <i>āmātūs essē.</i>	

§ 165. *Future-Perfect Infinitive.*—This consists of the perfect participle followed by *fōrē* (future infinitive of *sum*); e.g. *āmāt-ūs fōrē, to be about to have been loved.*

§ 166 PARADIGM OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—
PRESENT BASE (ACTIVE).

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
ăm-ans mōn- rēg- aud-ī- } -ens	ăm-ārē mōn-ērē rēg-ērē aud-irē	ăm-and-um mōn- rēg- aud-ī- } -end-um

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE	ăm-ō, -ās, -ăt, mōn-ēō, -ēs, -ēt, rēg-ō, -īs, -īt, aud-īō, -īs, -īt,	-ămūs, -ătīs, -ant -ēmūs, -ētīs, -ent -īmūs, -ītīs, -unt -imus, -ītīs, -iunt
IMPERFECT TENSE	ăm-ā- mōn-ē- rēg-ē- aud-ī- }	-bam, -bās, -băt, -bămūs, -bătīs, -bant
FUTURE TENSE	ăm-ā- mōn-ē- rēg- aud-ī- }	-bō, -bīs, -bīt, -am, -ēs, -ēt, -bīmūs, -bītīs, -bunt, -ēmūs, -ētīs, -ent

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE	ăm-em, -ēs, -ēt, mōn-ē- rēg- aud-ī- }	-ēmūs, -ētīs, -ent -am, -ās, -ăt, -ămūs, -ătīs, -ant
IMPERFECT TENSE	ăm-ā- mōn-ē- rēg-ē- aud-ī- }	-rem, -rēs, -rēt, -rēmūs, -rētīs, -rent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
ăm-ā, -ătē mōn-ē, -ētē rēg-ē, -ītē aud-ī, -itē	ăm-ătō, -ătō, mōn-ētō, -ētō, rēg-ītō, -ītō, aud-itō, -itō, -ătōtē, -antō -ētōtē, -entō -ītōtē, -untō -itōtē, -iuntō

§ 167. PARADIGM OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—
PRESENT BASE (PASSIVE).

GERUNDIVE.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.
ăm-and-ūs mōn- rēg- aud-i- } -end-ūs	ăm-ārī mōn-ērī rēg-i aud-irī

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE	ăm-ör, -ārīs, -ätür, mōn-ēr, -ērīs, -ētür, rēg-ör, -ērīs, -itür, aud-iör, -iris, -itür,	-ămür, -ămīnī, -antür -ēmür, -ēmīnī, -entür -imür, -imīnī, -untür -imür, -imīnī, -iuntür
IMPERFECT TENSE	ăm-ā- mōn-ē- rēg-ē- aud-iē- } -bār, { -bārīs, } -bār, { -bārē, }	-bätür, -bämür, -bāmīnī, -bantür
FUTURE TENSE	ăm-ā- mōn-ē- rēg- aud-i- } -bör, { -bērīs, } -bör, { -bērē, } -är, { -ērīs, } -är, { -ērē, }	-bütür, -bimür, -bimīnī, -buntür -bütür, -bimür, -bimīnī, -buntür -ētür, -ēmür, -ēmīnī, -entür -ētür, -ēmür, -ēmīnī, -entür

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE	ăm-ēr, -ērīs or -ērē, -ētür, mōn-ē- rēg- aud-i- } -är, { -ārīs, } -är, { -ārē, }	-ēmür, -ēmīnī, -entür -ämür, -āmīnī, -antür
IMPERFECT TENSE	ăm-ā- mōn-ē- rēg-ē- aud-i- } -rēr, { -rērīs, } -rēr, { -rērē, }	-rētür, -rēmür, -rēmīnī, -rentür -rētür, -rēmür, -rēmīnī, -rentür

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
ăm-ārē, -ămīnī mōn-ērē, -ēmīnī rēg-ērē, -imīnī aud-irē, -imīnī	ăm-ätör, -ätör, -antör mōn-ëtör, -ëtör, -entör rēg-itör, -itör, -untör aud-itör, -itör, -iuntör

§ 168. PARADIGM OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—

PERFECT BASE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE	āmāv- mōnū- rex- audīv- }	-ī, -istī, -it, -īmūs, -istīs, -ērunt or -ērē
PLUPER- FECT TENSE	āmāv- mōnū- rex- audīv- }	-ēram, -ērās, -ērāt, -ērāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērant
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE	āmāv- mōnū- rex- audīv- }	-ērō, -ērīs, -ērīt, -ērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērīt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE	āmāv- mōnū- rex- audīv- }	-ērim, -ērīs, -ērīt, -ērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērīt
PLUPER- FECT TENSE	āmāv- mōnū- rex- audīv- }	-issem, -issēs, -issēt, -issēmūs, -issētīs, -issent

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE	āmāv- mōnū- rex- audīv- }	-issē
------------------	------------------------------------	-------

§ 169. PARADIGM OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—

SUPINE BASE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

FUTURE PARTICIPLE.	FUTURE INFINITIVE.	SUPINE.
$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūr-ūs}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūr-ūs esse}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-um, -ū}$

PASSIVE VOICE.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT INFINITIVE.	FUTURE INFINITIVE.
$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūs}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūs esse}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-um irī}$

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūs sum, ēs, est,}$	-ī sūmūs, estīs, sunt
PLUPER- FECT TENSE	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūs eram, erās, erāt,}$	-ī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūs erō, erīs, erit,}$	-ī ērimūs, ēritīs, erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūs sim, sis, sit,}$	-ī sīmūs, sītīs, sint
PLUPER- FECT TENSE	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{āmāt-} \\ \text{mōnīt-} \\ \text{rect-} \\ \text{audīt-} \end{array} \right\} \text{-ūs essem, essēs, essēt,}$	-ī essēmūs, essētīs, essent

CHAPTER XIX.—THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

§ 170. MODEL: cāpīō, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: cāp-īō, cēp-i, capt-um.

BASES: cāp- (present); cēp- (perfect); capt- (supine).

PARTI- } PRESENT: cāp-iens (gen. cāpient-is), *taking.*

CIPLES } FUTURE: capt-ūrus, capt-ūrā, capt-ūrum, *about to take.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I take.*)

cāp-īō	cāp-īmūs
cāp-īs	cāp-ītīs
cāp-īt	cāp-iunt

IMPERFECT. (*I was taking.*)

cāp-īebam	cāp-īebāmūs
cāp-īebās	cāp-īebātīs
cāp-īebāt	cāp-īebant

FUTURE. (*I shall take.*)

cāp-īam	cāp-īemūs
cāp-īēs	cāp-īētīs
cāp-īēt	cāp-īent

PERFECT. (*I took or have taken.*)

cēp-i	cēp-īmūs
cēp-istī	cēp-istīs
cēp-īt	cēp-ērunt or cēp-ērē

PLUPERFECT. (*I had taken.*)

cēp-eram	cēp-erāmūs
cēp-erās	cēp-erātīs
cēp-erāt	cēp-erant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have taken.*)

cēp-erō	cēp-erīmūs
cēp-erīs	cēp-erītīs
cēp-erīt	cēp-erint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should take.*)

cāp-īam ^r	cāp-īāmūs
cāp-īās	cāp-īātīs
cāp-īāt	cāp-īant

IMPERFECT. (*I should be taking.*)

cāp-ērem	cāp-ērēmūs
cāp-ērēs	cāp-ērētīs
cāp-ērēt	cāp-erent

PERFECT.

cēp-erim	cēp-erīmūs
cēp-eris	cēp-erītīs
cēp-erit	cēp-erint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have taken.*)

cēp-issem	cēp-issēmūs
cēp-issēs	cēp-issētīs
cēp-issēt	cēp-issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Take.*)

cāp-ē	cāp-itē
-------	---------

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must take.*)

cāp-ītō	cāp-ītōtē
cāp-ītō	cāp-iuntō

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: cāp-erē, *to take*

PERFECT: cēp-issē, *to have taken*

FUTURE: capt-ūrus essē, *to be about to take*

GERUND.

(Nom. cāp-iendūm)

Acc. cāp-iendūm, *taking*

Gen. cāp-iendī

Dat. cāp-iendō

Abl. cāp-iendō

SUPINE.

Acc. capt-um, *to take*

| Abl. capt-ū, *in taking*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES	PERFECT: capt-ūs, capt-ā, capt-um, <i>taken or having been taken.</i>
	GERUNDIVE: cāp-iendūs, cāp-iendā, cāp-iendum, <i>fit to be taken.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am taken.*)

cāp-iōr	cāp-imūr
cāp-ērīs	cāp-imīnī
cāp-ītūr	cāp-iuntūr

IMPERFECT. (*I was being taken.*)

cāp-iēbār	cāp-iēbāmūr
cāp-iēbāris or	
cāp-iēbārē	cāp-iēbāmīnī
cāp-iēbātūr	cāp-iēbantūr

FUTURE. (*I shall be taken.*)

cāp-iār	cāp-iēmūr
cāp-iērīs or	
cāp-iērē	cāp-iēmīnī
cāp-iētūr	cāp-ientūr

PERFECT. (*I was taken or have been taken.*)

capt-ūs sum	capt-i sūmūs
capt-ūs es	capt-i estīs
capt-ūs est	capt-i sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been taken.*)

capt-ūs eram	capt-i ērāmūs
capt-ūs erās	capt-i ērātīs
capt-ūs erāt	capt-i erant

FUTURE-PLUPERFECT. (*I shall have been taken.*)

capt-ūs erō	capt-i ērīmūs
capt-ūs erīs	capt-i ērītīs
capt-ūs erit	capt-i erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am or may be taken.*)

cāp-iār	cāp-iāmūr
cāp-iāris or	
cāp-iārē	cāp-iāmīnī
cāp-iātūr	cāp-iantūr

IMPERFECT. (*I was or might be taken.*)

cāp-ērēr	cāp-ērēmūr
cāp-ērērīs or	
cāp-ērērē	cāp-ērēmīnī
cāp-erētūr	cāp-erentūr

PERFECT.

capt-ūs sim	capt-i simūs
capt-ūs sis	capt-i sitīs
capt-ūs sit	capt-i sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been taken.*)

capt-ūs essem	capt-i essēmūs
capt-ūs essēs	capt-i essētīs
capt-ūs essēt	capt-i essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be taken.*)

cāp-ērē	cāp-imīnī
---------	-----------

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must be taken.*)

cāp-ītōr	cāp-iuntōr
cāp-itōr	

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: cāp-i, *to be taken.*PERFECT: capt-ūs essē, *to have been taken.*FUTURE: captum iri, *to be about to be taken.*

All verbs of the third conjugation (*i.e.* with pres. inf. act. ending in -ērē) which in the pres. indic. act. end in -iō are conjugated like cāpiō, as also are deponents of the third conjugation ending in -iōr. A list of these verbs is given in §§ 190, 195.

Obs. Cāpiō is conjugated like audiō in those parts in which the i of audiō is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the i is short (I); in other parts cāpiō is conjugated like régō.

CHAPTER XX.—DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 171. As already stated (§ 120, NOTE 2), some Latin verbs which are conjugated in the passive only are the equivalents of English active verbs; such verbs are called *deponents*, because they were considered by the old grammarians to *lay aside* (*dēpōnĕrĕ*) their passive meaning.

It is not in all cases clear what was originally the force of the passive form in these verbs, but in many of them it was evidently reflexive, e.g. *amplectōr*, *I embrace*, i.e. *twine myself around* (from *plectō*, *I plait*, and the prefix *ambi-*, *around*), *glōriōr*, *I boast*, i.e. *glorify myself*.

But whatever the origin of the deponent verbs may have been, they are for all practical purposes equivalent both in force and in usage to active verbs, either transitive (as *amplectōr*) or intransitive (as *glōriōr*).

§ 172. The existence in early Latin of an active form of many verbs which were deponent in classical times accounts for the first and second at least of the following non-deponent parts which belong to all deponent verbs:—

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| (1) Present Participle | } active in form. |
| (2) Future Participle (and consequently
Future Infinitive) | |
| (3) Gerund | |
| (4) Supine | |
| (5) Gerundive | |
| | } passive in meaning. |

For examples, see §§ 178—181.

NOTE.—In some deponent verbs the perfect participle is sometimes passive in meaning; e.g. *vĕnĕrōr*, *I worship*, has perfect participle *vĕnĕrātis*, *worshipped* (passive), or *having worshipped* (deponent).

§ 173. There are four conjugations of deponent verbs resembling those of regular passive verbs (§§ 157—160, § 163), with the addition of the aforesaid forms from the corresponding active conjugations. Models are given in §§ 178—181.

Three deponent verbs and their compounds (§ 195) are conjugated like *cāpiōr* (§ 170).

§ 174. Deponent verbs have no perfect tenses active in form, and consequently no perfect base; all their tenses are formed from the present and supine bases in the same way as the tenses of the passive voice of regular verbs (see § 133). The supine base of deponent verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations is formed from the present base in accordance with rules given in § 136 for active verbs, except in the case of the deponents enumerated in §§ 193, 196. The supine bases of deponents of the third conjugation must be learned from §§ 194, 195.

§ 175. The alternative forms and additional tenses of passive verbs mentioned in §§ 161—164 are found also in deponent verbs.

§ 176. SEMI-DEPONENTS.

Four verbs are deponent in their perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses only (including perfect infinitive and perfect participle), viz.:—

	Pres. Indic.		Pres. Inf.		Perf. Indic.
Second Conjugation	aud-ēō, <i>I dare</i>		aud-ērē		aus-ūs sum
	gaud-ēō, <i>I rejoice</i>		gaud-ērē		gāvis-ūs sum
	sōl-ēō, <i>I am accustomed</i>		sōl-ērē		sōlit-ūs sum
Third Conj.	fīd-ō, <i>I trust</i>		fīd-ērē		fīs-ūs sum

So also the compounds *confidō, I trust*, and *diffidō, I distrust*.

§ 177. PERFECT PARTICIPLES WITH ACTIVE MEANING.

	Pres. Indic.		Pres. Inf.		Perf. Part.
First Conj.	cēn-ō, <i>I dine</i>		cēn-ārē		cēnāt-ūs, <i>having dined</i>
	iūr-ō, <i>I swear</i>		iūr-ārē		iūrāt-ūs, <i>having sworn</i>
	pōt-ō, <i>I drink</i>		pōt-ārē		pōt-ūs, <i>drunk</i> (act. or pass.)
Second Conj.	plāc-ēō, <i>I am pleasing</i>		plāc-ērē		plācit-ūs, <i>having pleased</i>
	prand-ēō, <i>I lunch</i>		prand-ērē		prans-ūs, <i>having lunched</i>
Third Conj.	cresc-ō, <i>I grow</i>		cresc-ērē		crēt-ūs, <i>sprung</i>
	suesc-ō,* <i>I become accustomed</i>		suesc-ērē		suēt-ūs, <i>accustomed</i>

And some others, from intransitive verbs; e.g. *ādultūs, grown up*, from *ādōlescō, I grow up*; *nuptā, married*, from *nūbō, I am married (to a man)*.

Obs. It is only the perfect participle of these verbs that is deponent; the perfect tenses of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive are active in form as well as meaning, e.g. *cēnāvi, iūrāvi*.

* *Su* is in this verb pronounced as *sw* in *sweet*. See § 8.

§ 178. DEPONENT VERBS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

MODEL: hortōr, *I exhort.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: hort-ārī, hortāt-ūs sum.

BASES = hort- (present); hortāt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: hort-ans (gen. hortant-īs), *exhorting.*
 FUTURE: hortāt-ūrus, hortāt-ūrā, hortāt-ūrum, *about to exhort.*
 PERFECT: hortāt-ūs, hortāt-ā, hortāt-um, *having exhorted.*
 GERUNDIVE: hort-andūs, hort-andā, hort-andum, *fit to be exhorted.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I exhort.*)

hort-ōr hort-āmūr
 hort-āris or -ārē hort-āminī
 hort-ātūr hort-antūr

IMPERFECT. (*I was exhorting.*)

hort-ābār hort-ābāmūr

hort-ābāris or

hort-ābārē hort-ābāmīnī

hort-ābātūr hort-ābantūr

FUTURE. (*I shall exhort.*)

hort-ābōr hort-ābīmūr

hort-ābēris or

hort-ābērē hort-ābīmīnī

hort-ābītūr hort-ābuntūr

PERFECT. (*I exhorted or have exhorted.*)

hortāt-ūs sum hortāt-ī sēmūs

hortāt-ūs ēs hortāt-ī estīs

hortāt-ūs est hortāt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had exhorted.*)

hortāt-ūs eram hortāt-ī eramūs

hortāt-ūs ērās hortāt-ī ērātīs

hortāt-ūs ērāt hortāt-ī ērant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have exhorted.*)

hortāt-ūs ērō hortāt-ī ērimūs

hortāt-ūs ēris hortāt-ī ēritīs

hortāt-ūs ērit hortāt-ī ērunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should exhort.*)

hort-ēr hort-ēmūr

hort-ērīs or

hort-ērē hort-ēmīnī

hort-ētūr hort-entūr

IMPERFECT. (*I should be exhorting.*)

hort-ārēr hort-ārēmūr

hort-ārērīs or

hort-ārērē hort-ārēmīnī

hort-ārētūr hort-ārentūr

PERFECT.

hortar-ūs sim hortāt-ī sīmūs

hortāt-ūs sīs hortāt-ī sitīs

hortāt-ūs sit hortāt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have exhorted.*)

hortāt-ūs essem hortāt-ī essēmūs

hortāt-ūs essēs hortāt-ī essētīs

hortāt-ūs essēt hortāt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Exhort.*)

hort-ārē hort-āminī

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must exhort.*)

hort-ātōr

hort-ātōr hort-antōr

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: hort-ārī, *to exhort*PERFECT: hortāt-ūs essē, *to have exhorted*FUTURE: hortātūr-ūs essē, *to be about to exhort*

GERUND.

(Nom. hort-andum)

Acc. hort-andum, *exhorting*

Gen. hort-andī

Dat. hort-andō

Abl. hort-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. hortāt-um, *to exhort*Abl. hortāt-ū, *in exhorting*

§179. DEPONENT VERBS.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

 MODEL: vēřēōr, *I fear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: vēř-ērī, vēřit-ūs sum.

BASES: vēř- (present); vēřit- (supine).

PARTICIPLES	PRESENT:	vēř-ens (gen. vērent-is), <i>fearing.</i>
	FUTURE:	vēřit-ūrūs, vēřit-ūrā, vēřit-ūrum, <i>about to fear.</i>
	PERFECT:	vēřit-ūs, vēřit-ā, vēřit-um, <i>having feared.</i>
	GERUNDIVE:	vēř-endūs, vēř-endā, vēř-endum, <i>fit to be feared.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

 PRESENT. (*I fear.*)

vēř-ēōr	vēř-ēmūr
vēř-ēs or vēř-ērē	vēř-ēmīnī
vēř-ētūr	vēř-entūr

 IMPERFECT. (*I was fearing.*)

vēř-ēbār	vēř-ēbāmūr
vēř-ēbāris or	
vēř-ēbārē	vēř-ēbāmīnī
vēř-ēbātūr	vēř-ēbantūr

 FUTURE. (*I shall fear.*)

vēř-ēbōr	vēř-ēbīmūr
vēř-ēbēris or	
vēř-ēbērē	vēř-ēbīmīnī
vēř-ēbītūr	vēř-ēbuntūr

 PERFECT. (*I feared or have feared.*)

vēřit-ūs sum	vēřit-ī sūmūs
vēřit-ūs es	vēřit-ī estīs
vēřit-ūs est	vēřit-ī sunt

 PLUPERFECT. (*I had feared.*)

vēřit-ūs eram	vēřit-ī ērāmūs
vēřit-ūs erās	vēřit-ī ērātīs
vēřit-ūs erāt	vēřit-ī ērant

 FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have feared.*)

vēřit-ūs ērō	vēřit-ī ērīmūs
vēřit-ūs ēris	vēřit-ī ērītīs
vēřit-ūs ērit	vēřit-ī ērunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

 PRESENT. (*I should fear.*)

vēř-ēār	vēř-ēāmūr
vēř-ēāris or	
vēř-ēārē	vēř-ēāmīnī
vēř-ēātūr	vēř-ēantūr

 IMPERFECT. (*I should be fearing.*)

vēř-ērēr	vēř-ērēmūr
vēř-ērēris or	
vēř-ērērē	vēř-ērēmīnī
vēř-ērētūr	vēř-erentūr

PERFECT.

vēřit-ūs sim	vēřit-ī simūs
vēřit-ūs sis	vēřit-ī sitīs
vēřit-ūs sit	vēřit-ī sint

 PLUPERFECT. (*I should have feared.*)

vēřit-ūs essem	vēřit-ī essēmūs
vēřit-ūs essēs	vēřit-ī essētīs
vēřit-ūs essēt	vēřit-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

 PRESENT. (*Fear.*)

vēř-ērē	vēř-ēmīnī
---------	-----------

 FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must fear.*)

vēř-ētōr	
vēř-ētōr	vēř-entōr

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: vēř-ērī, <i>to fear</i>
PERFECT: vēřit-ūs essē, <i>to have feared</i>
FUTURE: vēřitūr-ūs essē, <i>to be about to fear</i>

GERUND.

(Nom. vēř-endum)
Acc. vēř-endum, <i>fearing</i>
Gen. vēř-endī
Dat. vēř-endō
Abl. vēř-endō •

SUPINE.

 Acc. vēřit-um, *to fear*

L. G.

 Abl. vēřit-ū, *in fearing*

§ 180. DEPONENT VERBS.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

MODEL: *lōquōr, I speak.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *lōquī, lōcūt-ūs sum.*BASES: *lōqu-* (present); *lōcūt-* (supine).

PARTICIPLES	{ PRESENT: <i>lōqu-ens</i> (gen. <i>lōquent-īs</i>), <i>speaking.</i>
	{ FUTURE: <i>lōcūt-ūrūs, lōcūt-ūrā, lōcūt-ūrum</i> , <i>about to speak.</i>
	{ PERFECT: <i>lōcūt-ūs, lōcūt-ā, lōcūt-um</i> , <i>having spoken.</i>
	{ GERUNDIVE: <i>lōqu-endūs, lōqu-endā, lōqu-endum</i> , <i>fit to be spoken.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I speak.*)

<i>lōqu-ōr</i>	<i>lōqu-īmūr</i>
<i>lōqu-ērīs</i> or <i>lōqu-ērē</i>	<i>lōqu-īmīnī</i>
<i>lōqu-ītūr</i>	<i>lōqu-untūr</i>
IMPERFECT. (<i>I was speaking.</i>)	
<i>lōqu-ēbār</i>	<i>lōqu-ēbāmūr</i>
<i>lōqu-ēbārīs</i> or <i>lōqu-ēbārē</i>	<i>lōqu-ēbāmīnī</i>
<i>lōqu-ēbātūr</i>	<i>lōqu-ēbantūr</i>
FUTURE. (<i>I shall speak.</i>)	
<i>lōqu-ār</i>	<i>lōqu-ēmūr</i>
<i>lōqu-ērīs</i> or <i>lōqu-ērē</i>	<i>lōqu-ēmīnī</i>
<i>lōqu-ētūr</i>	<i>lōqu-entūr</i>

PERFECT. (*I spoke or have spoken.*)

<i>lōcūt-ūs sum</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī sūmūs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs ēs</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī estīs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs est</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī sunt</i>
PLUPERFECT. (<i>I had spoken.</i>)	
<i>lōcūt-ūs ēram</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī ērāmūs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs ēras</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī ērātīs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs ērāt</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī ērant</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have spoken.*)

<i>lōcūt-ūs ērō</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī ērīmūs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs ērīs</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī ērītīs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs ērīt</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī ērunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*I should speak.*)

<i>lōqu-ār</i>	<i>lōqu-āmūr</i>
<i>lōqu-ārīs</i> or <i>lōqu-ārē</i>	<i>lōqu-āmīnī</i>
<i>lōqu-ātūr</i>	<i>lōqu-antūr</i>

IMPERFECT. (*I should be speaking.*)

<i>lōqu-ērēr</i>	<i>lōqu-ērēmūr</i>
<i>lōqu-ērērīs</i> or <i>lōqu-ērērē</i>	<i>lōqu-ērēmīnī</i>
<i>lōqu-ērētūr</i>	<i>lōqu-erentūr</i>

PERFECT.

<i>lōcūt-ūs sim</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī simūs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs sis</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī sitīs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs sit</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī sint</i>

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have spoken.*)

<i>lōcūt-ūs essem</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī essēmūs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs essēs</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī essētīs</i>
<i>lōcūt-ūs essēt</i>	<i>lōcūt-ī essent</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Speak.*)

<i>lōqu-ērē</i>	<i>lōqu-īmīnī</i>
-----------------	-------------------

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must speak.*)

<i>lōqu-ītōr</i>	<i>lōqu-untōr</i>
------------------	-------------------

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. <i>lōqu-ī</i> , <i>to speak</i>
PERFECT: <i>lōcūt-ūs essē</i> , <i>to have spoken</i>
FUTURE: <i>lōcūtūr-ūs essē</i> , <i>to be about to speak</i>

GERUND.

(Nom. <i>lōqu-endum</i>)
Acc. <i>lōqu-endum</i> , <i>speaking</i>
Gen. <i>lōqu-endī</i>
Dat. <i>lōqu-endō</i>
Abl. <i>lōqu-endō</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. *lōcūt-um*, *to speak*Abl. *lōcūt-ū*, *in speaking*

§ 181. DEPONENT VERBS.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

MODEL : partīōr, *I divide.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : part-īrī, partīt-ūs sum.

BASES : part- (present); partīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES	PRESENT :	part-īens (gen. partīent-īs), <i>dividing.</i>
	FUTURE :	partīt-ūrus, partīt-ūrā, partīt-ūrum, <i>about to divide.</i>
	PERFECT :	partīt-ūs, partīt-ā, partīt-um, <i>having divided.</i>
	GERUNDIVE :	part-īendūs, part-īendā, part-īendum, <i>fit to be divided.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (<i>I divide.</i>)	
part-īō	part-īmr
part-īris or	
part-īrē	part-īmīni
part-ītūr	part-īuntūr
IMPERFECT. (<i>I was dividing.</i>)	
part-īēbār	part-īēbāmūr
part-īēbāris or	
part-īēbārē	part-īēbāmīni
part-īēbātūr	part-īēbantūr
FUTURE. (<i>I shall divide.</i>)	
part-īār	part-īēmūr
part-īēris or	
part-īēiē	part-īēmīni
part-īētūr	part-īentūr

PERFECT. (*I divided or have divided.*)

partīt-ūs sum	partīt-i sūmūs
partīt-ūs es	partīt-i estīs
partīt-ūs est	partīt-i sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had divided.*)

partīt-ūs eram	partīt-i ē:amūs
partīt-ūs erās	partīt-i ērātīs
partīt-ūs erāt	partīt-i ērant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have divided.*)

partīt-ūs ērō	partīt-i ērimūs
partīt-ūs ēris	partīt-i ēritīs
partīt-ūs ērit	partīt-i ērunt

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :	part-īrī, <i>to divide</i>
PERFECT :	partīt-ūs essē, <i>to have divided</i>
FUTURE	partītūr-ūs essē, <i>to be about to divide</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (<i>I should divide.</i>)	
part-īār	part-īāmūr
part-īāris or	
part-īārē	part-īāmīni
part-īātūr	part-īantūr
IMPERFECT. (<i>I should be dividing.</i>)	
part-īrēr	part-īrēmūr
part-īrēris	
part-īrērē	part-īrēmīni
part-īrētūr	part-īrentūr

PERFECT.

partīt-ūs sim	partīt-i simūs
partīt-ūs sis	partīt-i sitīs
partīt-ūs sit	partīt-i sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have divided.*)

partīt-ūs essem	partīt-i essēmūs
partīt-ūs essēs	partīt-i essētīs
partīt-ūs essēt	partīt-i essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Divide.*)

part-īrē	part-īmīni
----------	------------

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must divide.*)

part-ītōr	
part-ītōr	part-īuntōr

GERUND.

(Nom. part-īendum)
Acc. part-īendum, <i>dividing</i>
Gen. part-īendi
Dat. pa. t-īendō
Abl. part-īendō

SUPINE.

Acc partīt-um, *to divide*Abl. partīt-ū, *in dividing*

CHAPTER XXI.—PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.

§ 182. In order to conjugate a Latin verb, it is necessary to know (1) to which conjugation it belongs, and (2) its present, perfect, and supine bases. The conjugation is shown by the ending of the present infinitive active (§ 135), and the three bases are ascertained from (a) the present infinitive active, (b) the perfect indicative active, (c) the accusative supine (§ 131). It is also necessary, in order to distinguish verbs conjugated like *căpiō* (§ 170) from other verbs of the third conjugation, to know the present indicative active (first person singular).

Deponent verbs have, as explained in § 174, present and supine bases only.

§ 183. The perfect base is formed from the verbal stem* in six different ways, viz. :—

A.—By reduplication, *i.e.* by means of a prefix consisting of the first consonant of the verb and a short vowel (the vowel being *e* or that of the first syllable of the verb);

B.—By vowel-lengthening (*ă* becoming *ē*, unless *v* follows);

C.—By the addition of *s*, which combines with a preceding *c* or *g* into *x*;

D.—By the addition of *v* preceded by a long vowel;

E.—By the addition of *ū*.

F.—The remaining form of the perfect base is that in which it is identical with the present base, or (§ 189, F.) with the verbal stem.

* The verbal stem is often, but by no means always, identical with the present base. Thus the verbal stem of *frangō* (§ 189, B) is *frāg-*, from which are formed the present base *frang-*, the perfect base *frāg-*, and (by change of *g* to *c* before *t*), the supine base *fract-*. This "verbal stem" is of no practical importance to the learner, but its existence affords an explanation of forms otherwise unintelligible,

§ 184. The supine base is formed from the verbal stem by the addition of (1) *t* (sometimes *it*) or (2) *s*; the latter combines with a preceding *c* or *g* into *x*. The more usual ending of the supine base is *t*; *s* is, generally speaking, found when the verbal stem ends in *d* or *t*. (The supine may often be remembered by the help of an English derivative; e.g. "caution," "motion," "vote," from *cāvĕō*, *mōvēō*, *vōvēō* respectively, § 188, B.)

§ 185. The following list contains all common verbs of the third conjugation, and those verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations which form their perfect and supine differently from *āmō*, *mōnĕō*, and *audiō* respectively; except—

(a) Inceptive verbs formed from simple verbs which are in use (§ 284), the perfect and supine of these, if they exist, being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb;

(b) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any) in the perfect, e.g.—

Simple verb:	<i>dūc-ō</i>	-ĕrĕ	<i>dux-i</i>	<i>duct-um</i>	<i>lead</i>
Compound verb:	<i>abdūc-ō</i>	-ĕrĕ	<i>abdux-i</i>	<i>abduct-um</i>	<i>lead away</i>
Simple verb:	<i>pell-ō</i>	-ĕrĕ	<i>pēpŭl-i</i>	<i>puls-um</i>	<i>drive</i>
Compound verb:	<i>impell-ō</i>	-ĕrĕ	<i>impŭl-i</i>	<i>impuls-um</i>	<i>drive on</i>

But one compound at least is given of verbs which when compounded change in form or retain the reduplication in the perfect. Compound verbs of which the simple forms are not in use, e.g. *abnŭō*, *I refuse*, are also given.

For the changes undergone by prepositions in composition, see § 202; for vowel change in compound verbs, see § 243.

§ 186. In this list the verbs of each conjugation are classed according to the formation of their perfect base, and in each class the verbs with supine base ending in *s* (if any) follow those with supine base ending in *t*.

The student should learn the principal parts as here arranged, and later on test his knowledge by the alphabetical list in Ch. XXVI. Beginners may confine their attention to verbs printed in dark type.

§ 187.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect	Supine.	
d-ō* (§§ 222, 223)	-ārē	dēd-ī	dāt-um	<i>give</i>
Compounds be- long to 3rd conj. (§ 189, A.), except circumd-ō (§ 224)	-ārē	circumdēd-ī	circumdāt-um	<i>put round</i>
st-ō	-ārē	stēt-ī	stāt-um	<i>stand</i>
Compounds (few having sup.) as				
praest-ō	-ārē	praestīt-ī	{ praestāt-um praestit-um }	<i>excel</i>
Except circumst-ō	-ārē	circumstēt-ī	—	<i>stand around</i>

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

iūv-ō (§ 204)	-ārē	iūv-ī	iūt-um	<i>help, delight</i>
lāv-ō (§ 199)	-ārē	lāv-ī	{ lāvāt-um perf. part. { laut-ūs lōt-ūs }	<i>wash</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S: none.

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (A).

This is the way in which the perfect base of *āmō* and of other verbs of first conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

pōt-ō (§ 177)	-ārē	pōtāv-ī	{ pōt-um or pōtāt-um }	<i>drink</i>
---------------	------	---------	---------------------------	--------------

E.—Perfect formed by Ū.

crēp-ō	-ārē	crēpū-ī	crēpīt-um	<i>rattle</i>
cūb-ō	-ārē	cūbū-ī	cūbīt-um	<i>lie down</i>
dōm-ō	-ārē	dōmū-ī	dōmīt-um	<i>tame</i>
ēnīc-ō	-ārē	ēnīcū-ī	ēnect-um	<i>wear to death</i>
frīc-ō	-ārē	frīcū-ī	{ frict-um or fricāt-um }	<i>rub</i>
plīc-ō	-ārē	{ plīcāv-ī plīcū-ī }	{ plīcāt-um plīcīt-um }	<i>fold</i>
sēc-ō	-ārē	sēcū-ī	sect-um	<i>cut</i>

* *Dō* is, properly speaking, an irregular verb; but as it diverges from first conjugation in quantity only, it is included in this list.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
sôn-ō (§ 204)	-ārē	sônŭ-ī	sônīt-um	<i>sound</i>
tôn-ō	-ārē	tônŭ-ī	tônīt-um	<i>thunder</i>
vēt-ō	-ārē	vētŭ-ī	vētīt-um	<i>forbid</i>
mīc-ō	-ārē	mīcŭ-ī	—	<i>vibrate</i>

So comp., except

dīmīc-ō	-ārē	dīmīcāv-ī	dīmīcāt-um	<i>fight</i>
---------	------	-----------	------------	--------------

F.—Perfect base identical with present base : *none*.

§ 188.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

mord-ēō	-ērē	mārmord-ī	mors-um	<i>bite</i>
pend-ēō	-ērē	pēpend-ī	—	<i>be suspended</i>
spond-ēō	-ērē	spōpond-ī	spons-um	<i>promise</i>
tond-ēō	-ērē	tōtond-ī	tons-um	<i>clip</i>

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

cāv-ēō	-ērē	cāv-ī	cant-um	<i>beware of</i>
fāv-ēō	-ērē	fāv-ī	faut-um	<i>be favourable</i>
fōv-ēō	-ērē	fōv-ī	fōt-um	<i>cherish</i>
mōv-ēō	-ērē	mōv-ī	mōt-um	<i>set in motion</i>
vōv-ēō	-ērē	vōv-ī	vōt-um	<i>vow</i>
sēd-ēō	-ērē	sēd-ī	sess-um	<i>sit</i>

Compounds as

possid-ēō	-ērē	possēd-ī	possess-um	<i>possess</i>
Except				
circumsēd-ēō	-ērē	circumsēd-ī	circumsess-um	<i>besiege</i>
sūpersēd-ēō	-ērē	sūpersēd-ī	sūpersess-um	<i>forbear</i>
vid-ēō	-ērē	vid-ī	vis-um	<i>see</i>
pāv-ēō	-ērē	pāv-ī	—	<i>tremble</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S.

alg-ēō	-ērē	als-ī	—	<i>feel cold</i>
fulg-ēō (§ 199)	-ērē	fuls-ī	—	<i>gleam</i>
indulg-ēō	-ērē	induls-ī	—	<i>be indulgent</i>
urg-ēō	-ērē	urs-ī	—	<i>press</i>
frig-ēō	-ērē	frīx-ī	—	<i>be cold</i>
lūc-ēō	-ērē	lux-ī	—	<i>shine</i>
torqu-ēō	-ērē	tors-ī	tor-tum	<i>twist</i>
aug-ēō	-ērē	aux-ī	auct-um	<i>augment</i>
lūg-ēō	-ērē	lux-ī	luct-um	<i>mourn for</i>

Present Indic.	Infm.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ard-ěō	-ěrě	ars-ī	ars-um	<i>be on fire</i>
haer-ěō	-ěrě	haes-ī	haes-um	<i>stick</i>
iūb-ěō	-ěrě	iuss-ī	iuss-um	<i>command</i>
mān-ěō	-ěrě	mans-ī	mans-um	<i>remain</i>
mulc-ěō	-ěrě	muls-ī	muls-um	<i>caress</i>
mulg-ěō	-ěrě	muls-ī	{ mult-um } { muls-um }	<i>milk</i>
rīd-ěō	-ěrě	rīs-ī	rīs-um	<i>laugh</i>
suād-ěō (§ 8)	-ěrě	suās-ī	suās-um	<i>recommend</i>
terg-ěō	-ěrě	ters-ī	ters-um	<i>wipe</i>

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

ābōl-ěō	-ěrě	ābōlēv-ī	ābōlit-um	<i>abolish</i>
cī-ěō (§ 199)	-ěrě	cīv-ī	cīt-um	<i>arouse</i>
dēl-ěō	-ěrě	dēlēv-ī	dēlēt-um	<i>abolish</i>
fl-ěō	-ěrě	flēv-ī	flēt-um	<i>weep</i>
n-ěō	-ěrě	nēv-ī	nēt-um	<i>spin</i>
compl-ěō	-ěrě	complēv-ī	complēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
expl-ěō	-ěrě	explēv-ī	explēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
impl-ěō	-ěrě	implēv-ī	implēt-um	<i>fill</i>
rēpl-ěō	-ěrě	rēplēv-ī	rēplēt-um	<i>refill</i>
suppl-ěō	-ěrě	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	<i>fill up</i>

E.—Perfect formed by Ů.

This is the way in which the perfect base of *mōněō* and of other verbs of the second conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is wanting in many verbs of this conjugation, and is irregular in—

dōc-ěō	-ěrě	dōcū-ī	doct-um	<i>teach</i>
misc-ěō	-ěrě	miscū-ī	mixt-um	<i>mix</i>
tēn-ěō	-ěrě	tēnū-ī	tent-um	<i>hold</i>
Comp. as rētīn-ěō	-ěrě	rētīnū-ī	rētent-um	<i>hold back</i>
torr-ěō	-ěrě	torrū-ī	tost-um	<i>scorch</i>
cens-ěō	-ěrě	censū-ī	cens-um	<i>count</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

prand-ěō (§ 177)	-ěrě	prand-ī	prans-um	<i>lunch</i>
ferv-ěō (§ 199)	-ěrě	ferv-ī (or ferbū-ī)	—	<i>be boiling</i>
strid-ěō (§ 199)	-ěrě	strid-ī	—	<i>creak</i>

§ 189.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infm.	Perfect.	Supine.	
cān-ō	-ērē	cēcīn-ī	cant-um	<i>sing</i>
Compounds as praecīn-ō (§189, E.)				
Compounds of dō, except circumd-ō (§187, A.), as ēd-ō *				
	-ērē	ēdid-ī	ēdit-um	<i>give out</i>
Including :				
crēd-ō	-ērē	crēdid-ī	crēdit-um	<i>trust</i>
perd-ō	-ērē	perdid-ī	perdit-um	<i>destroy</i>
vend-ō	-ērē	vendid-ī	vendit-um	<i>sell</i>
pung-ō	-ērē	pūpūg-ī	punct-um	<i>prick</i>
Compounds as compung-ō (§189, C.)				
sist-ō	-ērē	stīt-ī	stāt-um	<i>make to stand</i>
Comp. as consist-ō	-ērē	constīt-ī	constīt-um	<i>stand still</i>
Except				
circumsist-ō	-ērē	circumstēt-ī	—	<i>stand around</i>
tang-ō	-ērē	tētīg-ī	tact-um	<i>touch</i>
Comp. as atting-ō	-ērē	attīg-ī	attact-um	<i>touch</i>
tend-ō	-ērē	tētend-ī	tent-um	<i>stretch</i>
cād-ō	-ērē	cēcīd-ī	cās-um	<i>fall</i>
Comp. as concīd-ō	-ērē	concīd-ī	—	<i>fall</i>
Supine stem in				
occīd-ō	-ērē	occīd-ī	occās-um	<i>fall, set</i>
rēcīd-ō	-ērē	reccīd-ī	rēcās-um	<i>fall back</i>
caed-ō	-ērē	cēcīd-ī	caes-um	<i>cut</i>
Comp. as occīd-ō	-ērē	occīd-ī	occīs-um	<i>kill</i>
cūrr-ō	-ērē	cūcurr-ī	curs-um	<i>run</i>
Compounds as				
accurr-ō	-ērē	{ accūcurr-ī or accurr-ī }	accurs-um	<i>run to</i>
fāl-ō	-ērē	fēfell-ī	fals-um	<i>deceive</i>
Comp.: rēfell-ō	-ērē	rēfell-ī	—	<i>disprove</i>

* Some of these are compounds of dō, *I give*, others of a verb -dō, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pell-ō	-ērē	pēpūl-ī	puls-um	<i>drive</i>
pend-ō	-ērē	pēpend-ī	pens-um	<i>weigh out, pa.</i>
tund-ō	-ērē	tūtūd-ī	{ tuns-um } { tūs-um }	<i>beat</i>
disc-ō	-ērē	didic-ī	—	<i>learn</i>
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ērē	addidic-ī	—	<i>learn besides</i>
parc-ō (§ 204)	-ērē	pēpere-ī	pars-ūrūs	<i>be sparing</i>
posc-ō	-ērē	pōposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
Comp. as dēposc-ō	-ērē	dēpōposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.				
äg-ō	-ērē	ēg-ī	act-um	<i>drive</i>
Comp. as äbig-ō	-ērē	äbig-ī	äbact-um	<i>drive away</i>
Except circumäg-ō	-ērē	circumäg-ī	circumact-um	<i>drive around</i>
cōg-ō	-ērē	cōg-ī	cōact-um	<i>drive together</i> <i>compel</i>
dēg-ō	-ērē	dēg-ī	—	<i>pass (time)</i>
pēräg-ō	-ērē	pērēg-ī	pēract-um	<i>accomplish</i>
ēm-ō	-ērē	ēm-ī	empt-um	<i>buy</i>
Comp. as ädīm-ō	-ērē	ädēm-ī	ädempt-um	<i>take away</i>
Except cōēm-ō	-ērē	cōēm-ī	cōempt-um	<i>buy up</i>
See also § 189, C.				
frang-ō	-ērē	frēg-ī	fract-um	<i>break</i>
Compounds as				
confring-ō	-ērē	confrēg-ī	confract-um	<i>break</i>
lēg-ō	-ērē	lēg-ī	lect-um	<i>pick, read</i>
Comp. as collig-ō	-ērē	collēg-ī	collect-um	<i>collect</i>
But e remains in				
perlēg-ō	-ērē	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	<i>read through</i>
rēlēg-ō	-ērē	rēlēg-ī	rēlect-um	<i>again go over</i>
Perf. differs in				
dillēg-ō				
intellēg-ō				
neglēg-ō				
} (§ 189, C.)				
linqu-ō	-ērē	liqu-ī	—	<i>leave</i>
Comp. as rēlinqu-ō	-ērē	rēliqu-ī	rēlict-um	<i>leave</i>
pang-ō	-ērē	pēg-ī or pēpīg-ī	pact-um	<i>fasten</i>
Comp.: comping-ō	-ērē	compēg-ī	compact-um	<i>join together</i>
rump-ō	-ērē	rūp-ī	rupt-um	<i>break</i>
vinc-ō	-ērē	vīc-ī	vict-um	<i>conquer</i>
ēd-ō (§ 220)	-ērē	ēd-ī	ēs-um	<i>eat</i>
fund-ō	-ērē	fūd-ī	fūs-um	<i>pour</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S.

Present Indic.	Infîn.	Perfect.	Supine.	
carp-ō	-ērē	carps-ī	carpt-um	<i>pluck</i>
Comp. as dēcerp-ō	-ērē	dēcerps-ī	dēcerpt-um	<i>pluck off</i>
Four compounds of				
ēm-ō (§ 189, B.):				
cōm-ō	-ērē	comps-ī	compt-um	<i>deck</i>
dēm-ō	-ērē	demps-ī	dempt-um	<i>take off</i>
prēm-ō	-ērē	promps-ī	prompt-um	<i>bring out</i>
sūm-ō	-ērē	sumps-ī	sumpt-um	<i>take up</i>
gēr-ō	-ērē	gess-ī	gest-um	<i>carry</i>
nūb-ō (§ 177)	-ērē	nups-ī	nupt-um	<i>put on the bridal veil, i.e. be married</i>
rēp-ō	-ērē	reps-ī	rept-um	<i>creep</i>
scalp-ō	-ērē	scalps-ī	scalpt-um	<i>carve</i>
scrib-ō	-ērē	scrips-ī	script-um	<i>write</i>
sculp-ō	-ērē	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	<i>carve</i>
serp-ō	-ērē	serps-ī	serpt-um	<i>crawl</i>
temn-ō	-ērē	temps-ī	tempt-um	<i>despise</i>
ūr-ō	-ērē	uss-ī	ust-um	<i>burn, inflame</i>
Comp. : combūr-ō	-ērē	combuss-ī	combust-um	<i>burn up</i>
cing-ō	-ērē	cinx-ī	cinct-um	<i>gird</i>
cōqu-ō	-ērē	cox-ī	coct-um	<i>cook</i>
dīc-ō (§ 203)	-ērē	dix-ī	dict-um	<i>say</i>
dūc-ō (§ 203)	-ērē	dux-ī	duct-um	<i>lead</i>
finḡ-ō	-ērē	finx-ī	fict-um	<i>form</i>
afflig-ō	-ērē	afflix-ī	afflict-um	<i>strike against</i>
confīg-ō	-ērē	conflix-ī	conflict-um	<i>conflict</i>
infig-ō	-ērē	infix-ī	inflict-um	<i>strike on</i>
iung-ō	-ērē	iunx-ī	iunct-um	<i>join</i>
Three compounds of				
lēg-ō (§ 189, B.):				
dilig-ō	-ērē	dīlex-ī	dilect-um	<i>love</i>
intellēg-ō	-ērē	intellex-ī	intellect-um	<i>understand</i>
neglēg-ō	-ērē	neglex-ī	neglect-um	<i>neglect</i>
ping-ō	-ērē	pinx-ī	pict-um	<i>paint</i>
plang-ō	-ērē	planx-ī	planct-um	<i>beat</i>

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect.	Supine.
Compounds of <i>pung-ō</i>			
(§ 189, A.), as			
compung-ō	-ērē	compunx-ī	compunct-um <i>sting</i>
rēg-ō	-ērē	rex-ī	rect-um <i>rule</i>
Comp. as corrig-ō	-ērē	correx-ī	correct-um <i>correct</i>
Except perg-ō	-ērē	perrex-ī	perrect-um <i>continue</i>
surg-ō	-ērē	surrex-ī	surrect-um <i>rise</i>
distingu-ō	-ērē	distinx-ī	distinct-um <i>distinguish</i>
extingu-ō	-ērē	extinx-ī	extinct-um <i>extinguish</i>
restingu-ō	-ērē	restinx-ī	restring-um <i>extinguish</i>
string-ō	-ērē	strinx-ī	strict-um <i>strip</i>
strū-ō	-ērē	strux-ī	struct-um <i>pile</i>
sūg-ō	-ērē	sux-ī	suct-um <i>suck</i>
tēg-ō	-ērē	tex-ī	tect-um <i>cover</i>
ting-ō or tingu-ō	-ērē	tinx-ī	tinct-um <i>steep</i>
trāh-ō	-ērē	trax-ī	tract-um <i>draw</i>
ung-ō or ungu-ō	-ērē	unx-ī	unct-um <i>anoint</i>
vēh-ō	-ērē	vex-ī	vect-um <i>carry</i>
viv-ō	-ērē	vix-ī	vict-um <i>live</i>
cēd-ō	-ērē	cess-ī	cess-um <i>yield</i>
claud-ō	-ērē	claus-ī	claus-um <i>shut</i>
Comp. as conclūd-ō	-ērē	conclūs-ī	conclūs-um <i>confine</i>
divīd-ō	-ērē	divīs-ī	divīs-um <i>divide</i>
laed-ō	-ērē	laes-ī	laes-um <i>hurt</i>
Comp. as collid-ō	-ērē	collīs-ī	collīs-um <i>clash</i>
lūd-ō	-ērē	lūs-ī	lūs-um <i>play</i>
merg-ō	-ērē	mers-ī	mers-um <i>dip</i>
mitt-ō	-ērē	mīs-ī	miss-um <i>send</i>
plaud-ō	-ērē	plaus-ī	plaus-um <i>clap</i>
Comp. : explōd-ō	-ērē	explōs-ī	explōs-um <i>hiss off</i>
prēm-ō	-ērē	press-ī	press-um <i>press</i>
Compounds as			
comprim-ō	-ērē	compress-ī	compress-um <i>restrain</i>
rād-ō	-ērē	rās-ī	rās-um <i>scrape</i>
rōd-ō	-ērē	rōs-ī	rōs-um <i>gnaw</i>
sparg-ō	-ērē	spars-ī	spars-um <i>scatter</i>
Comp. as asperg-ō	-ērē	aspers-ī	aspers-um <i>sprinkle</i>
trūd-ō	-ērē	trūs-ī	trūs-um <i>thrust</i>
vād-ō	-ērē	—	—
Comp. as ēvād-ō	-ērē	ēvās-ī	ēvās-um <i>go forth</i>

Present Indic.	Infîn.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fig-ō	-ĕrĕ	fix-ī	fix-um	<i>fix</i>
flect-ō	-ĕrĕ	flex-ī	flex-um	<i>bend</i>
flū-ō	-ĕrĕ	flux-ī	flux-um	<i>flow</i>
nect-ō	-ĕrĕ	nex-ī	nex-um	<i>bind</i>
ning-īt or ningu-īt	-ĕrĕ	ninx-īt	—	<i>snow</i>

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

cern-ō	-ĕrĕ	crĕv-ī	crĕt-um	<i>discern</i>
līn-ō	-ĕrĕ	lĕv-ī	līt-um	<i>besmear</i>

N.B.—Comp. :

oblīn-ō	-ĕrĕ	oblĕv-ī	oblīt-um	<i>besmear</i>
pēt-ō (§ 201)	-ĕrĕ	pētīv-ī or pētī-ī	pētīt-um	<i>seek</i>
quaer-ō	-ĕrĕ	quaesiv-ī	quaesīt-um	<i>seek</i>
Comp. as exquir-ō	-ĕrĕ	exquisiv-ī	exquisīt-um	<i>seek out</i>
sēr-ō	-ĕrĕ	sĕv-ī	sāt-um	<i>sow</i>
Comp. as insēr-ō	-ĕrĕ	insĕv-ī	insīt-um	<i>ingraft</i>
sīn-ō	-ĕrĕ	siv-ī	sīt-um	<i>allow</i>
spĕrn-ō	-ĕrĕ	sprĕv-ī	sprĕt-um	<i>despise</i>
stĕrn-ō	-ĕrĕ	strāv-ī	strāt-um	<i>spread</i>
tĕr-ō	-ĕrĕ	triv-ī	trīt-um	<i>rub</i>
arcess-ō or accers-ō	-ĕrĕ	arcessiv-ī	arcessīt-um	<i>send for</i>
cāpess-ō	-ĕrĕ	cāpessiv-ī	cāpessīt-um	<i>take in hand</i>
lācess-ō	-ĕrĕ	lācessiv-ī	lācessīt-um	<i>provoke</i>
incess-ō	-ĕrĕ	incessiv-ī	—	<i>assault</i>

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 284) in form :—

ădōlesc-ō (§ 177)	-ĕrĕ	ădōlĕv-ī	ădult-um	<i>grow up</i>
cresc-ō (§ 177)	-ĕrĕ	crĕv-ī	crĕt-um	<i>grow</i>
nosc-ō	-ĕrĕ	nōv-ī	nōt-um	<i>get to know</i>

Comp. (noseō has lost an initial g):

agnosc-ō	-ĕrĕ	agnōv-ī	agnīt-um	<i>recognise</i>
cognosc-ō	-ĕrĕ	cognōv-ī	cognīt-um	<i>ascertain</i>
ignoso-ō	-ĕrĕ	ignōv-ī	ignōt-um	<i>overlook</i>
obsōlesc-ō	-ĕrĕ	obsōlĕv-ī	obsōlēt-um	<i>decay</i>
pasc-ō	-ĕrĕ	pāv-ī	past-um	<i>pasture</i>
quiesc-ō	-ĕrĕ	quĕlĕv-ī	quĕt-um	<i>rest</i>
scisc-ō	-ĕrĕ	sciv-ī	scīt-um	<i>enact</i>
suesc-ō (§§ 8, 177)	-ĕrĕ	suĕv-ī	suĕt-um	<i>become accus-tomed</i>

E.—Perfect formed by Ů.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supina.	
ál-ō	-ērē	ālū-ī	alt-um	nourish
Compounds of cān-ō				
(§ 189, A.), as				
praecīn-ō	-ērē	praecīnū-ī	praecent-um	sing before
cōl-ō	-ērē	cōlū-ī	cult-um	cultivate
accumb-ō	-ērē	accūbū-ī	accūbīt-um	recline at table
incumb-ō	-ērē	incūbū-ī	incūbīt-um	lean
occumb-ō	-ērē	occūbū-ī	occūbīt-um	sink
prōcumb-ō	-ērē	prōcūbū-ī	prōcūbīt-um	bend down
rēcumb-ō	-ērē	rēcūbū-ī	rēcūbīt-um	recline
succumb-ō	-ērē	succūbū-ī	succūbīt-um	submit
consūl-ō	-ērē	consūlū-ī	consult-um	consult
frēm-ō	-ērē	frēmū-ī	frēmīt-um	roar
gēm-ō	-ērē	gēmū-ī	gēmīt-um	groan
gign-ō	-ērē	gēnū-ī	gēnīt-um	produce
occūl-ō	-ērē	occūlū-ī	occult-um	hide
pōn-ō	-ērē	pōsū-ī	pōsīt-um	place
sēr-ō	-ērē	—	sert-um	join
Comp. as consēr-ō	-ērē	consērū-ī	consert-um	join
tex-ō	-ērē	texū-ī	text-um	weave
vōm-ō	-ērē	vōmū-ī	vōmīt-um	vomit
mēt-ō	-ērē	—	mess-um	reap
compesc-ō	-ērē	compescū-ī	—	check
strēp-ō	-ērē	strēpū-ī	—	resound
trēm-ō	-ērē	trēmū-ī	—	tremble

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

ācū-ō	-ērē	ācū-ī	ācūt-um	sharpen
argū-ō	-ērē	argū-ī	argūt-um	accuse
dilū-ō	-ērē	dilū-ī	dilūt-um	wash out
exū-ō	-ērē	exū-ī	exūt-um	strip off
imbū-ō	-ērē	imbū-ī	imbūt-um	steep
indū-ō	-ērē	indū-ī	indūt-um	put on
mīnū-ō	-ērē	mīnū-ī	mīnūt-um	lessen
abnū-ō	-ērē	abnū-ī	abnūt-um	refuse
annū-ō	-ērē	annū-ī	annūt-um	assent
pollū-ō	-ērē	pollū-ī	pollūt-um	defile
stātū-ō	-ērē	stātū-ī	stātūt-um	settle
Compounds as				
constītū-ō	-ērē	constītū-ī	constītūt-um	settle

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
sū-ō	-ērē	sū-ī	sūt-um	<i>stitch</i>
tribū-ō	-ērē	tribū-ī	tribūt-um	<i>assign</i>
rū-ō	-ērē	rū-ī	rūt-um	<i>rush down</i>
Comp. as dirū-ō	-ērē	dirū-ī	dirūt-um	<i>demolish</i>
mētū-ō	-ērē	mētū-ī	—	<i>fear</i>
congrū-ō	-ērē	congrū-ī	—	<i>agree</i>
lū-ō	-ērē	lū-ī	—	<i>pay</i>
plū-it	-ērē	plū-it (or plūv-it)	—	<i>rain</i>
solv-ō	-ērē	solv-ī	sōlūt-um	<i>loose</i>
volv-ō	-ērē	volv-ī	vōlūt-um	<i>roll</i>
fācess-ō	-ērē	fācess-ī	fācessīt-um	<i>accomplish</i>
accend-ō	-ērē	accend-ī	accens-um	<i>kindle</i>
incend-ō	-ērē	incend-ī	incens-um	<i>set on fire</i>
succend-ō	-ērē	succend-ī	succens-um	<i>kindle below</i>
defend-ō	-ērē	dēfend-ī	dēfens-um	<i>defend</i>
offend-ō	-ērē	offend-ī	offens-um	<i>stumble</i>
mand-ō	-ērē	mand-ī	mans-um	<i>chew</i>
pand-ō	-ērē	pand-ī	pass-um	<i>spread open</i>
prēhend-ō	-ērē	prēhend-ī	prēhens-um	<i>seize</i>
scand-ō	-ērē	scand-ī	scans-um	<i>climb</i>
Comp. as ascend-ō	-ērē	ascend-ī	ascens-um	<i>climb up</i>
sīd-ō	-ērē	sīd-ī	—	<i>settle down</i>
Comp. as consid-ō	-ērē	consid-ī	consess-um	<i>settle down</i>
vell-ō	-ērē	vell-ī	vuls-um	<i>pluck</i>
verr-ō	-ērē	verr-ī	vers-um	<i>sweep</i>
vert-ō	-ērē	vert-ī	vers-um	<i>turn</i>
bīb-ō	-ērē	bīb-ī	—	<i>drink</i>
excūd-ō	-ērē	excūd-ī	excūs-um	<i>hammer out</i>
strīd-ō (§ 199)	-ērē	strīd-ī	—	<i>creak</i>
vis-ō	-ērē	vīs-ī	—	<i>visit</i>

In the following the perfect base is identical with the verbal stem :—

find-ō	-ērē	fid-ī	fiss-um	<i>cleave</i>
scind-ō	-ērē	scīd-ī	sciss-um	<i>rend</i>
percell-ō	-ērē	percūl-ī	perculs-um	<i>overturn</i>

§ 190. THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

pār-īō	-ērē	pēpēr-ī	part-um	<i>produce</i>
--------	------	---------	---------	----------------

Compounds (4th conj.): compēr-īō and rēpēr-īō (§ 191, F.)

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
cāp-iō	-ērē	cēp-ī	capt-um	<i>take</i>
Comp. as accēp-iō	-ērē	accēp-ī	accept-um	<i>receive</i>
fāc-iō (§§ 200, 203)	-ērē	fēc-ī	fact-um	<i>make, do</i>
Comp. (§ 219) as				
sātisfāc-iō	-ērē	sātisfēc-ī	sātisfact-um	<i>satisfy</i>
„ with preps. as				
affic-iō	-ērē	affēc-ī	affect-um	<i>affect</i>
fūg-iō	-ērē	fūg-ī	fūgit-um	<i>flee</i>
iāc-iō	-ērē	iēc-ī	iact-um	<i>throw</i>
Comp. as abiēc-iō*	-ērē	abiēc-ī	abieci-um	<i>throw away</i>
fōd-iō	-ērē	fōd-ī	foss-um	<i>dig</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S.

allīc-iō	-ērē	allex-ī	allect-um	<i>attract</i>
illīc-iō	-ērē	illex-ī	illect-um	<i>entice</i>
pellīc-iō	-ērē	pellex-ī	pellect-um	<i>entice</i>
spēc-iō { (in old { Lat. only) }	-ērē	spex-ī	—	<i>look</i>
Comp. as aspēc-iō	-ērē	aspe-x-ī	aspect-um	<i>look at</i>
quāt-iō	-ērē	—	quass-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>
Comp. as concūt-iō	-ērē	concuss-ī	concuss-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (I).

cūp-iō	-ērē	cūpiv-ī	cūpit-um	<i>desire</i>
sāp-iō	-ērē	sāpiv-ī	—	<i>have taste, know</i>

E.—Perfect formed by Ū.

ēlīc-iō	-ērē	ēlīcū-ī	ēlīcit-um	<i>lure forth</i>
rāp-iō	-ērē	rāpū-ī	rapt-um	<i>seize</i>
Comp. as abrīp-iō	-ērē	abrīpū-ī	abrept-um	<i>carry off</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

coep-iō { (pres. not { classical) }	-ērē	coep-ī (§ 228)	coept-um	<i>begin</i>
--	------	----------------	----------	--------------

* In compounds of iāc-iō the consonantal i is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the i is nevertheless counted long by position (§ 636, 3).

§ 191. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

 A.—Perfect formed by reduplication: *none*.

B.—Perfect formed by vowel lengthening.

vĕn-iō	,	-īrĕ	vĕn-ī	vent-um	<i>come</i>
--------	---	------	-------	---------	-------------

 C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

Present Indic.	Infīn.	Perfect.	Supīne.	
farc-iō	-īrĕ	fars-ī	fart-um	<i>stuff</i>
Comp. as rĕferc-iō	-īrĕ	rĕfers-ī	rĕfert-um	<i>stuff</i>
fulc-iō	-īrĕ	fuls-ī	fult-um	<i>prop</i>
haur-iō (§ 204)	-īrĕ	haus-ī	haust-um	<i>drain</i>
saep-iō	-īrĕ	saeps-ī	saept-um	<i>fence in</i>
sanc-iō	-īrĕ	sanx-ī	{ sanct-um or sancit-um }	<i>ratify</i>
sarc-iō	-īrĕ	sars-ī	sart-um	<i>patch</i>
vine-iō	-īrĕ	vinx-ī	vinet-um	<i>bind</i>
sent-iō	-īrĕ	sens-ī	sens-um	<i>feel</i>

 D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (**I**).

This is the way in which the perfect base of *audiō* and of other verbs of the fourth conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

sĕpĕl-iō	-īrĕ	sĕpĕliv-ī	sĕpult-um	<i>bury</i>
----------	------	-----------	-----------	-------------

 E.—Perfect formed by **Ū**.

āmīc-iō	-īrĕ	{ amīcū-ī āmīx-ī }	āmict-um	<i>clothe</i>
āpĕr-iō	-īrĕ	āpĕrū-ī	āpert-um	<i>uncover, open</i>
ōpĕr-iō	-īrĕ	ōpĕrū-ī	ōpert-um	<i>cover</i>
sāl-iō	-īrĕ	sālū-ī	salt-um	<i>leap</i>
Comp. as dēsīl-iō	-īrĕ	dēsīlū-ī	dēsult-um	<i>leap down</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

compĕr-iō	-īrĕ	compĕr-ī	compert-um	<i>ascertain</i>
rĕpĕr-iō	-īrĕ	reppĕr-ī	rĕpert-um	<i>find</i>

Obs. For the double **p** in the perfect of *rĕpĕrīō*, see § 294.

L. G.

DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 192.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **hortōr** (§ 178).

§ 193.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **vērēōr** (§ 179), except—

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	
r-ōr	-ērī	rāt-ūs sum	<i>think</i>
fāt-ōr	-ērī	fass-ūs sum	<i>acknowledge</i>
Compounds as			
confīt-ōr	-ērī	confess-ūs sum	<i>confess</i>
aud-ēō (§§ 176, 200)	-ērē	aus-ūs sum	<i>are</i>
gaud-ēō (§ 176)	-ērē	gāvis-ūs sum	<i>rejoice</i>

§ 194.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

frū-ōr (§§ 204, 205)	-ī	fruct-ūs sum	<i>enjoy oneself</i>
fung-ōr (§ 205)	-ī	funct-ūs sum	<i>busy oneself</i>
lōqu-ōr	-ī	lēcūt-ūs sum	<i>speak</i>
quēr-ōr	-ī	quest-ūs sum	<i>complain</i>
sēqu-ōr	-ī	sēcūt-ūs sum	<i>follow</i>
amplect-ōr	-ī	amplex-ūs sum	<i>embrace</i>
complect-ōr	-ī	complex-ūs sum	<i>embrace</i>
lāb-ōr	-ī	laps-ūs sum	<i>slide</i>
nīt-ōr	-ī	nīs-ūs sum, I endeavoured	<i>endeavour, lean</i>
		nix-ūs sum, I leaned	
ūt-ōr (§ 205)	-ī	ūs-ūs sum	<i>make use</i>
fīd-ō (§ 176)	-ērē	fīs-ūs sum	<i>trust</i>

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 284) in form :—

āpisc-ōr	-ī	apt-ūs sum	<i>obtain</i>
Comp.: ādīpisc-ōr	-ī	ādept-ūs sum	<i>obtain</i>
commīsc-ōr	-ī	comment-ūs sum	<i>devise</i>
expergisc-ōr	-ī	experrect-ūs sum	<i>awake oneself</i>
irasc-ōr	-ī	irāt-ūs sum	<i>get angry</i>
nancisc-ōr	-ī	nact-ūs sum	<i>obtain</i>
nasc-ōr	-ī	nāt-ūs sum	<i>be born</i>
oblīvisc-ōr	-ī	oblīt-ūs sum	<i>forget</i>
pācisc-ōr	-ī	pact-ūs sum	<i>bargain</i>
prōfīcisc-ōr	-ī	prōfect-ūs sum	<i>set out</i>
ulcisc-ōr	-ī	ult-ūs sum	<i>take vengeance</i>
			<i>on, avenge</i>
dēfētisc-ōr	-ī	dēfess-ūs sum	<i>grow weary</i>

§ 195. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

Present Indic.	Infîn.	Perfect.	
mör-iör (§ 204)	-i	mortü-ūs sum	<i>die</i>
gräd-iör	-i	gress-ūs sum	<i>step</i>
Compounds as			
aggrēd-iör	-i	aggress-ūs sum	<i>attack</i>
pāt-iör	-i	pass-ūs sum	<i>suffer</i>
Comp.: perpēt-iör	-i	perpass-ūs sum	<i>endure</i>

§ 196. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like partiör (§ 181), except—

expēr-iör	-iri	expert-ūs sum	<i>try</i>
oppēr-iör	-iri	{ oppert-ūs } { opperit-ūs } sum	<i>wait</i>
ör-iör (§§ 199, 204)	-iri	ort-ūs sum	<i>rise</i>
assent-iör	-iri	assens-ūs sum	<i>agree</i>
mēt-iör	-iri	mens-ūs sum	<i>measure</i>
ord-iör	-iri	ors-ūs sum	<i>begin</i>

MISCELLANEOUS.

§ 197. VERBS WITH PRINCIPAL PARTS FROM VARIOUS ROOTS.

Present Indic.	Infîn.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fēr-iō	-irē	{ ic-i percuss-i	{ ict-um percuss-um	{ <i>strike</i>
fērō (§ 212)	ferrē	tūl-i	lāt-um	<i>bear</i>
fiō (§ 218)	fiērī	fact-ūs sum		<i>become</i>
tolliō	-ērē	sustūl-i	sublāt-um	<i>raise</i>

§ 198. INTRANSITIVE ACTIVE VERBS USED IN PLACE OF PASSIVE VERBS.

fiō (§ 218),	{ <i>I become,</i> <i>am made,</i>	serves as the passive of faciō, <i>I make, do</i>		
pērēō (§ 215),	<i>I perish</i>	"	"	perdō, <i>I destroy</i>
vāpūl-ō, -ārē,	<i>I get whipped</i>	"	"	verbérō, <i>I whip</i>
vēnēō (§ 215),	<i>I am on sale</i>	"	"	vendō, <i>I sell</i>

CHAPTER XXII.—IRREGULARITIES IN THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 199. VERBS WITH FORMS BELONGING TO TWO CONJUGATIONS.

(1) **Lāvō**, *I wash* (1st conj.), has in poetry pres. infin. act. **lāvērē**, and some persons of the pres. indic. act. (*e.g.* **lāvit**) from a 3rd conjugation stem.

(2) **Fervēō**, *I am boiling* (2nd conj.), and **fulgēō**, *I gleam* (2nd conj.), have similarly in poetry **fervērē** and **fervit**, **fulgērē** and **fulgīt**.

(3) **Stridēō**, *I creak* (2nd conj.), and **stridō** (3rd conj.), are both in common use.

(4) **Ciōō**, *I arouse* (2nd conj.), has a 4th conjugation form **ciō**, which is rarely used in the simple verb, but is the common or only form in the compounds. The supine (**cītum**) retains **i** short in the compounds, except in **accīō**, *I summon* (supine **accītum**); **excīō**, *I call forth*, has **excītum** or **excōitum**. The imperfect indicative often ends in **-ibam** (§ 152).

(5) **Ōrīōr**, *I rise* (4th conj.), has in pres. indic. **ōrēris**, **ōrītūr**, **ōrimūr**, and in imperf. subj. **ōrērētūr**, **ōrērentūr**, both in the simple verb and in the compounds, the fourth conjugation forms of these parts being rarely found.

(6) **Pōtīōr**, *I get possession* (4th conj.), similarly has in pres. indic. **pōtītūr**, and in imperf. subj. **pōtērētūr**, **pōtērēmūr**, **pōtērentūr**.

§ 200. OLD FORMS OF THE FUTURE-PERFECT INDICATIVE AND PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

In the older Latin writers many verbs have a future-perfect formed by the addition of **-assō** to the present base in the first conjugation, **-sō** in the third conjugation, and **-essō** or **-sō** in the second; also a perfect subjunctive formed by the addition of **-assim** to the present base in the first conjugation, **-sim** in the third conjugation, and **-essim** or **-sim** in the second. The two tenses are identical in form except in the first person singular.

First Conjugation : **lāv-assō** (**lāv-ō**, *lighten*), **adolār-assis** (**adolār-ō**, *make clear*), **rōg-assint** (**rōg-ō**, *ask*);

Second Conjugation : **prōhīb-essit** (**prōhīb-ēō**, *hinder*), **au-sim** (**aud-ēō**, *dare*, **d** being dropped before **s**);

Third Conjugation : **faxō** (indic.), **faxim** (subj.), **faxis**, **faxit**, **faximūs**, **faxitis**, **faxint** (**fāc-iō**, *make, do*, **c**s becoming **x**).

Fāc-iō is the only verb of which all these forms exist; such parts of other verbs as occur are similarly conjugated.

In classical times only **faxō**, **faxis**, **ausim**, **ausis** were in common use. They should not be used by the learner in writing Latin prose.

§ 201. VERBS WITH PERFECT BASE ENDING IN V.

For the shorter form of tenses formed from the perfect base of verbs with perfect ending in -āvī or -ēvī, see § 153. Many verbs with perfect ending in -ēvī or -ōvī have similar short forms; e.g.:—

flestī = flēvistī (flēō, <i>wep</i>)	nostī = nōvistī	} noscō, I got to know
dēlerunt = dēlēverunt (dēlēō, <i>destroy</i>)	nōrunt = nōverunt	
implērāt = implēverāt (implēō, <i>fill</i>)	nōrāt = nōverāt	
adsuērīnt = adsuēverīnt (adsuescō, <i>be wont</i>)	nōrint = nōverīnt	
quiessem = quīēvissem (quiescō, <i>rest</i>)	nossem = nōvissem	

Similarly, in compounds of mōvēō, *set in motion*, we find, though the v belongs to the verbal stem, admōrunt (= admōverunt), commossē (= commōvissē), etc.

In the first person singular of the perfect indicative active, dēsīnō, *desist*, always has dēsī, and pētō, *seek*, has pētīvī or pētī. Pētītū (cp. ūt, § 214) is occasionally contracted to pētī.

§ 202. SHORT FORMS OF VERBS WITH PERFECT BASE IN S.

The following and similar forms are occasionally found in poetry:—

dixtī	for dixistī,	from dicō	say (in prose also)
ēvastī	„ ēvāsistī,	„ ēvādō	go out
traxē	„ traxissē,	„ trāhō	draw
ērepsēmūs	„ ērepsissēmūs	„ ērēpō	crawl out

§ 203. IMPERATIVE PRESENT WITHOUT FINAL VOWEL.

In the second person singular of the present imperative active, the three following verbs—dicō, *say*; dūcō, *lead*; faciō, *make, do*—have respectively dīc, dūc, faci, the final -ē being dropped. This applies to the compounds dicō and dūcō, and to compounds of faciō which retain a in the present base: other compounds are regular. e.g. afficiō, *affect*, has imperative afficē.

§ 204. FUTURE PARTICIPLES NOT FORMED FROM SUPINE BASE.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Supine.	Future Participle.
iūv-ō	-ārē	iūt-um	iūvātūr-ūs <i>delight</i>
sōn-ō	-ārē	sōnīt-um	sōnātūr-ūs <i>sound</i>
parc-ō	-ērē	—	parsūr-ūs <i>be sparing</i>
haur-iō	-irē	haust-um	{ hausūr-ūs } <i>drain</i>
		Perf. Part.	{ haustūr-ūs }
frū-ōr	-ī	fruct-ūs	frūītūr-ūs <i>enjoy oneself</i>
mōr-iōr	-ī	mortū-ūs	mōritūr-ūs <i>die</i>
ōr-iōr	-īrī	ort-ūs	ōritūr-ūs <i>rise</i>

§ 205. GERUNDIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Only transitive verbs, as a rule, have a gerundive. Four intransitive verbs, which were transitive in early Latin, retain their gerundive in the classical period; these are frūōr, *fungōr*, pōtiōr, ūtōr, which were used transitively with the meanings respectively of *enjoy, perform, obtain, use*.

CHAPTER XXIII.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 206. Under this heading are included verbs in which the tenses formed from the present base (§ 133) do not all conform to any one of the models given in the foregoing pages, viz. :—

- I. *Sum*, *I am*, and its compounds.
- II. *Vōlō*, *I will, am willing*, with its two compounds—*nōlō*, *I will not, am unwilling*; *mālō*, *I am more willing, prefer*.
- III. *Fērō*, *I bear*, and its compounds.
- IV. *Ēō*, *I go*, and its compounds; also *quēō*, *I am able*, and *nēquēō*, *I am unable*, conjugated like *ēō*.
- V. *Fiō*, *I become*, and its compounds.
- VI. *Ēdō*, *I eat*, and two compounds.
- VII. *Dō*, *I give*, and its compound *circumdō*.

I.—*SUM* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 207. The ordinary forms of this verb are given in § 134 (pp. 78, 79).

Obs. After a word ending in a vowel or *m*, *est* is in many editions of the classics printed *st*, either attached to the preceding word or separately; e.g. *visast* or *visā st* = *visā est* (*she has been seen*), *dēcōrumst* or *dēcōrum st* = *dēcōrum est* (*it is seemly*). This represents what was probably the pronunciation.

§ 208. *Present Subjunctive*.—The following forms belong chiefly to early Latin :—

SINGULAR : <i>sīem</i>	<i>sīēs</i>	<i>sīēt</i>	PLURAL (3rd person) : <i>sīent</i>
„ <i>fūam</i>	<i>fūās</i>	<i>fūāt</i>	„ „ <i>fūant</i>

§ 209.

COMPOUNDS.

The following are conjugated like *sum* :—

Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perfect.	
<i>ab-sum</i>	<i>āb-essē</i>	<i>āfū-ī</i>	<i>am absent</i>
<i>ad-sum</i>	<i>ād-essē</i>	<i>affū-ī</i>	<i>am present</i>
<i>dē-sum</i>	<i>dē-essē</i>	<i>dēfū-ī</i>	<i>am wanting</i>
<i>in-sum</i>	<i>īn-essē</i>	<i>infū-ī</i>	<i>am in</i>
<i>inter-sum</i>	<i>intēr-essē</i>	<i>interfū-ī</i>	<i>am in the midst</i>
<i>ob-sum</i>	<i>ōb-essē</i>	<i>obfū-ī</i>	<i>am harmful</i>
<i>prae-sum</i>	<i>prae-essē</i>	<i>prae-fū-ī</i>	<i>am in command</i>
<i>prō-sum</i>	<i>prōd-essē</i>	<i>prōfū-ī</i>	<i>am beneficial</i>
<i>sub-sum</i>	<i>sūb-essē</i>	—	<i>am under</i>
<i>sūper-sum</i>	<i>sūpēr-essē</i>	<i>sūperfū-ī</i>	<i>am left</i>

NOTE 1.—*Prōsum* retains *d* (§ 292, NOTE) before *e*; e.g. the present indicative is

<i>prō-sum</i>	<i>prō-sūmūs</i>
<i>prōd-ēs</i>	<i>prōd-estīs</i>
<i>prōd-est</i>	<i>prō-sunt</i>

Similarly *prōsum* has imperfect indicative *prōdēram*, future indicative *prōdērō*, etc.

Absum generally has *ā-* instead of *āb-* before *f*; e.g. *āfūi*, *āfōrē*.

NOTE 2.—*Absum* has a present participle *absens* (gen. *absent-is*), *absent*, and *praesum* has a present participle *praesens* (gen. *praesent-is*), *present*. These are the only compounds in which a present participle of *sum* is found.

§ 210. *Possum*, *I am able*, *I can* (consisting of the base of the adjective *pōt-is*, *able*, + *sum*), is conjugated as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *possum*, *possē*, *pōtū-i*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (used as adjective only): *pōtens* (gen. *pōtent-is*), *powerful*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am able*.)

<i>pos-sum</i>	<i>pos-sūmūs</i>
<i>pōt-ēs</i>	<i>pōt-estīs</i>
<i>pōt-est</i>	<i>pos-sunt</i>

IMPERFECT. (*I was able*.)

<i>pōt-eram</i>	<i>pōt-ērāmūs</i>
<i>pōt-ērās</i>	<i>pōt-ērātīs</i>
<i>pōt-erāt</i>	<i>pōt-erant</i>

FUTURE. (*I shall be able*.)

<i>pōt-ērō</i>	<i>pōt-ērīmūs</i>
<i>pōt-ērīs</i>	<i>pōt-ērītīs</i>
<i>pōt-erit</i>	<i>pōt-erunt</i>

PERFECT.* (*I was or have been able*.)

pōtū-i, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been able*.)

pōtū-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been able*.)

pōtū-ērō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should be able*.)

<i>pos-sim</i>	<i>pos-simūs</i>
<i>pos-sīs</i>	<i>pos-sitīs</i>
<i>pos-sit</i>	<i>pos-sint</i>

IMPERFECT. (*I should be able*.)

<i>pos-sem</i>	<i>pos-semūs</i>
<i>pos-sēs</i>	<i>pos-sētīs</i>
<i>pos-sēt</i>	<i>pos-sent</i>

PERFECT.

pōtū-ērim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been able*.)

pōtū-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

None.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: *possē*, *to be able*.

PERFECT: *pōtū-issē*, *to have been able*.

Obs. *Possum* has no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs.

NOTE.—Instead of *pōtest* the full form *pōtis est* is occasionally found, and sometimes *pōtis* (masc. and fem.) or *pōtē* (neut.) stands alone as an equivalent for *pōtest*. *Pōtis* with other parts of *sum* is rare.

* Tenses formed from the perfect or supine base of irregular verbs are conjugated regularly. Cp. § 135.

II.—VOLO, NOLO, AND MALO.

§ 211. PRINCIPAL PARTS:—

völō, vellē, völä-i, *I will, am willing.*nölō (ne-, *not*, + völō), nollē, nölü-i, *I will not, am unwilling.*mälō (mäg-, *as in mägīs, more*, + völō), mallē, mälü-i, *I am more willing. prefer.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.			
völens (gen. völent-is), <i>willing.</i>		nölens (gen. nölent-is), <i>unwilling.</i>	
None.			
INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT	(<i>I am willing</i>)	(<i>I am unwilling</i>)	(<i>I prefer</i>)
	völō	nölō	mälō
	vis	nön vis	mävīs
	vult	nön vult	mävult
	völümūs	nölümūs	mälümūs
	vultīs	nön vultīs	mävultīs
völunt	nölunt	mälunt	
IMPERFECT	(<i>I was willing</i>)	(<i>I was unwilling</i>)	(<i>I was preferring</i>)
	völēbam	nölēbam	mälēbam
	völēbās	nölēbās	mälēbās
	völēbāt	nölēbāt	mälēbāt
	völēbāmūs	nölēbāmūs	mälēbāmūs
	völēbātīs	nölēbātīs	mälēbātīs
völēbant	nölēbant	mälēbant	
FUTURE	(<i>I shall be willing</i>)	(<i>I shall be unwilling</i>)	(<i>I shall prefer</i>)
	vōlam	(nōlam)	(mālam)
	völēs	nölēs	(mälēs)
	völēt	nölēt	(mälēt)
	völēmūs	(nölēmūs)	(mälēmūs)
	völētīs	(nölētīs)	(mälētīs)
völent	(nölent)	(mälent)	
PERFECT	(<i>I was or have been willing</i>)	(<i>I was or have been unwilling</i>)	(<i>I preferred or have preferred</i>)
	völü-i, etc.	nölü-i, etc.	mälü-i, etc.
PLUPERFECT	(<i>I had been willing</i>)	(<i>I had been unwilling</i>)	(<i>I had preferred</i>)
	völü-eram, etc.	nölü-eram, etc.	mälü-eram, etc.
FUTURE PERFECT	(<i>I shall have been willing</i>)	(<i>I shall have been unwilling</i>)	(<i>I shall have preferred</i>)
	völü-erō, etc.	nölü-erō, etc.	mälü-erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT	(<i>I should be willing</i>) vēlim vēlis vēlit vēlimūs vēlitīs vēlint	(<i>I should be unwilling</i>) nōlim nōlis nōlit nōlimūs nōlitīs nōlint	(<i>I should prefer</i>) mālim mālis mālit mālimūs mālitīs mālint
IMPERFECT	(<i>I should be willing</i>) vellem vellēs vellēt vellēmūs vellētīs vellent	(<i>I should be unwilling</i>) nollem nollēs nollēt nollēmūs nollētīs nollent	(<i>I should prefer</i>) mallem mallēs mallēt mallēmūs mallētīs mallent
PERFECT	vōlū-ērim, etc.	nōlū-ērim, etc.	mālū-ērim, etc.
PLUPERFECT	(<i>I should have been willing</i>) vōlū-issē, etc.	(<i>I should have been unwilling</i>) nōlū-issē, etc.	(<i>I should have preferred</i>) mālū-issē, etc.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT	None	(<i>Be unwilling</i>) nōlī nōlitē	None
FUTURE	None	(<i>Thou shalt be unwilling</i>) nōlitō nōlitō nōlitōtē nōluntō	None
INFINITIVE.			
PRESENT	vellē, to be willing	nollē, to be unwilling	mallē, to prefer
PERFECT	vōlū-issē, to have been willing	nōlū-issē, to have been unwilling	mālū-issē, to have preferred

Obs. Vōlō, nōlō, and mālō have no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs; nor have they any gerund.

NOTE 1.—Vult, vultis are sometimes spelt volt, voltis. (See § 2, NOTE.)

NOTE 2.—Sī vis, if thou wilt, is sometimes contracted to sīs.

III.—*FERO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.§ 212. PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fēr-ō*, *fer-rē*, *tūl-i*, *lāt-um*, *I bear*.BASES: *fēr* (present); *tūl* (perfect); *lāt* (supine).

Obs. The perfect and supine bases of this verb are in no way connected with its present base, but are akin to *tollō*, *I raise*. The supine (*tlātum*) has lost an initial *t*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT: *fēr-ens* (gen. *fērent-is*),
bearing
 FUTURE: *lāt-ūrus*, *lāt-ūrā*, *lāt-ūrum*, *about to bear*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I bear*.)

fēr-ō *fēr-imūs*
fer-s *fer-tis*
fer-t *fēr-unt*

IMPERFECT. (*I was bearing*.)

fēr-ēbam *fēr-ēbāmūs*
fēr-ēbās *fēr-ēbātis*
fēr-ēbāt *fēr-ēbant*

FUTURE. (*I shall bear*.)

fēr-am *fēr-ēmūs*
fēr-ēs *fēr-ētis*
fēr-ēt *fēr-ent*

PERFECT. (*I bore or have borne*.)*tūl-i*, etc.PLUPERFECT. (*I had borne*.)*tūl-eram*, etc.FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have borne*.)*tūl-erō*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should bear*.)

fēr-am *fēr-āmūs*
fēr-ās *fēr-ātis*
fēr-āt *fēr-ant*

IMPERFECT. (*I should be bearing*.)

fer-rem *fer-rēmūs*
fer-rēs *fer-rētis*
fer-rēt *fer-rent*

PERFECT: *lāt-ūs*, *lāt-ā*, *lāt-um*,
borne or having been borne
 GERUNDIVE: *fēr-endūs*, *fēr-endā*,
fēr-endum, *fit to be borne*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am borne*.)

fēr-ōr *fēr-imūr*
fer-ris *fēr-imini*
fer-tūr *fēr-untūr*

IMPERFECT. (*I was being borne*.)

fēr-ēbār *fēr-ēbāmūr*
fēr-ēbāris or -ēbārē *fēr-ēbāmini*
fēr-ēbātūr *fēr-ēbantūr*

FUTURE. (*I shall be borne*.)

fēr-ār *fēr-ēmūr*
fēr-ēris or fēr-erē *fēr-ēmini*
fēr-ētūr *fēr-entūr*

PERFECT. (*I was or have been borne*.)*lāt-ūs sum*, etc.PLUPERFECT. (*I had been borne*.)*lāt-ūs eram*, etc.FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been borne*.)*lāt-ūs erō*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should be borne*.)

fēr-ār *fēr-āmūr*
fēr-āris or fēr-ārē *fēr-āmini*
fēr-ātūr *fēr-antūr*

IMPERFECT. (*I should be borne*.)

fer-rēr *fer-rēmūr*
fer-rēris or fer-rerē *fer-rēmini*
fer-rētūr *fer-rentūr*

ACTIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

PERFECT.

tül-ërim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have borne.*)

tül-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Bear.*)

fër fër-të

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must bear.*)

fër-tö fër-tötë

fër-tö fër-untö

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES.: fër-rë, *to bear*" PERF.: tül-issë, *to have borne*" FUT.: lätür-üs essë, *to be about to bear*GERUND: fër-endum, *bearing, etc.*SUPINE: lät-um, *to bear*; lät-ü, *in bearing*

PASSIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

PERFECT.

lät-üsim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been borne.*)

lät-üs essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be borne.*)

fër-rë fër-îmîni

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must be borne.*)

fër-tör

fër-tör

fër-untör

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES.: fër-rî, *to be borne*" PERF.: lät-üs essë, *to have been borne*" FUT.: lätum îri, *to be about to be borne*

§ 213.

COMPOUNDS.

The following list shows the principal parts of the compounds of fërö; they are conjugated like the simple verb both in the active and in the passive:—

Compounded with

äb:	aufër-ö	-rë	abstül-i	ablät-um	<i>bear away</i>
äd:	affer-ö	-rë	attül-i	allät-um	<i>bring</i>
cum:	confër-ö	-rë	contül-i	collät-um	<i>bring together</i>
dis-:	differ-ö	-rë	distül-i	dilät-um	<i>separate</i>
ex:	effër-ö	-rë	extül-i	ëlät-um	<i>bring out</i>
in:	infër-ö	-rë	intül-i	illät-um	<i>bring in</i>
öb:	offër-ö	-rë	obtül-i	oblät-um	<i>offer</i>
rë:	réfër-ö	-rë	rettül-i (§ 294)	rëlät-um	<i>bear back</i>
rë:	{réfër-t}	-rë	rëtül-ît	—	<i>concern</i>
	{§ 233}				
süb:	suffër-ö	-rë	sustül-i	snblät-um	<i>endure</i>
Other preps. unchanged, as in					
dëfër-ö		-rë	dëtül-i	dëlät-um	<i>bear down</i>

IV.—EO AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 214. PRINCIPAL PARTS: ēō, irē, iv-i, it-um, I go.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: iens (gen. ēunt-īs), *going*.
FUTURE: it-ūrus, it-ūrā, it-ūrum, *about to go*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I go*.)

ēō imūs

is itīs

it ēunt

IMPERFECT. (*I was going*.)

ibam ibāmūs

ibās ibātīs

ibāt ibant

FUTURE. (*I shall go*.)

ibō ibūmūs

ibīs ibītīs

ibit ibunt

PERFECT. (*I went or have gone*.)

ivi or ī īvīmūs or īmūs

ivistī (īistī) or ivistīs (īistīs) or

istī istīs

ivit, iit (or it) { ivērunt or iērunt
ivērē or iērēPLUPERFECT. (*I had gone*.)

iv-eram or i-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have gone*.)

iv-ērō or i-ērō, etc.

Obs. In the simple verb (but not in the compounds) the forms with *v* are more usual in tenses formed from the perfect base. The second *i* of *iit* is long; cp. *pētīt*, § 201. The forms included in brackets () are comparatively rare.

PASSIVE VOICE (IMPERSONAL ONLY, § 230, 2, b).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT: itūr

IMPERFECT: ibātūr

FUTURE: ibitūr

So also the other tenses; e.g. Perfect, *itum est*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should go*.)

ēam ēāmūs

ēās ēātīs

ēāt ēant

IMPERFECT. (*I should be going*.)

irem irēmūs

irēs irētīs

irēt irent

PERFECT.

iv-ērīm or i-ērīm, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have gone*.)

iv-issem (i-issem) or issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Go*.)

i itē

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must go*.)

itō itōtē

itō ēuntō

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: irē, *to go*PERFECT: ivissē (iissē) or issē, *to have gone*FUTURE: itūr-ūs essē, *to be about to go*

GERUND.

Nom. ēundum, *going*, etc.

SUPINE.

Acc. it-um, *to go*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT: ēātūr

IMPERFECT: irētūr

INFINITIVE

PRESENT: iri

§ 215.

COMPOUNDS.

The following are conjugated like *ēō*; in the tenses formed from the perfect base the forms without *v* are more usual:—

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
āb-ēō	ābi-ī	ābit-um	<i>go away</i>
*ād-ēō	ādi-ī	ādīt-um	<i>approach</i>
cō-ēō	cōi-ī	cōit-um	<i>come together</i>
*in-ēō	inī-ī	inīt-um	<i>enter</i>
intēr-ēō	intēri-ī	intērit-um	<i>vanish</i>
intrō-ēō	intrōi-ī	intrōit-um	<i>go in</i>
*ōb-ēō	ōbi-ī	ōbit-um	<i>traverse, die</i>
pēr-ēō	pēri-ī	pērit-um	<i>perish</i>
prae-ēō	praei-ī	praeit-um	<i>precede</i>
prōd-ēō	prōdi-ī	prōdit-um	<i>go forth</i>
praetēr-ēō	praetēri-ī	praetērit-um	<i>go past</i>
rēd-ēō	rēdi-ī	rēdit-um	<i>go back</i>
*sūb-ēō	sūbi-ī	sūbit-um	<i>go up to, endure</i>
*trans-ēō	transi-ī	transit-um	<i>go across</i>
vēn-ēō	vēni-ī	vēnit-um	<i>go on sale</i>

NOTE.—*Ambiō*, *I go around*, is a regular verb of the 4th conj.

§ 216. The compounds marked (*) in the above list may, when they have a transitive meaning, be conjugated in the passive in all three persons as follows:—

PARTICIPLES.

[*approached.*

PERFECT: ādit-ūs, ādit-ā, ādit-um, *approached* or *having been*
GERUNDIVE: ād-ēundūs, ād-ēundā, ād-ēundum, *fit to be approached.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am approached.*)

PRESENT: ād-ēār, ād-ēāris, etc.

ād-ēōr ād-imūr

IMPERF.: ād-irēr, ād-irēris, etc.

ād-irīs ād-iminī

PERFECT: ādit-ūs sim, etc.

ād-itūr ād-ēuntūr

PLUPERF.: ādit-ūs essem, etc.

IMPERF.: ād-ibār, ād-ibāris, etc.

FUTURE: ād-ibōr, ād-ibēris, etc.

PERFECT: ādit-ūs sum, etc.

PLUPERF.: ādit-ūs eram, etc.

FUT.-PF.: ādit-ūs erō, etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: ād-iri, *to be approached*PERFECT: ādit-ūs esse, *to have been approached*

QUEO AND NEQUEO.

§ 217. PRINCIPAL PARTS:—

qu-ēō, qu-irē, quiv-ī, quīt-um, *I can.*nēqu-ēō, nēqu-irē, nēquiv-ī, nēquīt-um, *I cannot.*

These two verbs are conjugated exactly like *ēō*, except that they have no imperative or gerund.

NOTE.—In tenses from the perfect base the forms with *v* and those without *v* are used indifferently, except that the latter do not occur in the first person (singular or plural) of the perfect indicative. (Cp. § 153, *Obs.* 1.)

V.—FIO AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 218. *Fīō*, *I become, am made*, takes the place of the passive of *fāciō*, *I make*, in tenses formed from the present base. The other tenses of *fīō* are supplied by the passive voice of *fāciō*, of which the supine base is *fact-*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fīō*, *fīērī*, *fact-ūs sum*.

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: *fact-ūs*, *fact-ā*, *fact-um*, *having become*.
GERUNDIVE: *fāciend-ūs*, *-ā*, *-um*, *fit to become*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I become*.)

fīō —
fīs —
fīt *fīunt*

IMPERFECT. (*I was becoming*.)

fīebam *fīebāmūs*
fiebās *fīebātīs*
fīebāt *fīebant*

FUTURE. (*I shall become*.)

fīam *fīemūs*
fīēs *fīētīs*
fīēt *fient*

PERFECT: *fact-ūs sum*, etc.

PLUPERF: *fact-ūs eram*, etc.

FUT.-PERF.: *fact-ūs erō*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should become*.)

fīam *fīamūs*
fīās *fīātīs*
fīāt *fiant*

IMPERFECT. (*I should become*.)

fīerem *fīerēmūs*
fīerēs *fīerētīs*
fīerēt *fīerent*

PERFECT: *fact-ūs sim*, etc.

PLUPERF.: *fact-ūs essem*, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Become*.)

fī *fītē*

FUTURE. *None*.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: *fīērī*, *to become*. PERFECT: *fact-ūs essē*, *to have become*.

FUTURE: *factum iri*, *to be about to become*.

Obs. Except in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive (cp. § 142), *fīō* follows the fourth conjugation; it has, however, *ī* (long) in all parts except *fīt*, *fīērī*, and the imperfect subjunctive.

§ 219. COMPOUNDS.

Compounds of *fāciō* with a preposition are regularly conjugated in the passive; e.g. *afficiō*, *I affect* (compounded of the preposition *ād*, *to*, and *fāciō*), has passive *afficiōr*.

Other compounds of *fāciō* employ *fīō* as their passive in those parts which are formed from the present base; e.g. *cālēfāciō*, *I make hot*, has passive *cālēfīō*.

NOTE.—*Conficiō*, *I accomplish*, sometimes has passive *confīō* instead of the regular and more usual form *conficiōr*.

Dēfīō is occasionally found, and has the same meaning as *dēfīciō*, viz. *I fail, come to an end*.

VI.—*EDO* AND COMPOUNDS.

§ 220. The tenses given below are the only ones in which *ēdō* is irregular.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ēd-ō*, *ēd-ērē* or *ēssē*, *ēd-i/ēs-um*, *I eat*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE (<i>continued</i>).	
PRESENT. (<i>I eat</i> .)		IMPERFECT. (<i>I should be eating</i> .)	
<i>ēd-ō</i>	<i>ēd-īmūs</i>	<i>ēd-ērem</i> or	<i>ēd-ērēmūs</i> or
<i>ēd-is</i> or <i>ēs</i>	<i>ēd-itīs</i> or <i>estīs</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmūs</i>
<i>ēd-it</i> or <i>est</i>	<i>ēd-unt</i>	<i>ēd-ērēs</i> or	<i>ēd-ērētīs</i> or
		<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētīs</i>
		<i>ēd-ērēt</i> or	<i>ēd-ērēt</i> or
		<i>essēt</i>	<i>essēt</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (<i>I should eat</i> .)		PRESENT. (<i>Eat</i> .)	
<i>ēd-am</i> or	<i>ēd-amūs</i> or	<i>ēd-ē</i> or <i>ēs</i>	<i>ēi-itē</i> or <i>estē</i>
<i>ēd-im</i>	<i>ēd-īmūs</i>	FUTURE. (<i>Thou shalt eat</i> .)	
<i>ēd-ās</i> or	<i>ēd-ātīs</i> or	<i>ēd-itō</i> or <i>estō</i>	<i>ēd-itōlē</i> or <i>estōlē</i>
<i>ēd-is</i>	<i>ēd-itīs</i>	<i>ēd-itō</i> or <i>estō</i>	<i>ēd-untō</i>
<i>ēd-āt</i> or	<i>ēd-ant</i> or		
<i>ēd-it</i>	<i>ēd-int</i>		

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: *ēd-ērē* or *essē*, *to eat*.

Obs. It should be noticed that, in all parts of the verb in which *sum*, *I am*, has forms beginning with the letters *es*, *ēdō* has forms exactly similar, excepting that in the second person singular of the present indicative and imperative *sum* has *ēs*, whereas *ēdō* has *ēs*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Two irregular forms are occasionally found in the passive voice of *ēdō*, viz. *estūr* (for *ēdītūr*, 3rd sing. pres. indic.), and *essētūr* (for *ēdērētūr*, 3rd sing. imperf. subj.).

§ 221.

COMPOUNDS.

Two compounds of *ēdō* occasionally follow the irregular conjugation of the simple verb, viz. *cōmēdō*, *I eat up*, and *exēdō*, *I devour*.

VII.—*DO* AND ITS COMPOUND *CIRCUMDO*.

§ 222. *Dō* (perfect *dēdi*) follows the first conjugation, but has *ā* (short) instead of *ā* after *d* in parts formed from the present or supine base (*e.g.* *dāmūs*, *dātūs*), except in the second person singular of the present indicative and imperative active, *dās*, *dā*.

§ 223. In addition to the regular form, *dō* has an old present subjunctive *dūim*, *dūis*, *dūit*; *dūint*. This occurs also in some of the compounds of *dō*.

§ 224. *Circumdō* is conjugated like *dō*; the other compounds belong to the third conjugation.

CHAPTER XXIV.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The following verbs are defective, that is to say only the parts given below are in use.

§ 225. *Āiō, I say.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE : *āiens* (gen. *āient-īs*), *saying*.

INDICATIVE PRESENT : *āiō* (*I say*), *āis*, *āit*, *āiunt*.

IMPERFECT : *āiēbam* (*I was saying*), etc. (complete).

PERFECT : *āit*, *he said*.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT : *āiāt*, *he would say*.

§ 226. *Inquam, I say.*

INDICATIVE PRESENT : *inquam*, *inquīs*, *inquīt*, *inquīmūs*, *inquūnt*.

IMPERFECT : *inquēbāt*, *he was saying*.

FUTURE : *inquēs*, *inquēt*, *he will say*.

PERFECT : *inquī*, *inquistī*, *inquīt*.

§ 227. *Fārī, to say.* (The simple verb is only used in poetry.)

PARTICIPLE PRESENT : *fantem* (acc.), *fantī* (dat.), *saying*.

PERFECT : *fāt-ūs*, *fāt-ā*, *having said*.

GERUNDIVE : *fand-ūs*, *-ā*, *-um*, *fit to be said*.

INDICATIVE PRESENT : *fātūr*, *he says*.

FUTURE : *fābōr* (*I shall say*), *fābītūr*.

PERFECT : *fāt-ūs est*, *he said or has said*.

PLUPERFECT : *fāt-ūs eram* (*I had said*), *fāt-ūs erāt*.

IMPERATIVE PRESENT : *fārē*, *say*. INFIN. PRESENT : *fārī*, *to say*.

GERUND : *fandī*, *fandō* (*saying*). SUPINE : *fātū*, *in saying*.

Some other parts (present, imperfect, and future indicative) of the compounds of *fārī* occur.

§ 228. The following have no present base in use :—

coep-ī, I began; *mēmīn-ī, I remember*; *ōd-ī, I hate*.

They are regularly conjugated in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses, which (in the case of *mēmīnī* and *ōdī*) are translated respectively as present, imperfect, and future. Some other parts are in use :—

From *coepī* : Perf. part. pass., *coept-ūs*, *-ā*, *-um*, and tenses formed by it with *sum*.

mēmīnī : Imperative, *mēmentō* (*remember*), *mēmentōtē*.

ōdī : Future part., *ōsūr-ūs*, *-ā*, *-um*, *about to hate*.

§ 229. The following are isolated forms :—

(1) *Infit*, *he begins (to speak)*.

(2) *Quaesō*, *I entreat*; *quaesūmūs* (used parenthetically like English *pray*).

(3) *Āvē* or *āvētō*, *hail!*; *āvētē*. Infinitive, *āvērē*, *to cry "hail."*

(4) *Salvē*, *hail!*; *salvētē*. Ind. fut., *salvēbis*. Infin., *salvērē*.

(5) *Cēdō*, *give (imperative)*.

CHAPTER XXV.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 230. Two classes of verbs fall under this heading:—

(1) Active verbs (some transitive, some intransitive) found only in the third person singular and infinitive and always used impersonally;

(2) The third person singular and infinitive—

(a) Of a few active verbs, transitive and intransitive; e.g. *iuvāt, it delights*, from *iuvō, I delight*; *tōnāt, it thunders*, from *tōnō, I thunder*; *intēret, it makes a difference*, from *intersum, I am in the midst*;

(b) Of the passive of nearly all verbs which in the active are personal intransitive verbs or can be used intransitively; e.g. *ventum ērāt, they (or he, I, we) had come*, from *venīō, I come*.

Obs. The perfect participle in the perfect, pluperfect or future-perfect of a passive verb used intransitively is always neuter.

§ 231. The various tenses of personal verbs thus used impersonally are regularly formed, and call for no further remark here; their constructions are explained in the Syntax. A list of the commoner verbs which are impersonal only is given below.

§ 232. TRANSITIVE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Present.	Inf.	Perfect.	
dēc-ēt	-ērē	dēcū-īt	<i>it seems</i>
dēdēc-ēt	-ērē	dēdēcū-īt	<i>it misseems</i>
mīsēr-ēt	-ērē	mīsērū-īt	<i>it moves to pity</i>
oport-ēt	-ērē	oportū-īt	<i>it behoves</i>
paenit-ēt	-ērē	paenitū-īt	<i>it makes sorry</i>
pīg-ēt	-ērē	pīgū-īt	<i>it troubles</i>
pūd-ēt	-ērē	pūdū-īt or pūdītum est	<i>it shames</i>
taed-ēt	-ērē	pertaesum est	<i>it wearies</i>

Obs. These verbs are not as a rule translated by English impersonal verbs; e.g. *mē mīsērēt* may be rendered *I pity*; *nōs oportēt*, *we ought*; *tē paenitēbāt*, *you were sorry*; *ēos pūdebāt*, *they will be ashamed*.

§ 233. INTRANSITIVE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Present.	Inf.	Perfect.	
lib-ēt	-ērē	libū-īt or libītum est	<i>it is pleasing</i> } with
lic-ēt	-ērē	licū-īt or licītum est	<i>it is lawful</i> } dative
rēfert	rēferrē	rētūl-īt	<i>it concerns</i> (§ 213)
ning-īt	-ērē	ninx-īt	<i>it snows</i>
ningu-īt	-ērē	plū-īt or plūv-īt	<i>it rains</i>

Obs. *Libēt* and *licēt* with a dative may usually be rendered thus: *mihī libēt, I like*; *tibi licēt, you may, or you are allowed*.

L. G.

CHAPTER XXVI.—ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS.

§ 234. This list contains all common verbs of the third conjugation, together with irregular verbs, and those verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations which form their perfect and supine differently from *āmō*, *mōnēō*, and *audiō* respectively; except—

(a) Inceptive verbs formed from simple verbs which are in use (§ 284), the perfect and supine of these, if they exist, being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb;

(b) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any) in the perfect, *e.g.*—

	Pres. Indic.	Infīn.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Simple verb :	<i>duc-ō</i>	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>dux-i</i>	<i>duct-um</i>	<i>lead</i>
Compound verb :	<i>abduc-ō</i>	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>abdux-i</i>	<i>abduct-um</i>	<i>lead away</i>
Simple verb :	<i>pell-ō</i>	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>pēpūl-i</i>	<i>puls-um</i>	<i>drive</i>
Compound verb :	<i>impell-ō</i>	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>impūl-i</i>	<i>impulsum</i>	<i>drive on</i>

But one compound at least is given of verbs which when compounded change in form or retain the reduplication in the perfect. The perfect and supine of verbs which are only slightly modified in composition, *e.g.* *occidō*, *I kill* (from *ōb* and *caedō*), must be ascertained by reference to the simple verb; but compound verbs such as *surgō*, *I arise* (compounded of *sūb* and *rēgō*), of which the elements cannot readily be seen, are given in alphabetical order as well as under the simple verb. Compound verbs of which the simple forms are not in use, *e.g.* *abnūō*, *I refuse*, are given in alphabetical order.

For the changes undergone by prepositions in composition, see § 292; for vowel change in compound verbs, see § 293.

Present Indic.	Infīn.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>abnū-ō</i>	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>abnū-i</i>	<i>abnūt-um</i>	<i>refuse</i>
<i>ābōl-ō</i>	<i>ērē</i>	<i>ābōlēv-i</i>	<i>ābōlit-um</i>	<i>abolish</i>
<i>accend-ō</i>	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>accend-i</i>	<i>accens-um</i>	<i>kindle</i>
<i>accumb-ō</i>	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>accūbū i</i>	<i>accūbit-um</i>	<i>recline at table</i>
<i>ācū-ō</i>	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>ācū-i</i>	<i>ācūt-um</i>	<i>sharpen</i>
<i>ādīpisc-ōr</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>ādēpt-ūs sum</i>		<i>obtain</i>
<i>ādōlesc-ō</i> (§ 177)	<i>-ērē</i>	<i>ādōlēv-i</i>	<i>ādult-um</i>	<i>grow up</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
afflig-ō	ērē	afflix-ī	afflict-um	<i>strike against</i>
āg-ō	-ērē	ēg-ī	act-um	<i>drive</i>
Compounds as				
ābig-ō	-ērē	ābēg-ī	ābact-um	<i>drive away</i>
Except				
circūmag-ō	-ērē	circūmēg-ī	circūmact-um	<i>drive around</i>
cōg-ō	-ērē	cōēg-ī	cōact-um	<i>drive together,</i> <i>compel</i>
dēg-ō	-ērē	dēg-ī	—	<i>pass (time)</i>
pērāg-ō	-ērē	pērēg-ī	pūract-um	<i>accomplish</i>
alg-ō	-ērē	als-ī	—	<i>feel cold</i>
allīc-īō	-ērē	allex-ī	allect-um	<i>attract</i>
āl-ō	-ērē	ālū-ī	alt-um	<i>nourish</i>
āmīc-īō	-īrē	{ āmīcū-ī } { āmīx-ī }	āmīct-um	<i>clothe</i>
amplect-ōr	-ī	amplex-ūs sum		<i>embrace</i>
annū-ō	-ērē	annū-ī	annūt-um	<i>assent</i>
āpēr-īō	-īrē	āpērū-ī	āpert-um	<i>uncover, open</i>
āpisc-ōr	-ī	apt-ūs sum		<i>obtain</i>
Compound :				
ādīpisc-ōr	-ī	ādept-ūs sum		<i>obtain</i>
arcess-ō <i>or</i> arcess-ō	-ērē	arcessiv-ī	arcessit-um	<i>send for</i>
ard-ō	-ērē	ars-ī	ars-um	<i>be on fire</i>
argū-ō	-ērē	argū-ī	argūt-um	<i>accuse</i>
assent-īōr	-īrē	assens-ūs sum		<i>agree</i>
aud-ēō (§§176, 200)	-ērē	aus-ūs sum		<i>dare</i>
aug-ēō	-ērē	aux-ī	auct-um	<i>augment</i>
bīb-ō	-ērē	bīb-ī	—	<i>drink</i>
cād-ō	-ērē	cēcīd-ī	cās-um	<i>fall</i>
Compounds as				
concīd-ō	-ērē	concīd-ī	—	<i>fall</i>
Supine stem in				
occīd-ō	-ērē	occīd-ī	occās-um	<i>fall, set</i>
reccīd-ō	-ērē	reccīd-ī	recās-um	<i>fall back</i>
caed-ō	-ērē	cēcīd-ī	caes-um	<i>cut</i>
Compounds as				
occīd-ō	-ērē	occīd-ī	occīs-um	<i>kill</i>
cān-ō	-ērē	cēcīn-ī	cant-um	<i>sing</i>
Compounds as				
praecīn-ō	-ērē	praecīnū-ī	praecent-um	<i>sing before</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
cāpess-ō	-cāřē	cāpessiv-ī	cāpessit-um	<i>take in hand</i>
cāp-iō	-cāřē	cāp-ī	capt-um	<i>take</i>
Compounds as				
accip-iō	-cāřē	accēp-ī	accept-um	<i>receive</i>
carp-ō	-cāřē	carps-ī	carpt-um	<i>pluck</i>
Compounds as				
dēcerp-ō	-cāřē	dēcerps-	dēcerpt-um	<i>pluck off</i>
cāv-ēō	-cāřē	cāv-ī	cant-um	<i>beware of</i>
cēd-ō	-cāřē	cess-ī	cess-um	<i>yield</i>
cens-ēō	-cāřē	censū-ī	cens-um	<i>count</i>
cern-ō	-cāřē	crēv-ī	crēt-um	<i>discern</i>
cī-ēō (§ 199)	-cāřē	cīv-ī	cīt-um	<i>arouse</i>
cing-ō	-cāřē	cinx-ī	cinct-um	<i>gird</i>
claud-ō	-cāřē	claus-ī	claus-um	<i>shut</i>
Compounds as				
conclūd-ō	-cāřē	conclūs-ī	conclūs-um	<i>confin</i>
coep-iō {pres. not	-cāřē	coep-ī (§ 228)	coept-um	<i>begin</i>
classical)}	-cāřē	cōēg-ī	cōact-um	<i>drive together</i>
cōg-ō	-cāřē			<i>compel</i>
cōl-ō	-cāřē	cōlū-ī	cult-um	<i>cultivate</i>
combūr-ō	-cāřē	combuss-ī	combust-um	<i>burn up</i>
commīnisc-ōr	-ī	comment-ūs sum	compt-um	<i>devise</i>
cōm-ō	-cāřē	comps-ī	compt-um	<i>deck</i>
compēr-iō	-īrē	compēr-ī	compert-um	<i>ascertain</i>
compesc-ō	-cāřē	compescū-ī	—	<i>check</i>
complect-ōr	-ī	complex-ūs sum	—	<i>embrace</i>
compl-ēō	-cāřē	complēv-ī	complēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
concūt-iō	-cāřē	concuss-ī	concuss-um	<i>shake</i>
confīg-ō	-cāřē	conflix-ī	conflict-um	<i>contend</i>
congrū-ō	-cāřē	congrū-ī	—	<i>agree</i>
consūl-ō	-cāřē	consūlū-ī	consult-um	<i>consult</i>
cōqu-ō	-cāřē	cox-ī	coct-um	<i>cook</i>
crēd-ō	-cāřē	crēdīd-ī	crēdit-um	<i>trust</i>
crēp-ō	-ārē	crēpū-ī	crēpīt-um	<i>rattle</i>
cresc-ō (§ 177)	-cāřē	crēv-ī	crēt-um	<i>grow</i>
cūb-ō	-ārē	cūbū-ī	cūbit-um	<i>lie down</i>
cūp-iō	-cāřē	cūpiv-ī	cūpit-um	<i>desire</i>
cūrr-ō	-cāřē	cūcurr-ī	curs-um	<i>run</i>
Compounds as				
accurr-ō	-cāřē	{accūcurr-ī or accurr-ī}	accurs-um	<i>run to</i>

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect.	Supine.	
dēcūt-īō	-ērē	dēcuss-ī	dēcuss-um	<i>shake off</i>
dēfend-ō	-ērē	dēfend-ī	dēfens-um	<i>defend</i>
dēfētisc-ūr	-ī	dēfess-ūs sum		<i>grow weary</i>
dēl-ēō	-ērē	dēlēs-ī	dēlēt-um	<i>abolish</i>
dēm-ō	-ērē	dēmps-ī	dēmt-um	<i>take off</i>
dīc-ō (§ 203)	-ērē	dix-ī	dīct-um	<i>say</i>
dilū-ō	-ērē	dilū-ī	dilūt-um	<i>wash out</i>
disc-ō	-ērē	dīdic-ī	—	<i>learn</i>
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ērē	addīdic-ī	—	<i>learn besides</i>
discūt-īō	-ērē	discuss-ī	discuss-um	<i>shatter</i>
distingu-ō	-ērē	distinx-ī	distinct-um	<i>distinguish</i>
dīvid-ō	-ērē	divis-ī	divis-um	<i>divide</i>
d-ō (§§ 222, 223)	-ērē	dēd-ī	dāt-um	<i>give</i>
Comp. as ēd-ō *	-ērē	ēdīd-ī	ēdīt-um	<i>give out</i>
Except				
circumd-ō (§224)	-ērē	circumdēd-ī	circumdāt-um	<i>put round</i>
dōc-ēō	-ērē	dōcū-ī	doct-um	<i>teach</i>
dōm-ō	-ārē	dōmū-ī	dōmīt-um	<i>tame</i>
dūc-ō (§ 203)	-ērē	dūx-ī	dūct-um	<i>lead</i>
ēd-ō (§ 220)	-ērē	ēd-ī	ēs-um	<i>eat</i>
ēlic-īō	-ērē	ēlicū-ī	ēlicīt-um	<i>lure forth</i>
ēm-ō	-ērē	ēm-ī	empt-um	<i>buy</i>
Compounds (see also				
p. 123) as ādīm-ō	-ērē	ādēm-ī	ādēmt-um	<i>take away</i>
Except cōēm-ō	-ērē	cōēm-ī	cōēmt-um	<i>buy up</i>
ēnīc-ō	-ārē	ēnīcū-ī	ēnect-um	<i>wear to death</i>
ēō (§ 214)	-ērē	iv-ī or ī-ī	īt-um	<i>go</i>
excūd-ō	-ērē	excūd-ī	excūs-um	<i>hammer out</i>
excūt-īō	-ērē	excuss-ī	excuss-um	<i>shake out</i>
expergisc-ūr	-ī	experrect-ūs sum		<i>awake oneself</i>
* expēr-īōr	-īrī	expert-ūs sum		<i>try</i>
expl-ēō	-ērē	explēv-ī	explēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
explōd-ō	-ērē	explōs-ī	explōs-um	<i>hiss off</i>
extingu-ō	-ērē	extinx-ī	extinct-um	<i>extinguish</i>
extū-ō	-ērē	extū-ī	extūt-um	<i>strip off</i>

* Some of these are compounds of *dō*, *I give*, others of a verb *-dō*, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic. *	Infñ.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fācess-ō	-črē	fācess-i	fācessit-um	<i>accomplish</i>
fāc-iō (§ 200, 203)	-črē	fēc-i	fact-um	<i>make, do</i>
Comp. (§ 219) as				
sātisfāc-iō	-črē	sātisfēc-i	sātisfact-um	<i>satisfy</i>
„ with preps. as				
affic-iō	-črē	affēc-i	affect-um	<i>affect</i>
fall-ō	-črē	fēfell-i	fals-um	<i>deceive</i>
Comp.: rēfell-ō	-črē	rēfell-i	—	<i>disprove</i>
farc-iō	-irē	fars-i	fart-um	<i>stuff</i>
Compounds as				
rēferc-iō	-irē	rēfers-i	rēfert-um	<i>stuff</i>
fāt-čōr	-črē	fass-ūs sum	•	<i>acknowledge</i>
Compounds as				
confīt-čōr	-črē	confess-ūs sum		<i>confess</i>
fāv-čō	-črē	fāv-i	faut-um	<i>be favourable</i>
fēr-iō	-irē	{ (ic-i)	(ict-um)	{ <i>strikes</i>
		{ (percuss-i)	(percuss-um)	
fērō (§ 212)	ferrē	(tūl-i)	(lāt-um)	<i>bear</i>
Comp. with				
āb : aufer-ō	-rē	abstūl-i	ablāt-um	<i>bear away</i>
ād : affēr-ō	-rē	attūl-i	allāt-um	<i>bring</i>
cum : confēr-ō	-rē	contūl-i	collāt-um	<i>bring together</i>
dis : differ-ō	-rē	distūl-i	dilāt-um	<i>separate</i>
ex : effēr-ō	-rē	extūl-i	ēlāt-um	<i>bring out</i>
in : infēr-ō	-rē	intūl-i	illāt-um	<i>bring in</i>
ōb : offer-ō	-rē	obtūl-i	oblāt-um	<i>offer</i>
rē : rēfēr-ō	-rē	rettūl-i (§ 294)	rēlāt-um	<i>bear back</i>
rē : rēfer-t	-rē	rētūl-it	—	<i>concern</i>
sūb : suffēr-ō	-rē	sustūl-i	sublāt-um	<i>endure</i>
Other preps. un-				
changed, as in				
dēfēr-ō	-rē	dētūl-i	dēlāt-um	<i>bear down</i>
ferv-čō (§ 199)	-črē	{ ferbū-i	{ —	<i>be boiling</i>
		{ ferv-i		
fīd-ō (§ 176)	črē	fīs-ūs sum		<i>have confidence</i>
fīg-ō	črē	fīx-i	fīx-um	<i>fix</i>
fīnd-ō	-črē	fīd-i	fīss-um	<i>cleave</i>
fīng-ō	-črē	fīnx-i	fīct-um	<i>form</i>
fīō (§ 218)	fīčrē	(fact-ūs sum)		<i>become</i>
fī-čō	-črē	fīčv-i	fīčt-um	<i>weep</i>
fīect-ō	-črē	fīex-ī	fīex-um	<i>bend</i>

Present Indic.	Infio.	Perfect.	Supina.	
<i>flū-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>flux-i</i>	<i>flux-um</i>	<i>now</i>
<i>fol-iō</i>	-ēre	<i>fōd-i</i>	<i>foss-um</i>	<i>dig</i>
<i>fōv-ēō</i>	-ēre	<i>fōv-i</i>	<i>fōt-um</i>	<i>cherish</i>
<i>frang-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>frēg-i</i>	<i>fract-um</i>	<i>break</i>
Compounds as				
<i>confring-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>confrēg-i</i>	<i>contract-um</i>	<i>break</i>
<i>frēm-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>frēmū-i</i>	<i>frēmīt-um</i>	<i>roar</i>
<i>fric-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>fricū-i</i>	{ <i>frict-um</i> or <i>fricāt-um</i> }	<i>rub</i>
<i>frīg-ēō</i>	-ēre	<i>frix-i</i>	—	<i>be cold</i>
<i>frū-ōr</i> (§§ 204, 205)	-i	<i>fruct-ūs</i> sum		<i>enjoy oneself</i>
<i>fūg-iō</i>	-ēre	<i>fūg-i</i>	<i>fūgīt-um</i>	<i>fly</i>
<i>fulc-iō</i>	-īre	<i>fuls-i</i>	<i>fult-um</i>	<i>prop</i>
<i>fulg-ēō</i> (§ 199)	-ēre	<i>fuls-i</i>	—	<i>gleam</i>
<i>fund-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>fūd-i</i>	<i>fūs-um</i>	<i>pour</i>
<i>fung-ōr</i> (§ 205)	-i	<i>funct-ūs</i> sum		<i>busy oneself</i>
<i>gaud-ēō</i> (§ 176)	-ēre	<i>gāvis-ūs</i> sum		<i>rejoice</i>
<i>gēm-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>gēmū-i</i>	<i>gēmīt-um</i>	<i>groan</i>
<i>gēr-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>gess-i</i>	<i>gest-um</i>	<i>carry</i>
<i>gign-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>gēnū-i</i>	<i>gēnīt-um</i>	<i>produce</i>
<i>grād-iōr</i>	-i	<i>gress-ūs</i> sum		<i>step</i>
Compounds as				
<i>aggrēd-iōr</i>	-i	<i>aggress-ūs</i> sum		<i>attack</i>
<i>haer-ēō</i>	-ēre	<i>haes-i</i>	<i>haes-um</i>	<i>stick</i>
<i>haur-iō</i> (§ 204)	-īre	<i>haus-i</i>	<i>haust-um</i>	<i>draw</i>
<i>iāc-iō</i>	-ēre	<i>iēc-i</i>	<i>iact-um</i>	<i>throw</i>
Compounds as				
<i>abiēc-iō</i> *	-ēre	<i>abiēc-i</i>	<i>abieci-um</i>	<i>throw away</i>
<i>ignosc-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>ignōv-i</i>	<i>ignōt-um</i>	<i>overlook</i>
<i>illīc-iō</i>	-ēre	<i>illex-i</i>	<i>illect-um</i>	<i>entice</i>
<i>imbū-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>imbū-i</i>	<i>imbūt-um</i>	<i>steep</i>
<i>impl-ēō</i>	-ēre	<i>implēv-i</i>	<i>implēt-um</i>	<i>fill</i>
<i>incend-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>incend-i</i>	<i>incens-um</i>	<i>set on fire</i>
<i>incess-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>incessiv-i</i>	—	<i>assault</i>
<i>incumb-ō</i>	-ēre	<i>incubū-i</i>	<i>incubūt-um</i>	<i>lean</i>
<i>incūt-iō</i>	-ēre	<i>ineuss-i</i>	<i>ineuss-um</i>	<i>strike into</i>
<i>indulg-ēō</i>	-ēre	<i>induls-i</i>	—	<i>be indulgent</i>

* In compounds of *iāc-iō* the consonantal *i* is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the *i* is nevertheless counted long by position (§ 636, 3).

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect.	Supine.	
indŭ-ō	-ērē	indŭ-ī	indŭt-um	<i>put on</i>
inflīg-ō	-ērē	inflīx-ī	inflīct-um	<i>strike on</i>
irasc-ōr	-ī	irāt-ūs sum		<i>get angry</i>
iŭb-ō	-ērē	iuss-ī	iuss-um	<i>command</i>
iung-ō	-ērē	iunx-ī	iunct-um	<i>join</i>
iŭv-ō (§ 204)	-ārē	iŭv-ī	iŭt-um	<i>help, delight</i>
lāb-ōr	-ī	laps-ūs sum		<i>slide</i>
lācess-ō	-ērē	lācessiv-ī	lācessit-um	<i>provoke</i>
laed-ō	-ērē	laes-ī	laes-um	<i>hurt</i>
Compounds as				
collid-ō	-ērē	collis-ī	collis-um	<i>clash</i>
lāv-ō (§ 199)	-ārē	lāv-ī	lāvāt-um { perf. { laut-ūs part. { lōt-ūs }	<i>wash</i>
lēg-ō	-ērē	lēg-ī	lect-um	<i>pick, read</i>
Compounds as				
collīg-ō	-ērē	collēg-ī	collect-um	<i>collect</i>
But e remains in				
perlēg-ō	-ērē	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	<i>read through</i>
rēlēg-ō	-ērē	rēlēg-ī	rēlect-um	<i>again go over</i>
Perf. differs in				
dīlīg-ō	-ērē	dīlex-ī	dīlect-um	<i>love</i>
intellēg-ō	-ērē	intellex-ī	intellect-um	<i>understand</i>
neglēg-ō	-ērē	neglex-ī	neglect-um	<i>neglect</i>
līn-ō	-ērē	līv-ī	līt-um	<i>besmear</i>
N.B.—Comp.:				
oblīn-ō	-ērē	oblīv-ī	oblīt-um	<i>besmear</i>
linqu-ō	-ērē	liqu-ī	—	<i>leave</i>
Compounds as				
rēlinqu-ō	-ērē	rēliqu-ī	rēlict-um	<i>leave</i>
lōqu-ōr	-ī	lōcūt-ūs sum		<i>speak</i>
lūc-ō	-ērē	lux-ī	—	<i>shine</i>
lūd-ō	-ērē	lūs-ī	lūs-um	<i>play</i>
lūg-ō	-ērē	lux-ī	luct-um	<i>mourn for</i>
lū-ō	-ērē	lū-ī	—	<i>pay</i>
mālō (§ 211)	mallē	mālū-ī	—	<i>will rather</i>
mand-ō	-ērē	mand-ī	mans-um	<i>chew</i>
mān-ō	-ērē	mans-ī	mans-um	<i>remain</i>
merg-ō	-ērē	mers-ī	mers-um	<i>dip</i>
mēt-ōr	-īrī	mēns-ūs sum		<i>measure</i>

LIST OF VERBS.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
mēt-ō	-ērē	_____	mess-um	<i>reap</i>
mētū-ō	-ērē	mētū-ī	_____	<i>fear</i>
mīc-ō	-ārē	mīcū-ī	_____	<i>vibrate</i>
mīnū-ō	-ērē	mīnū-ī	mīnūt-um	<i>lessen</i>
misc-ēō	-ērē	miscū-ī	mixt-um	<i>mix</i>
mitt-ō	-ērē	mīs-ī	miss-um	<i>send</i>
mord-ēō	-ērē	mōmord ī	mors-um	<i>bite</i>
mōr-iōr (§ 204)	-ī	mortū-ūs sum	mōt-um	<i>die</i>
mōv-ēō	-ērē	mōv-ī	mōt-um	<i>set in motion</i>
mulc-ēō	-ērē	muls-ī	muls-um	<i>caress</i>
mulg-ēō	-ērē	muls-ī	{ mulct-um } { muls-um }	<i>milk</i>
nancisc-ōr	-ī	nact-ūs sum	_____	<i>obtain</i>
nasc-ōr	-ī	nāt-ūs sum	_____	<i>be born</i>
nect-ō	-ērē	nex-ī	nex-um	<i>bind</i>
n-ēō	-ērē	nēv-ī	nēt-um	<i>spin</i>
nēqu-ēō (like { quēō, § 217) }	-īrē	{ nēquīv-ī or } { nēquī-ī }	nēquīt-um	<i>be unable</i>
ning-īt or ningu-īt	-ērē	ninx-īt	_____	<i>snow</i>
nīt-ōr	-ī	{ nīs-ūs sum, I endeavoured } { nix-ūs sum, I leaned }	_____	<i>endeavour,</i> <i>lean</i>
nōlō (§ 211)	nollē	nōlū-ī	nōt-um	<i>be unwilling</i>
nosc-ō	-ērē	nōv-ī	nōt-um	<i>get to know</i>
Comp. (noscō				
has lost an				
initial g) :				
agnosc-ō	-ērē	agnōv-ī	agnīt-um	<i>recognise</i>
cognosc-ō	-ērē	cognōv-ī	cognīt-um	<i>ascertain</i>
ignosc-ō	-ērē	ignōv-ī	ignōt-um	<i>overlook</i>
nūb-ō (§ 177)	-ērē	nups-ī	nupt-um	<i>put on the</i> <i>bridal veil, i.e.</i> <i>be married</i>
oblivisc-ōr	-ī	oblīt ūs sum	_____	<i>forget</i>
obsölēsc-ō	-ērē	obsölēv-ī	obsölēt-um	<i>decay</i>
occūl-ō	-ērē	occūlū-ī	occult-um	<i>hide</i>
occumb-ō	-ērē	occūbū-ī	occubit-um	<i>sink</i>
offend-ō	-ērē	offend-ī	offens-um	<i>stumble</i>
ōpēr-īō	-īrē	ōpērū-ī	ōpert-um	<i>cover</i>
oppēr-iōr	-īrī	{ oppert-ūs } { opperīt-ūs }	{ } sum	<i>wait</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ord-iōr	-irī	ors-ūs sum		<i>begin</i>
ōr-iōr (§§ 192, 204)	-irī	ort-ūs sum		<i>rise</i>
pācisc-ōr	-ī	pact-ūs sum		<i>bargain</i>
pand-ō	-ērē	pand-ī	pass-um	<i>spread open</i>
pang-ō	-ērē	pēg-ī or pēpīg-ī	pact-um	<i>fasten</i>
Compound:				
comping-ō	-ērē	compēg-ī	compact-um	<i>join together</i>
parc-ō (§ 204)	-ērē	pēpere-ī	(pars-ūrūs)	<i>be sparing</i>
pār-iō	-ērē	pēpēr-ī	part-um	<i>produce</i>
Compounds:				
compēr-iō	-irē	compēr-ī	compert-um	<i>ascertain</i>
rēpēr-iō	-irē	reppēr-ī	repert-um	<i>find</i>
pasc-ō	-ērē	pāv-ī	past-um	<i>pasture</i>
pāt-iōr	-ī	pass-ūs sum		<i>suffer</i>
Compound:				
perpēt-iōr	-ī	perpess-ūs sum		<i>endure</i>
pāv-ō	-ērē	pāv-ī	—	<i>tremble</i>
pellō-iō	-ērē	pellex-ī	pellec-um	<i>entice</i>
pell-ō	-ērē	pēpūl-ī	puls-um	<i>drive</i>
pend-ō	-ērē	pēpend-ī	pens-um	<i>be suspended</i>
pend-ō	-ērē	pēpend-ī	—	<i>weigh out, pa-</i>
percell-ō	-ērē	percūl-ī	perculs-um	<i>overturn</i>
percut-iō	-ērē	percuss-ī	percuſs-um	<i>strike through</i>
perd-ō	-ērē	perdīd-ī	perdit-um	<i>destroy</i>
perg-ō	-ērē	perrex-ī	perrect-um	<i>continue</i>
pēt-ō (§ 201)	-ērē	pētīv-ī or pētī-ī	pētīt-um	<i>seek</i>
ping-ō	-ērē	pinx-ī	pict-um	<i>paint</i>
plang-ō	-ērē	planx-ī	planct-um	<i>beat</i>
plaud-ō	-ērē	plaus-ī	plaus-um	<i>clap</i>
Comp.: explōd-ō	-ērē	explōs-ī	explōs-um	<i>hiss off</i>
plīc-ō	-ārē	{ plicāv-ī plicū-ī	{ plicāt-um plicīt-um }	<i>fold</i>
plū-īt	-ērē	plū-īt or plāv-īt	—	<i>rain</i>
pollū-ō	-ērē	pollū-ī	pollūt-um	<i>defile</i>
pōn-ō	-ērē	pōsū-ī	pōsīt-um	<i>place</i>
posc-ō	-ērē	pōposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
Compounds as				
dēposc-ō	-ērē	dēpōposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
possīd-ō	-ērē	possēd-ī	possess-um	<i>possess</i>
possum (§ 210)	possē	pōtū-ī	—	<i>be able</i>

Present Indic.	Infan.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pōt-ō (§ 177)	-ārē	pōtāv-ī	{ pōt-um <i>or</i> pōtāt-um }	<i>drink</i>
prand-ēs (§ 177)	-ārē	prand-ī	prans-um	<i>lunch</i>
prēhend-ō	-ērē	prēhend-ī	prēhens-um	<i>seize</i>
prēm-ō	-ērē	press-ī	press-um	<i>press</i>
Compounds as				
comprim-ō	-ērē	compress-ī	compress-um	<i>restrain</i>
prēcumb-ō	-ērē	prēcūbū-ī	prēcūbit-um	<i>bend down</i>
prōfici-sc-ōr	-ī	prōfect-ūs sum		<i>set out</i>
prōm-ō	-ērē	promps-ī	prompt-um	<i>bring out</i>
pung-ō	-ērē	pūpūg-ī	punct-um	<i>prick</i>
Compounds as				
compung-ō	-ērē	compunx-ī	compunct-um	<i>sting</i>
quaer-ō	-ērē	quaesiv-ī	quaesit-um	<i>seek</i>
Compounds as				
conquīr-ō	-ērē	conquīsiv-ī	conquīsīt-um	<i>seek out</i>
quāt-īō	-ērē	—	quass-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>
Compounds as				
concūt-īō	-ērē	concuss-ī	concuss-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>
qu-ēs (§ 217)	-ire	quīv-ī or quī-ī	quīt-um	<i>be able</i>
quēr-ōr	-ī	quest-ūs sum		<i>complain</i>
quiesc-ō	-ērē	quīēv-ī	quīēt-um	<i>rest</i>
rād-ō	-ārē	rās-ī	rās-um	<i>scrape</i>
rāp-īō	-ērē	rāpū-ī	rapt-um	<i>seize</i>
Compounds as				
abrīp-īō	-ērē	abrīpū-ī	abrept-um	<i>carry off</i>
rēcumb-ō	-ārē	rēcūbū-ī	rēcūbit-um	<i>recline</i>
rēfer-t (§ 213)	-rē	rētūl-īt	—	<i>concern</i>
rēg-ō	-ērē	rex-ī	rect-um	<i>rule</i>
Compounds as				
corrīg-ō	-ērē	correx-ī	correct-um	<i>correct</i>
Except perg-ō	-ērē	perrex-ī	perrect-um	<i>continue</i>
surg-ō	-ērē	surrex-ī	surrect-um	<i>rise</i>
r-ēōr	-ērī	rāt-ūs sum		<i>think</i>
rēp-ō	-ārē	reps-ī	rept-um	<i>creep</i>
rēpēr-īō	-irē	reppēr-ī (§ 294)	rēpert-um	<i>find</i>
rēpl-ēs	-ērē	rēplēv-ī	rēplēt-um	<i>refill</i>
restingu-ō	-ārē	restinx-ī	restinct-um	<i>extinguish</i>
rīd-ēs	-ērē	rīs-ī	rīs-um	<i>laugh</i>
rōd-ō	-ārē	rōs-ī	rōs-um	<i>gnaw</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
rump-ō	-ērē	rūp-i	rupt-um	<i>break</i>
rū-ō	-ērē	rū-i	rūt-um	<i>rush down</i>
Comp. as dirū-ō	-ērē	dirū-i	dirūt-um	<i>demolish</i>
saep-iō	-irē	saeps-i	saepit-um	<i>fence in</i>
sāl-iō	-irē	sālū-i	salt-um	<i>leap</i>
Compounds as				
dēsīl-iō	-irē	dēsīlū-i	dēsult-um	<i>leap down</i>
sanc-iō	-irē	sanx-i	{ sanct-um or sanctit-um }	<i>ratify</i>
sāp-iō	-ērē	sāpiv-i	—	<i>have taste, know</i>
sarc-iō	-irē	sars-i	sart-um	<i>patch</i>
scalp-ō	-ērē	scalps-i	scalpt-um	<i>carve</i>
scand-ō	-ērē	scand-i	scans-um	<i>climb</i>
Compounds as				
ascend-ō	-ērē	ascend-i	ascens-um	<i>climb up</i>
scind-ō	-ērē	scid-i	sciss-um	<i>rend</i>
scisc-ō	-ērē	sciv-i	scit-um	<i>enact</i>
scrib-ō	-ērē	scrips-i	script-um	<i>write</i>
sculp-ō	-ērē	sculps-i	sculpt-um	<i>carve</i>
sēc-ō	-ārē	sēcū-i	sect-um	<i>cut</i>
sēd-ō	-ērē	sēd-i	sess-um	<i>sit</i>
Compounds as				
assid-ēō	-ērē	assēd-i	assess-um	<i>sit by</i>
Except				
circumsēd-ēō	-ērē	circumsēd-i	circumsess-um	<i>besiege</i>
sūpersēd-ēō	-ērē	sūpersēd-i	sūpersess-um	<i>forbear</i>
sent-iō	-irē	sens-i	sens-um	<i>feel</i>
sēpēl-iō	-irē	sēpēlīv-i	sēpult-um	<i>bury</i>
sēqu-ūr	-i	sēcūt-ūs sum		<i>follow</i>
sēr-ō	-ērē	sēv-i	sāt-um	<i>sow</i>
Comp. as insēr-ō	-ērē	insēv-i	insīt-um*	<i>ingraft</i>
sēr-ō	-ērē	—	sert-um	<i>join</i>
Comp. as consēr-ō	-ērē	consērū-i	consert-um	<i>join</i>
serp-ō	-ērē	serps-i	serpt-um	<i>crawl</i>
sīd-ō	-ērē	sīd-i	—	<i>settle down</i>
Compounds as				
consid-ō	-ērē	consēd-i	consess-um	<i>settle down</i>
sīn-ō	-ērē	siv-i	sīt-um	<i>allow</i>
sist-ō	-ērē	stīt-i	stāt-um	<i>make to stand</i>
Compounds as				
consist-ō	-ērē	constīt-i	constit-um	<i>stand still</i>

LIST OF VERBS.

Perfect Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect.	Supine.	
Except			—	<i>stand around</i>
circumsist-ō	-ērē	circumstēt-ī	—	<i>be accustomed</i>
sōl-ēō (§ 176)	-ērē	sōlīt-ūs sum	sōlūt-um	<i>loose</i>
solv-ō	-ērē	solv-ī	sōnīt-um	<i>sound</i>
sōn-ō (§ 204)	-ārē	sōnū-ī	spars-um	<i>scatter</i>
sparg-ō	-ērē	spars-ī		
Compounds as			aspers-um	<i>sprinkle</i>
asperg-ō	-ērē	aspers-ī	—	<i>look</i>
spic-īō { (in old { Lat. only) }	-ērē	spex-ī		
Compounds as			aspect-um	<i>look at</i>
aspic-īō	-ērē	aspe-ī	sprēt-um	<i>despise</i>
spern-ō	-ērē	sprēv-ī	spons-um	<i>promise</i>
spond-ēō	-ērē	spōpond-ī	stātūt-um	<i>settle</i>
stātū-ō	-ērē	stātū-ī		
Compounds as			constitūt-um	<i>settle</i>
constitū-ō	-ērē	constitū-ī	strāt-um	<i>spread</i>
stern-ō	-ērē	strāv-ī	stāt-um	<i>stand</i>
st-ō	-ārē	stēt-ī		
Compounds (few having sup.) as			{ praestāt-um }	<i>excel</i>
praest-ō	-ārē	praestīt-ī	{ praestīt-um }	
Except			—	<i>stand around</i>
circumst-ō	ārē	circumstēt-ī	—	<i>resound</i>
strēp-ō	-ērē	strēpū-ī	—	<i>creak</i>
strid-ēō	-ērē	strid-ī		
strid-ō	-ērē	strinx-ī	strict-um	<i>strip</i>
string-ō	-ērē	strux-ī	struct-um	<i>pile</i>
strū-ō	-ērē	suās-ī	suās-um	<i>recommend</i>
suād-ēō (§ 8)	-ērē	succend-ī	succens-um	<i>kindle below</i>
succend-ō	-ērē	succūb-ī	succūbīt-um	<i>submit</i>
succumb-ō	-ērē	succūbū-ī	suēt-um	<i>become accus-</i>
suesc-ō (§§ 8. 177)	-ērē	suēv-ī		<i>tomed</i>
			suct-um	<i>suck</i>
sūg-ō	-ērē	sux-ī	—	<i>be</i>
sum (§§ 134, 208)	essē	fū-ī		
So comp. except			—	<i>be absent</i>
absum	ābessē	āfū-ī (§ 209, n. 2)	—	<i>be able</i>
possum	possē	pōtū-ī (§ 210)	—	<i>be beneficial</i>
prōsum	prōdessē	prōfū-ī (§ 209, n. 1)	—	

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect.	Supine.	
sūm-ō	-ērē	sumps-ī	sumpt-um	<i>take up</i>
sū-ō	-ērē	sū-ī	sūt-um	<i>stitch</i>
suppl-ēō	-ērē	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
surg-ō	-ērē	surrex-ī	surrect-um	<i>arise</i>
taed-ēt (§ 232)	-ērē	(pertaesum est)		<i>weary</i>
tang-ō	-ērē	tētīg-ī	tact-um	<i>touch</i>
Compounds as				
attīg-ō	-ērē	attīg-ī	attact-um	<i>touch</i>
tēg-ō	-ērē	tex-ī	tect-um	<i>cover</i>
temn-ō	-ērē	temps-ī	tempt-um	<i>despise</i>
tend-ō	-ērē	tētend-ī	tent-um	<i>stretch</i>
tēn-ēō	-ērē	tēnū-ī	tēt-um	<i>hold</i>
Compounds as				
rētīn-ēō	-ērē	rētīnū-ī	rētent-um	<i>hold back</i>
terg-ō	-ērē	ters-ī	ters-um	<i>wipe</i>
tēr-ō	-ērē	triv-ī	trit-um	<i>rub</i>
tex-ō	-ērē	texū-ī	text-um	<i>weave</i>
ting-ō or tingu-ō	-ērē	tinx-ī	tinct-um	<i>steep</i>
toll-ō	-ērē	(sustul-ī)	(sublāt-um)	<i>raise</i>
tond-ēō	-ērē	tōtond-ī	tons-um	<i>clip</i>
tōn-ō	-ārē	tōnū-ī	tōnīt-um	<i>thunder</i>
torqu-ēō	-ērē	tors-ī	tort-um	<i>twist</i>
torr-ēō	-ērē	torrū-ī	tost-um	<i>scorch</i>
trāh-ō	-ērē	trax-ī	tract-um	<i>draw</i>
trēm-ō	-ērē	trēmū-ī	—	<i>tremble</i>
tribū-ō	-ērē	tribū-ī	tribūt-um	<i>assign</i>
trūd-ō	-ērē	trūs-ī	trūs-um	<i>thrust</i>
tund-ō	-ērē	tūtūd-ī	{ tuns-um } { tūs-um }	<i>beat</i>
ulcisc-ōr	-ī	ult-ūs sum		<i>take vengeance on, avenge</i>
ung-ō or ungu-ō	-ērē	unx-ī	unct-um	<i>anoint</i>
urg-ēō	-ērē	urs-ī	—	<i>press</i>
ūr-ō	-ērē	uss-ī	ust-um	<i>burn, inflame</i>
ūt-ōr (§ 205)	-ī	ūs-ūs sum		<i>make use</i>
vād-ō	-ērē	—	—	<i>go</i>
Comp. as ēvād-ō	-ērē	ēvās-ī	ēvās-um	<i>go forth</i>
vēh-ō	-ērē	vex-ī	vect-um	<i>carry</i>
vell-ō	-ērē	vell-ī	vuls-um	<i>pluck</i>
vend-ō	-ērē	vendid-ī	vendīt-um	<i>sell</i>
vēn-ēō (§ 215)	-īrē	vēnī-ī	vēnīt-um	<i>go on sale</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
vĕn-iō	-irĕ	vĕn-i	vent-um	<i>come</i>
verr-ā	-ĕrĕ	verr-i	vers-um	<i>swerp</i>
vert-ō	-ĕrĕ	vert-i	vers-um	<i>turn</i>
vid-ĕō	-ĕrĕ	vid-i	vis-um	<i>see</i>
vinc-iō	-irĕ	vinx-i	vinct-um	<i>bind</i>
vinc-ō	-ĕrĕ	vīc-i	vict-um	<i>conquer</i>
vīs-ō	-ĕrĕ	vīs-i	—	<i>visit</i>
vīv-ō	-ĕrĕ	vix-i	vict-um	<i>live</i>
vōlō (§ 211)	vellĕ	vōlū-i	—	<i>will</i>
Comp.: mālō	mallĕ	mālū-i	—	<i>will rather</i>
nōlō	nollĕ	nōlū-i	—	<i>be unwilling</i>
volv-ō	-ĕrĕ	volv-i	vōlūt-um	<i>roll</i>
vōm-ō	-ĕrĕ	vōmū-i	vōmīt-um	<i>vomit</i>
vōv-ĕō	-ĕrĕ	vōv-i	vōt-um	<i>vow</i>

NOTE.—A few verbs have no perfect or supine, and are used only in tenses formed from the present base, *e.g.* languĕō, *I am faint*. Neither these, nor the defective verbs given in §§ 225—229, are included in the above list.

CHAPTER XXVII.—ADVERBS.

§ 235. Adverbs may for convenience be arranged in three classes:—

I. Adverbs expressing

(a) Place, time, degree, etc.;

(b) Negation, interrogation, transition, etc.

II. Adverbs formed from pronominal roots; e.g. *quō*, *whither*, from the root of *quī*, *who*.

III. Adverbs formed from adjectives; e.g. *libērē*, *freely*, from *libēr*, *free*.

I. (a) ADVERBS OF PLACE, TIME, DEGREE, ETC.

The following are some of the commonest:—

§ 236.

PLACE.

circā, } *around*
circum, }
citrā, *on this side*
contrā, *opposite*
cōram, *face to face*
extrā, *outside*
infra, *below*
intrā, } *inside*
intūs, }
iuxtā, *close*
passim, *hither and thither*

pōnē, } *behind*
post, }
prōcūl, *far*
prōpē, *near*
subtēr, *beneath*
sūpēr, } *above*
sūprā, }
sursum, *upwards*
ultrā, *beyond*
versūs, *facing*

§ 237.

TIME.

antē, } *before*
antēā, }
cōtidīē, } *daily*
quōtidīē, }
crās, *to-morrow*
dēmum, *at length*
dīū, *long*
extemplo, *forthwith*
hērī, } *yesterday*
hērē, }
hōdīē, *to-day*
iam, *already*
iamdūdum, } *a long time*
iampridem, } *already*
intērēā, } *meanwhile*
intērim, }

interdum, *sometimes*
itērum, *again*
mānē, *in the morning*
mōdō, *just now*
mox, *soon*
nūpēr, *recently*
pārumpēr, *for a little while*
post, } *afterwards*
postēā, }
quondam, *formerly*
saepē, *often*
sempēr, *always*
simūl, *at the same time*
stātīm, *forthwith*
tandem, *at length*

§ 238.

MANNER, DEGREE, ETC.

<i>cen</i> , like as	<i>praesertim</i> , especially
<i>clam</i> , secretly	<i>prōpe</i> , nearly
<i>frustrā</i> , in vain	<i>quāsi</i> , as if
<i>mōdō</i> , only	<i>quōdā</i> , so far as
<i>nimis</i> or <i>nīmīum</i> } too much	<i>satis</i> (also used as an in-
<i>omnīnō</i> , altogether	declinable substantive } enough
<i>paenē</i> , almost	or adjective)
<i>pālam</i> , openly	<i>sēcūs</i> , otherwise
<i>pārum</i> (also used as an indeclinable neuter substantive) } too little	<i>tamquam</i> or <i>tanquam</i> , } as it were
<i>pērinde</i> (usually followed by <i>ac</i> , exactly (as) atque or ūt) } exactly (as)	<i>ultrō</i> , further
	<i>usquē</i> , all the way, even
	<i>vellūt</i> or <i>vellūtī</i> , } as, for example
	<i>vix</i> , scarcely.

§ 239. NEGATION, INTERROGATION, TRANSITION, ETC.

Negation.

nōn, not
haud (rare with verbs), not
nē (in prohibitions), not
nē . . . quidem, not even

Interrogation.

-nē (enclitic) introduces a question
nonnē introduces a question expecting an affirmative answer
num introduces a question expecting a negative answer
quārē or *cūr*, why?
quīn, why not?
ūtrum . . . an, whether . . . or
ūtrum . . . {annōn} whether . . .
{necnē} or not

Transition, etc.

contrā, on the other hand
equidem, indeed
ergō,
idcirco,
idēō,
igitur (seldom placed first) } therefore
item, likewise
nē or *nae* (with pronouns), indeed
praetērā, besides
proptērā, therefore
quidem, indeed
rursūs, again
saltem, at least
utinam introduces a wish

Obs. 1. The term enclitic applied to *-nē* and similar particles (cp. § 261, *Obs. 1*) implies that they throw their accent back on to the words to which they are appended; e.g. *vidēs*, you see; *vidēs-nē*, do you see?

Obs. 2. When *-nē* is appended to a word ending in *s* (as above to *vidēs*), the vowel preceding the *s* is sometimes shortened and the *s* and *e* dropped; e.g. *vidēn* = *vidēs-nē*, do you see? *audīn* = *audīs-nē*, do you hear? Such shortened forms are accentuated on the last syllable.

§ 240. DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.	INDIVIDUAL.
hic, here iste, near you ille, there ibi, there ibidem, in the same place Place where.	ubi, where ubique, wherever	ubi, where? ubiam, where, pray?	ubique, everywhere utrobique, in both places ubivis, where you will alicubi, } somewhere usquam (with neg.), anywhere nusquam, nowhere nibi, elsewhere
hic, hither iste, to where you are ille, thither eo, thither eodem, to the same place Place whither.	quo, whither quocumque, } whithersoever quoque,	quod, whither? quodiam, whither, pray?	utroque, to both places quolibet, whither you please quovis, whither you will aliquo, to some place quodcum (with neg.), to any place alio, to another place
hinc, hence istinc, from where you illinc, thence indé, thence indidem, from the same Place whence.	undé, whence	undé, whence?	undique, from all sides utrinque, from both sides alicundé, from somewhere alundé, from elsewhere
hac, this way illá, that way eo, that way eadem, the same way Way.	quá, which way quacumque, whichever way	quá, which way?	aliquá, some way
nunc, now tum, then, then olim, at that time Time.	cum (or quum), when quandoque, } whenever quandocumque, } ubi, when	quando, when?	quandoque, } at some time aliquandó, } unquam (with neg.), ever nunquam, never alias, at another time
adéo, itá, so sic, thus tam, so toties, so often Degree, etc.	sic or itá, as utcumque, however quam, as, then quoties, as often as	ut or uti, how? quam, how! quoties, how often?	utique, in any case alter, otherwise quolibet, } however quavis, } (with adj. or adv.)

II. ADVERBS FORMED FROM PRONOMINAL ROOTS.

§ 241. The principal adverbs of this class are given on the opposite page. The student should first learn the adverbs referring to "place where" (demonstrative, relative, interrogative, indefinite), and proceed to those referring to "place whither," and so on. The table may be compared with that on p. 71 (§ 118).

§ 242. VARIANT SPELLING.—The ending *cumquē* is sometimes spelt *-cunquē*; so too *unquam* and *numquam* are in some editions of the classics printed *unquam*, *numquam*. *Tōtiēs* and *quōtiēs* are also spelt *tōtiēns*, *quōtiēns*.

§ 243. A comparison of the various adverbs formed from the roots of the pronouns *hic*, *istē*, *illē*, *is*, *quī* may be made by means of the following table:—

<i>hic</i> , <i>here</i>	<i>istūc</i> , <i>illic</i> , <i>ibī</i> , <i>there</i>	<i>ūbī</i> , <i>where</i>
<i>hūc</i> , <i>hither</i>	<i>istūc</i> , <i>illūc</i> , <i>ēō</i> , <i>thither</i>	<i>quō</i> , <i>whither</i>
<i>hinc</i> , <i>hence</i>	<i>istinc</i> , <i>illinc</i> , <i>indē</i> , <i>thence</i>	<i>undē</i> , <i>whence</i>
<i>hāc</i> , <i>this way</i>	<i>illā</i> , <i>ēā</i> , <i>that way</i>	<i>quā</i> , <i>which way</i>

III. ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES (INCLUDING PARTICIPLES).

§ 244. From adjectives of the first class, *i.e.* those which follow the first and second declensions of substantives (§ 80), adverbs are formed by the addition of *-ē* to the base of the adjectives.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
<i>angustūs</i> , <i>narrow</i>	<i>angust-</i>	<i>angustē</i> , <i>narrowly</i>
<i>ornātūs</i> , <i>adorned</i> (perf. part. } passive of <i>ornō</i> , <i>I adorn</i>)	<i>ornāt-</i>	<i>ornatē</i> , <i>ornately</i>
<i>pulchr-</i> , <i>beautiful</i>	<i>pulchr-</i>	<i>pulchrē</i> , <i>beautifully</i>
<i>libēr</i> , <i>free</i>	<i>libēr-</i>	<i>libērē</i> , <i>freely</i>

NOTE.—A few adverbs ending in *-itēr* are formed from adjectives of the first class; *e.g.* *largitēr* (also *largē*), *abundantly*, from *largūs*, *abundant*.

§ 245. From some adjectives of the first class adverbs are formed by adding *-ō* to the base.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
<i>rārūs</i> , <i>scanty</i>	<i>rār-</i>	<i>rārō</i> , <i>scantily</i>
<i>consultūs</i> (perf. part. passive of } <i>consulō</i> , <i>I deliberate</i>)	<i>consult-</i>	<i>consultō</i> , <i>on purpose</i>

§ 246. From adjectives of the second class, *i.e.* those which follow the third declension of substantives (§ 84), adverbs are formed by the addition of *-itēr* to the base of the adjective; but if the base of the adjective ends in *nt*, *-ēr* is added instead of *-itēr*.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
mēmōr, <i>mindful</i>	mēmōr-	mēmōritēr, <i>by heart</i>
ācēr, <i>sharp</i>	āc-	ācītēr, <i>sharply</i>
brēvis, <i>short</i>	brēv-	brēvitēr, <i>briefly</i>
fēlix, <i>fortunate</i>	fēlic-	fēlicītēr, <i>fortunately</i>
prūdēns, <i>discreet</i>	prūdēt-	prūdētēr, <i>discreetly</i>
āmans, <i>loving</i> (pres. part. active of āmō, <i>I love</i>)	āmant-	āmantēr, <i>lovingly</i>

§ 247. The accusative singular neuter of an adjective is often used as an adverb, sometimes even when a special form for the adverb exists.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective (Nom. Sing. Masc.)	Adjective (Acc. Sing. Neut.) and Adverb.
multūs, <i>much</i>	multum, <i>much</i>
dulcis, <i>sweet</i>	dulcē (also dulcītēr), <i>sweetly</i>
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facilē, <i>easily</i>
Also plerūquē (pl.), <i>very many</i>	plerūquē, <i>very frequently</i>

§ 248. The following are irregularly formed :—

From audax, <i>bold</i> ,	audactēr, <i>boldly</i>
" bōnūs, <i>good</i> ,	bēnē, <i>well</i>
" citūs, <i>quick</i> ,	cītō, <i>quickly</i>
" difficilis, <i>difficult</i> ,	difficultēr, <i>with difficulty</i>
" magnūs, <i>great</i> ,	magnōpērē, <i>greatly</i>
" mālūs, <i>bad</i> ,	mālē, <i>badly</i>
" nēquam, <i>worthless</i> ,	nēquītēr, <i>worthlessly</i>
" vālidūs, <i>strong</i> ,	valdē, <i>strongly</i>

Obs. Magnōpērē (also written as two words, magnō ōpērē) properly means *with great labour*; hence, *very much*, *greatly*.

§ 249. Adverbs formed from numeral adjectives are given in § 100 (p. 58).

CHAPTER XXVIII.—COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 250. Adverbs formed from adjectives have (where the meaning admits of it) three degrees of Comparison—Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: *e.g.* *brēvītēr*, *briefly*; *brēvīūs*, *more briefly*; *brēvissimē*, *most briefly*. Where no standard of comparison is expressed or distinctly understood, the comparative may denote “considerably” or “excessively,” and the superlative “exceedingly”: *e.g.* *brēvīūs*, *somewhat briefly* or *too briefly*; *brēvissimē*, *very briefly*. (Cp. § 89.)

§ 251. A comparative adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the corresponding comparative adjective (cp. § 247).

A superlative adverb is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the corresponding superlative adjective, in accordance with the rule for forming adverbs from adjectives of the first class (§ 244).

These rules apply whether the comparison of the adjective is regular or irregular.

EXAMPLES.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjective.	<i>sanctūs</i> , <i>religious</i>	<i>sanctiōr</i>	<i>sanctissimūs</i>
Adverb.	<i>sanctē</i> , <i>religiously</i>	<i>sanctiūs</i>	<i>sanctissimē</i>
Adjective.	<i>ācēr</i> , <i>sharp</i>	<i>ācriōr</i>	<i>ācerrimūs</i>
Adverb.	<i>ācritēr</i> , <i>sharply</i>	<i>ācriūs</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
Adjective.	<i>facilis</i> , <i>easy</i>	<i>faciliōr</i>	<i>facillimūs</i>
Adverb.	<i>facilē</i> , <i>easily</i>	<i>faciliūs</i>	<i>facillimē</i>
Adjective.	<i>bōnūs</i> , <i>good</i>	<i>méliōr</i>	<i>optimūs</i>
Adverb.	<i>bōnē</i> , <i>well</i>	<i>mēliūs</i>	<i>optimē</i>
Adjective.	<i>mālūs</i> , <i>bad</i>	<i>pēiōr</i>	<i>pessimūs</i>
Adverb.	<i>mālē</i> , <i>ill</i>	<i>pēiūs</i>	<i>pessimē</i>

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

The following are the only exceptions to the above rules:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>magnopērē</i> , <i>greatly</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>multum</i> , <i>much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>

§ 252. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS NOT FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>dīū</i> , <i>long</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>impūnē</i> , <i>without punishment</i>	<i>impūniūs</i>	<i>impūnissimē</i>
<i>nūpēr</i> , <i>recently</i>	—	<i>nūperriūē</i>
<i>saepē</i> , <i>often</i>	<i>saepiūs</i>	<i>saepissimē</i>
<i>sēcūs</i> , <i>otherwise</i>	{ <i>sēcīūs</i> or <i>sētīūs</i> }	—
	{ (with neg.), <i>the less</i> }	

CHAPTER XXIX.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 253. Most Latin prepositions (like all English ones) take the accusative case. The ablative, however, is used with some prepositions, and a few take either case; it is therefore necessary for the student to commit to memory at least the second and third of the following lists, if not the first.

§ 254. For the forms assumed by prepositions in composition, see § 292.

§ 255. I. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

ad, to
adversum or } *opposite, towards*
adversus, }
antē, before
apud, with (a person), at the
 house of
circā, } *around*
circum, }
circitēr, about (of number)
cis, } *this side of*
citrā, }
contra, against
ergā, towards (a person)
extrā, outside
infra, below

intēr, between, among
intrā, within
iuxtā, close by
ob, because of
pēnēs, in the power of
pēr, through
pōnē, behind
post, after
praetēr, beyond
prōpē, near
proptēr, near, on account of
secundum, following on
suprā, above
trans, across
ultrā, the other side of

The following lines contain the above twenty-eight prepositions, which are used with the accusative only:—

antē, *post*, *cis*, *citrā*, *ultrā*,
trans and *pēr*; *adversus*, *contra*;
praetēr, *pōnē*; *infra*, *suprā*;
circum, *circitēr* and *circā*;
proptēr, *ob*, *secundum*, *ergā*;
ad and *apud*, *prōpē*, *iuxtā*;
pēnēs, *intēr*, *intrā*, *extrā*.

§ 256. II. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ABLATIVE ONLY.

ā (before a consonant)	} <i>from,</i> <i>by</i>	pālam, <i>in the presence of</i>
āb (before a vowel or h)		prae, <i>in front of</i> ; with neg.
abs (only with tē, thee)		(§ 599) <i>on account of</i>
cōram, <i>in the presence of</i>		prō, <i>before, instead of</i>
cum, <i>with</i>		prōcūl, <i>far from</i>
dē, <i>down from, concerning</i>		sīnē, <i>without</i>
ē or ex, <i>out of</i>		tēnūs, <i>as far as</i>

Rhyme:—ā, āb, abs, cum, ex and ē,
cōram, pālam, prōcūl, dē,
sīnē, tēnūs, prō and prae.

Obs. 1. Tēnūs is also found with the genitive case.

Obs. 2. The distinction between ā and āb, as stated above, holds good only as a general rule. Ex is used before a vowel or a consonant; ē before consonants only.

§ 257. III. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

clam (rarely with abl.), <i>without the knowledge of</i>
in { with acc., <i>into</i>
" abl., <i>in</i>
sūb { with acc. (denoting motion <i>up to from beneath</i>), <i>up to</i>
" abl. (" rest <i>under</i>), <i>below</i>
sūpēr (with abl. rare and mostly poetic), <i>over</i>
subtēr (" in poetry only), <i>under</i>

Rhyme:—To sūpēr, subtēr, clam, we give
Most commonly accusative.
If in and sūb should *motion* show,
With them accusative must go;
But when they mean *rest* at a place,
The ablative's the proper case.

§ 258. The usual place for a preposition is immediately before its substantive (or pronoun), but some prepositions are occasionally found after their substantives, tēnūs being always so placed.

§ 259. Cum always follows the personal pronouns mē, tē, nōbīs, vōbīs, sē, and is then enclitic (§ 239, Obs. 1); e.g. mēcum, *with me*. Cum is generally enclitic also with the relative pronoun (quī, quō, quā, quībūs), but *may* precede e.g. quōcum or cum quō, *with whom*.

CHAPTER XXX.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 260. Conjunctions are of two kinds—co-ordinating and subordinating. A co-ordinating conjunction joins two words or phrases, two principal sentences, or two clauses dependent on the same principal sentence; a subordinating conjunction joins a dependent clause to its principal sentence.

I. CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 261. The following are in common use:—

ēt, -quē (enclitic), ac (before a consonant only), atquē (before any letter), etiam, necnōn, quōquē, ēt . . . ēt, cum (or quum) . . . tum, nec or nēquē, nor nec . . . nec, nēquē . . . nēquē, tāmēn (seldom placed first), yet, however	} <i>and</i> } <i>also</i> } <i>both . . .</i> } <i>and</i> } <i>neither . . . nor</i> } <i>neither . . . nor</i> } <i>neither . . . nor</i>	sēd, autem (not placed first), at, atquī, cēterum, quōd, vērū, aut, vēl, -vē (enclitic), nēvē or neu (used when the first member is introduced) by nē), sīvē . . . sīvē, seu . . . seu, ēnim (not placed first), nam, namquē, } <i>but</i> } <i>or</i> } <i>nor</i> } <i>either . . . or</i> } <i>for</i>
---	--	---

Obs. 1. The enclitics -quē, *and*, -vē, *or*, are added to the second of the two words they join, or to the first word of the second sentence or clause; *e.g.* Armā virumquē cānō, *I sing of arms and a hero*; Quid tū es tristis, quidvē es ālacris? *Why are you sad, or why are you cheerful?*

Obs. 2. Autem is usually the second word in the sentence or clause it introduces; *e.g.* Nihil scribō, lēgō autem libentissimē, *I write nothing, but I read with great pleasure.* So also enim, and (unless emphatic) tāmēn.

II. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 262. In the following list of subordinating conjunctions, all of which are in common use, several have more than one English equivalent attached. The translation of such conjunctions for the most part varies according to the mood of the verb in the subordinate clause introduced, or, in other words, the variation of the Latin mood is represented by a variation of the English conjunction. This is more fully explained in the Syntax.

(With Indicative or Subjunctive.)	(With Indicative Only.)
sī, <i>if</i>	quamquam, <i>although</i>
nisi or nī, <i>unless</i>	quoniam, } <i>since</i>
etsi, } <i>although</i>	quandōquidem, }
etiamsi, }	simulac, } <i>as soon as</i>
cum, { <i>with Indic. when</i>	simulatque, } <i>as soon as</i>
, { <i>with Subj. when, since,</i>	ubi, } <i>when</i>
, <i>although</i>	ut (or uti), }
antequam, } <i>before that</i>	(With Subjunctive Only.)
priusquam, }	ut (or uti), <i>in order that, so that,</i>
dum, } <i>with Indic. whilst</i>	, <i>although</i>
donec, } <i>with Subj. until</i>	ne, <i>lest</i>
quoad, }	quod, <i>that (thereby)</i>
quod, } <i>because</i>	quominus, <i>that (thereby) . . . not</i>
quia, }	quin, <i>that (thereby) . . . not, but</i>
	that
	quamvis, } <i>although</i>
	licet, }

Obs. Several relative adverbs serve also as conjunctions; cum, quoad, ubi, and ut have already been given in Ch. XXVII.

CHAPTER XXXI.—INTERJECTIONS.

I. NATURAL SOUNDS.

§ 263. The following are the most common:—

āh or ā, <i>ah</i>	heu or ēheu, <i>alas!</i>
eccē, } <i>lo!</i>	heus, <i>ho!</i>
ēn, }	ō, <i>O, oh!</i>
eiā or hēiā, <i>come!</i>	prō or prōh, <i>alas</i>
hei, <i>ah!</i>	vae, <i>woe!</i>

II. WORDS.

§ 264. The following are the most important:—

āgē, <i>come!</i>	mēherclē,	} <i>may Hercules</i> (help) <i>me!</i>
herclē, <i>Hercules!</i>	mēhercūlē,	
mactē (voc. of <i>mactūs, glorified</i>),	mēhercūlē,	
<i>bravo! well done! go on!</i>	pōl, <i>Pollux!</i>	
mēdiūs fidīūs, <i>may the God of</i>		
<i>Faith (help) me!</i>		

PART II.: FORMATION OF CERTAIN CLASSES OF WORDS.

CHAPTER XXXII.—SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES FROM VERBS.

§ 265. Three verbal substantives—the gerund, the supine, and the infinitive—are included in the conjugation of the verbs to which they belong (§ 126). Substantives of one or more of the following classes are also formed from the supine base of many verbs.

Obs. The word “formed” here refers merely to the mechanical structure of the words, not to their etymology.

§ 266. The nominative of the verbal substantive, of which the supines are respectively the accusative and ablative cases, is formed by adding *-ūs* to the supine base. These substantives are of the fourth declension and of masculine gender; *e.g.* *audīt-ūs, -ūs, the sense of hearing*; *ūs-ūs, -ūs, use*.

Obs. This verbal substantive of the fourth declension must be carefully distinguished from the perfect participle, which is an adjective declined like *bōnūs*.

§ 267. Substantives formed by adding *-iō* (base *-iōn-*) to the supine base of the verb are very numerous; *e.g.* *act-iō, -ōnīs, action*. These substantives are all feminine.

§ 268. Substantives formed by adding *-ōr* (base *-ōr-*) to the supine base denote the agent—*i.e.* one who performs the action expressed by the verb; *e.g.* *vēnāt-ōr, -ōrīs, hunter*; *foss-ōr, -ōrīs, digger*. These substantives are masculine; those in *-tōr* have a feminine form in *-trix* (§ 274).

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS.

§ 269. Adjectives ending in *-ilīs* or *-bilīs* denote that the substantive to which they refer is capable of performing or (more usually) suffering the action indicated by the verb.

Examples: *dōc-ilīs, teachable*, *cp. dōcērē, to teach*; *ūt-ilīs, useful*, *cp. ūtī, to use*; *stā-bilīs, steadfast*, *cp. stārē, to stand*; *flē-bilīs, tearful* (active) or *lamentable* (passive), *cp. flērē, to weep*.

§ 270. Adjectives ending in -īdūs imply a condition or state, those in -cundūs a characteristic or habit; adjectives in -bundūs imply (like present participles) the present performance of the verbal action.

Examples: frig-īdūs, *cold*, cp. frīgērē, *to be cold*; vāl-īdūs, *strong*, cp. vāl-ērē, *to be strong*; fā-cundūs, *eloquent*, cp. fārīf *to speak*; irā-cundūs, *hot-temper'd*, cp. irascī *to be angry*; mōrī-bundūs, *dying*, cp. mōrī *to die*; errā-bundūs, *wandering*, cp. errārē, *to wander*.

§ 271. Adjectives ending in -ax (gen. -ācis) indicate a propensity, often an excessive one.

Examples: aud-ax, *daring, rash*, cp. audērē, *to dare*; lōqu-ax, *talkative*, cp. lōquī, *to talk*; mīn-ax, *threatening*, cp. mīnārī, *to threaten*; viv-ax, *long-lived*, cp. vivērē, *to live*.

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 272. Adjectives are formed from substantives by the addition of various endings, the more important of which are illustrated by the following examples:—

Pātr-īus, *paternal*, pātēr-nūs, *owned by a father*, cp. pātēr, *father*; quer-nūs, *oaken*, cp. quercūs, *oak*; aur-ēūs, *golden*, cp. aurum, *gold*; bell-īcūs, *military*, cp. bellum, *war*; form-ōsus, *beautiful*, cp. formā, *shape, beauty*; vi-ō-lentūs, *violent*, cp. vis, *force*; barb-ātūs, *bearded*, cp. barbā, *beard*; fāt-ālīs, *fated*, cp. fātum, *fate*; sālūt-āris, *healthful*, cp. sālūs (base, sālūt-), *health*; host-ilīs, *hostile*, cp. hostis, *enemy*; Lāt-inūs, *Latin*, cp. Lātium, *provincial*, cp. oppidū, *country town*; āgr-ārīūs, *agrarian*, cp. āgēr, *field*.

FORMATION OF FEMININE SUBSTANTIVES FROM MASCULINE.

§ 273. In the case of many masculine substantives of the second declension denoting males there are corresponding feminine forms of the first declension denoting females; e.g.—

dē-ūs, <i>god</i>	dē-ā (§ 43), <i>goddess</i>
ēqu-ūs, <i>horse</i>	ēqu-ā, <i>mare</i>
filī-ūs, <i>son</i>	filī-ā (§ 43), <i>daughter</i>
māgistr- (base, māgistr-), <i>master</i>	māgistr-ā, <i>mistress</i>

§ 274. From masculine substantives of the third declension ending in the nominative singular in -tōr (genitive -tōris) feminine substantives may be formed by changing -tōr to -trix (base, -trīc-); e.g.—

vēnā-tōr, <i>hunter</i>	vēnā-trix, -trīcis, <i>hunteress</i>
-------------------------	--------------------------------------

NOTE.—Some of these feminine forms are used as feminine adjectives; e.g. victrix, *victorious*, from victōr, *conqueror*.

DIMINUTIVES.

§ 275. From many Latin substantives *diminutives* may be formed, conveying the idea of *smallness*, just as in English we have "islet" from "isle," "manikin" from "man," etc. In the following sections the commoner methods of forming diminutives are indicated.

§ 276. From substantives of the first and second declensions (except some ending in -ēr) diminutives are formed by adding to the base -ŭlŭs if the substantive is masculine, -ŭlā if the substantive is feminine, and -ŭlum if it is neuter; the same rule applies to substantives of the third declension with base ending in a dental (d, t) or guttural (c, g); e.g.—

riv-ŭs, <i>stream</i>	riv-ŭlŭs, <i>streamlet</i>
parm-ā, <i>shield</i>	parm-ŭlā, <i>little shield</i>
oppid-um, <i>town</i>	oppid-ŭlum, <i>small town</i>
cāpūt (gen. cāpīt-īs), <i>head</i>	cāpīt-ŭlum, <i>little head</i>
rex (gen. rēg-īs), <i>king</i>	rēg-ŭlŭs, <i>petty king</i>

§ 277. If the base of the substantive ends in a vowel, -ōlŭs, -ōlā, or -ōlum is added instead of -ŭlŭs, -ŭlā, -ŭlum; e.g.—

fili-ŭs, <i>son</i>	fili-ōlŭs, <i>little son</i>
fili-ā, <i>daughter</i>	fili-ōlā, <i>little daughter</i>
nēgōti-um, <i>business</i>	nēgōti-ōlum, <i>bit of business</i>

NOTE.—If the base ends in l, n, or r, the diminutive termination contracts with this last letter of the base into -lŭs, -lā, -lum; e.g.—

cōrō-n-ā, <i>garland</i>	cōro-lā, <i>small garland</i>
libē-r, <i>book</i>	libe-lŭs, <i>pamphlet</i>

§ 278. From substantives other than those included in the preceding sections diminutives ending in -cŭlŭs, -cŭlā, -cŭlum are formed on the model of the examples here given:—

frāter, <i>brother</i>	frāter-cŭlŭs, <i>little brother</i>
mŭllēr, <i>woman</i>	mŭllēr-cŭlā, <i>little woman</i>
corpŭs, <i>body</i>	cornus-cŭlum, <i>atom</i>
nāv-is, <i>ship</i>	nāv-i-cŭlŭs, <i>skiff</i>
vers-ŭs (4th decl.), <i>verse</i>	vers-i-cŭlŭs, <i>little verse</i>
spēs (5th decl.), <i>hope</i>	spē-cŭlā, <i>ray of hope</i>

PATRONYMICS.

§ 279. Patronymics denote descent from a parent or ancestor, generally a father; they are all of Greek formation, but are of frequent occurrence in Latin poetry.

§ 280. Masculine patronymics are formed by adding to the base of proper names of Greek origin (§§ 61-68) belonging to the

First Declension, as—

Aenē-ās, -ādēs, as in Aenē-ādēs, son of Aeneas
Lāert-ēs, -iādēs, „ Lāert-iādēs, son of Læertes

Second Declension, as—

Priām-ūs, -idēs, „ Priām-idēs, son of Priam

Second Declension (with base ending in i), as—

Thestī-ūs, -ādēs, as in Thestī-ādēs, son of Thestius

Third Declension, as—

Cēcrops (gen. Cēcrop-īs), -idēs, „ Cēcrop-idēs, son of Cēcrops
Atlās (gen. Atlant-īs), -iādēs, „ Atlant-iādēs, son of Atlas
Atr-eus, -idēs, „ Atr-idēs, son of Atreus

§ 281. All masculine patronymics are declined like Tŷdīdēs (§ 62). The genitive plural often ends in -um instead of -ārum (§ 42, 1).

§ 282. Feminine patronymics are formed by adding to the base of proper names of Greek origin -ās, -iās, -īs or -ēis, according as the masculine patronymic would end in -ādēs, -iādēs, -idēs or -īdēs; e.g.—

	Masc. Patronymic.	Fem. Patronymic.
Thestī-ūs	Thestī-ādēs	Thestī-ās, daughter of Thestius
Atlās (gen. Atlant-īs)	Atlant-iādēs	Atlant-iās, daughter of Atlas
Cēcrops (gen. Cēcrop-īs)	Cēcrop-idēs	Cēcrop-īs, daughter of Cēcrops
Nēr-eus	—	Nēr-ēis, daughter of Nereus

§ 283. Feminine patronymics are declined like lampās (§ 65, 1), the accusative singular of the examples given above being Thestīād-ā, Atlantīād-ā, Cēcropīd-ā, Nērēid-ā.

CHAPTER XXXIII.—FORMATION OF CERTAIN CLASSES OF VERBS.

DERIVED VERBS.

§ 284. Three classes of verbs call for notice here :—

- (a) **frequentative** verbs, expressing *repeated* action ;
- (b) **inceptive** verbs (also called **inchoative**), expressing *incipient* or *increasing* action ;
- (c) **desiderative** verbs, expressing *desire* of action.

§ 285. The present base of a **frequentative** verb is formed either (i) by adding **-īt-** to the present base of the simple verb, or (ii) by adding **-it-** to the supine base of the simple verb, or (iii) is identical with the supine base of the simple verb. From verbs of the first conjugation frequentative verbs are formed by the first method only. Many verbs, though frequentative in form, have no frequentative force, but are either equivalent to their simple verb or imply intenser action.

Present (of Simple Verb).	Supine (of Simple Verb).	Frequentative.
(i) rōg-ō, <i>ask</i>	—	rōg-īt-ō, <i>ask repeatedly</i>
āg-ō, <i>drive</i>	—	āg-īt-ō, <i>shake</i>
mīn-ōr, <i>threaten</i>	—	mīn-īt-ōr, <i>threaten</i>
(ii) lēgō, <i>read</i>	lect-um	lect-īt-ō, <i>read repeatedly</i>
vēnīō, <i>come</i>	vent-um	vent-īt-ō, <i>come frequently</i>
(iii) cānō, <i>sing</i>	cant-um	cant-ō, <i>sing</i>
vert-ō, <i>turn</i>	vers-um	vers-ō, <i>twist</i>

§ 286. Frequentative verbs are all of the first conjugation, and form their principal parts regularly ; e.g. āgītō, āgītārē, āgītāvī, āgītātum ; mīnītōr, mīnītārī, mīnītātūs sum.

Obs. If the simple verb is deponent, the frequentative is deponent also.

§ 287. Inceptive verbs are formed by adding to the present base of a verb of the

1st conj. -ascō, *e.g.*—

lāb-asc-ō, -ērē, *begin to totter*, from lāb-ō, -ārē, *totter*

2nd conj. -escō, *e.g.*—

sīl-esc-ō, -ērē, *become silent*, „ sīl-ēō, -ērē, *be silent*

3rd conj. -escō or -iscō, *e.g.*—

trēm-esc-ō, } -ērē, *begin to tremble* „ trēm-ō, -ērē, *tremble*
trēm-isc-ō, }

4th conj. -iscō, *e.g.*—

obdorm-isc-ō, -ērē, *fall asleep* „ dorm-iō, -irē, *sleep*

NOTE.—Sometimes the simple verb from which the inceptive is supposed to be formed is not in use, and sometimes the inceptive is formed direct from an adjective; *e.g.* mīt-escō, *I grow mild*, from mīt-is, *mild*.

§ 288. Inceptive verbs are all of the third conjugation; their perfects and supines, if in use, are identical with those of the simple verbs from which they are formed. The principal parts of inceptive verbs not derived from other verbs (*e.g.* irascōr, *I get angry*) are given in Chapters XXI. and XXVI. if in use.

§ 289. Desiderative verbs are formed by adding -ūrīō to the supine base of the simple verb; *e.g.* ēs-ūrīō, *I desire to eat*, am hungry, from the base of ēs-um, supine of ēdō, *I eat*.

§ 290. All desiderative verbs are of the fourth conjugation, and form their perfects and supines (if in use) like audiō.

COMPOUND VERBS.

§ 291. When compounded with verbs, etc., some prepositions undergo certain changes in accordance with euphonic principles. These changes are best learnt by observation; the following remarks may be of use to the learner, but are by no means exhaustive.

§ 292. (i) The final consonant of ād, ōb, sūb is frequently assimilated to the first letter (if a consonant) of the verb; *e.g.* affērō (= ād + fērō), oppōnō (= ōb + pōnō), summōvēō (= sūb + mōvēō). Sus-, *e.g.* in sus-pondō, sus-tulī, represents subs-, a form of sūb.

(ii) *Com-* (the usual form of *cum* in composition) and *in* are assimilated to *l* or *r* when the simple verb begins with either of those letters; e.g. *corrumpō* (= *cor-* + *rumpō*), *irumpō* (= *in* + *rumpō*). They are respectively written *com-* and *im-* before *m*, *b*, or *p*, e.g. *impellō*; *com-* becomes *con-* before most other letters, e.g. *conferō*, *contūli*.

(iii) *Ā, āb* assumes several forms: *a-*, *ab-*, *au-*, *abs-*, *as-*; e.g. *āmittō*, *abdō*, *aufērō*, *abstrāhō*, *asportō*.

(iv) *Ē* is used in composition before consonants only, *ex* is used before consonants and vowels; e.g. *ēdō*, *expellō*, *exēō*. Before *f* the old form *ec-* becomes *ef-*, as in *effērō*.

(v) *Ād, com-*, and *trans* sometimes lose the consonants at the end, as in *aspīrō*, *cōlēō*, *trānciō* (see p. 128, footnote).

Gls. In some editions of Latin classics prepositions in composition are printed in their unassimilated forms, e.g. *adfērō*, *objūnō*, *submōvēō*.

NOTE.—*Prō* (originally *prōd*) retains its final *d* in *prōd-ēs*, *prōd-īgō* (= *prōd* + *āgō*), and in *prōd-essē* and other parts of *prōsum* in which the verb begins with *e*. Sometimes *pro* has *ō* (short) in composition, e.g. in *prōficiēcōr*, *I set out*.

§ 293. Verbs, etc., when compounded frequently undergo certain vowel-changes in the present, perfect, and supine bases, or in the present and perfect bases, or in the present base only.

The vowels thus subject to change are *ā* (with the diphthongs *ae* and *au*) and *ē*.

<i>ā</i> (short)	becomes <i>ē</i> , as in	<i>congrēdiōr</i> = <i>com</i> + <i>grādiōr</i>
	or <i>i</i> , „	<i>occidō</i> = <i>ōb</i> + <i>cādō</i>
	„ <i>ū</i> , „	<i>concūtō</i> = <i>com</i> + <i>quātō</i>
<i>a</i> (short by nature) becomes <i>e</i> , „		<i>corruptum</i> = <i>com</i> + <i>raptum</i>
	or <i>i</i> , „	<i>confringō</i> = <i>com</i> + <i>frangō</i>
	„ <i>u</i> , „	<i>insultō</i> = <i>in</i> + <i>saltō</i>
<i>ae</i>	becomes <i>i</i> , „	<i>occidō</i> = <i>ōb</i> + <i>caedō</i>
<i>au</i>	„ <i>ō</i> , „	<i>explōdō</i> = <i>ex</i> + <i>plaudō</i>
	or <i>ū</i> , „	<i>conclūdō</i> = <i>com</i> + <i>claudō</i>
<i>ē</i> (short)	becomes <i>i</i> , „	<i>collīgō</i> = <i>com</i> + <i>līgō</i>

CHAPTER XXXIV.—INSEPARABLE PARTICLES.

§ 294. The following particles serve as prefixes in the formation chiefly of verbs, but also of other parts of speech. Most of them undergo euphonic changes similar to those which occur in the case of the prepositions mentioned in the last chapter.

ambi-, <i>around</i> , (amb-)	as in amb-ŭ (= ambi- + ẽō, but conjugated like audiō), <i>go round</i>
dis-, <i>asunder</i> , (dif-, di-)	„ dis-cūtīō (= dis- + quātīō), <i>shatter</i> ; dif-fērō (= dis- + fērō), <i>bear asunder</i> ; di-vellō, <i>rend</i>
in-, <i>not</i> (= Eng. <i>un-</i>), (im-, il-, ir-)	„ in-auditūs, <i>unheard of</i> ; im-pār, <i>unequal</i> ; il-lōtūs, <i>unwashed</i> ; ir-rītūs (= in- + rātūs), <i>ineffectual</i>
ne-, <i>not</i> ,	„ ne-scīō, <i>know not</i>
rēd-, <i>back</i> , (rē-)	„ red-dō, <i>give back</i> ; rēd-ẽō, <i>go back</i> ; rettūli,* <i>I brought back</i> ; rē-mittō, <i>send back</i>
sēd-, <i>apart, without</i> , (sē-)	„ sēd-ītīō (-ītīō = a going, from supine base of ẽō, <i>go</i>), <i>dissension</i> ; sē-cūrūs, <i>without anxiety</i>

Obs. 1. The enclitic -dum is occasionally added to āgē and to some other imperatives; e.g. āgēdum, *come now*! ĭtērādum, *repeat now*!

Obs. 2. For the enclitic -ně, see § 239; for the enclitics -quē and -vě, see § 261.

* So also reccīdī (perf. of rēcīdō, *fall back*), reppērī (perf. of rēpērīō, *find*), and reppūli (perf. of rēpellō, *drive back*).

PART III.: SYNTAX.

CHAPTER XXXV.—SENTENCES.

§ 295. The departments of grammar known respectively as *accidence* and *syntax* may be roughly defined by saying that *accidence* deals with words, *syntax* with sentences.

As it is impossible to learn intelligently the inflexions of substantives, verbs, etc., without some knowledge of the part which the inflected words play in a sentence, some of the main principles of *syntax*, here set out in detail, have already been indicated in Part I. of this book.

SIMPLE, COMPOUND, AND COMPLEX SENTENCES.

§ 296. A **simple sentence** consists of a single statement, question, or command, and contains but one finite verb.

věniō.	quīs vēnīt ?	vēnī.
<i>I come.</i>	<i>who comes ?</i>	<i>come.</i>

Obs. By "finite" verb is meant a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood, as distinguished from a participle or verbal substantive.

§ 297. A **compound sentence** contains two or more simple sentences, each of which gives, when taken separately, a complete and intelligible meaning.

vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.
<i>I came, I saw, I overcame.</i>

§ 298. A **complex sentence** consists of a simple sentence (called the "principal sentence"), to which are joined one or more sub-sentences (called "dependent clauses"), which, though each containing a finite verb, do not give a complete and intelligible sense when taken apart from the principal sentence. (See the next section for examples.)

§ 299. The dependent clause performs, in regard to the principal sentence, the function of—

- (a) a substantive,
- (b) an adjective, or
- (c) an adverb;

and is termed accordingly substantival, adjectival, or adverbial.

- (a) *quod rediit Rēgŭlŭs nobis mirābilē vidētŭr.*
(the fact) that *Regulus* went back seems to us remarkable.
- (b) *nōn cāret is quī nōn dēsiderāt.*
he lacks not who feels not his want.
- (c) *cunctā ūt gestā sunt expōnam.*
I will relate everything as it happened.

Obs. 1. The verb in a dependent clause is in the indicative or subjunctive mood.

Obs. 2. The preceding examples are merely given to illustrate the definitions; the consideration of the dependent clauses of complex sentences must be deferred until simple sentences have been treated in detail.

Principal sentences to which dependent clauses are added fall under the same rules as simple sentences.

CHAPTER XXXVI.—VERBS, TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE: USE OF THE VOICES.

§ 300. It is necessary before proceeding with the syntax of the simple sentence to explain the chief usages of the two voices of Latin verbs. These usages vary according as the verb is transitive or intransitive.

§ 301. Of Latin verbs some are **always intransitive** (*i.e.* the action they express is not one *performed upon* some person or thing); *e.g.* *vēnīō*, *I come*. Others are **always transitive**, and imply the existence of some person or thing upon which the action is performed; *e.g.* *portō*, *I carry*.

Many verbs, however, are **sometimes transitive, sometimes intransitive**; *e.g.* *timēō*, *I fear*.

Rules given in this syntax for transitive verbs must be understood to apply also to verbs of this last class when used transitively, and similarly rules given for intransitive verbs apply to these verbs when used intransitively.

Among **deponents** (§ 171) there are both transitive and intransitive verbs.

Obs. It often happens that, whereas a verb in its simple form is intransitive, compounds of this verb with prepositions are transitive; *e.g.* *ēō*, *I go* (intransitive); *ādēō*, *I approach* (transitive); *pugnō*, *I fight* (intransitive); *expugnō*, *I storm* (transitive).

§ 302. Transitive and intransitive verbs (unless deponent or defective) are alike conjugated throughout the active voice, except that—

(1) impersonal verbs are used in the third person singular and the infinitive only (§ 230);

(2) the nominative gerund of transitive verbs is not in use in classical Latin.

§ 303. Verbs which are transitive in the active voice are conjugated throughout in the passive; intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive, and are, therefore, only found in the third person singular and in the infinitive.

ex proximīs castellīs ēs concursus est.
a rush was made thither from the nearest forts.

ventum est in montēs.
the mountains were reached.

Obs. There is in English no exact parallel to the Latin impersonal use of the passive of intransitive verbs: itūr literally means *there is a going, a going takes place*; so *ventum est, a coming took place*. Attention is thus directed to the action, not to the person by whom the action is performed. The passive form of such sentences may be reproduced (as above) by employing as subject a substantive answering to the Latin verb or to some other word in the sentence.

§ 304. When a transitive verb is used in the passive voice the subject—

(a) suffers an action performed by some external agency or instrumentality:

E.g., Saxum fluctibus tunditur, The rock is beaten by the waves;

(b) performs an action on himself:

E.g., Mōvēōr, I move myself, i.e. I move;

(c) performs an action on something connected with his person:

E.g., Accingōr glādiū, I gird on a sword.

Obs. In usages (b) and (c), and especially in (c), the passive is said to have a middle meaning, i.e. a meaning similar to that of the "middle" voice of a Greek verb, in which the subject is identical with the indirect object. Usage (c) is peculiar to poetry; for other examples, see § 327.

CHAPTER XXXVII.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE: CONCORDS.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 305. In its normal form a simple sentence contains—
(a) a substantive (in the nominative case) as **subject**;
(b) a verb (of the same number and person as the subject)
as **predicate**.

nāvis it.

the ship goes.

nāvēs eunt.

the ships go.

Obs. Rules given in this syntax for substantives apply also to adjectives used substantively and to substantival pronouns. Adjectives used substantively (*i.e.* without substantives) in the masculine denote *men*, in the neuter denote *things*; e.g. Bōnī hōnestā prōbant, *Good men approve of honourable things*. This usage is avoided where ambiguity would arise through the masculine and neuter endings being the same.

§ 306. The subject need not be separately expressed, but may be denoted by the termination of the verb, if the latter is—

- (a) of the first or second person singular or plural;
- (b) of the third person singular used impersonally;
- (c) of the third person plural used indefinitely.

(a) vēnīō.

I come.

(b) plūit.

it rains.

(c) crēdunt.

people believe.

Obs. The subject of a verb in the third person often has to be supplied from a preceding sentence; hence it is occasionally wanting in some of the extracts from the classics used as examples in this book, e.g. in § 320.

THE SECONDARY PREDICATE.

§ 307. Some intransitive and passive verbs do not by themselves form a predication complete in itself; e.g. fiō, *I become (become what?)*; Cātō appellātūr, *Cato is called (is called what?)*. The substantive or adjective added in such cases to complete the sense is called the **secondary predicate**, the verb in question being then for distinction called the **primary predicate**.

consul fiō.

I become consul.

Cātō appellātūr sapiens.

Cato is styled wise.

Obs. A secondary predicate must, if a substantive, be in the same case as its subject; if an adjective, in the same gender, number, and case.

§ 308. The verb *sum* always requires a secondary predicate (unless used in the sense of *I exist*), and the perfect participle in the perfect, pluperfect, and futur~~um~~-perfect tenses of the passive voice is, strictly speaking, a secondary predicate.

§ 309. A perfect participle is very commonly used alone as a primary predicate, instead of as a secondary predicate with *est* or *sunt*.

contīnūō audītae vōcēs.
forthwith cries were heard.

NOTE.—Any adjective *may* be so used; see the example in § 313.

CONCORDS.

§ 310. Two rules, known respectively as the “first concord” and the “second concord,” which relate to the “concord” or agreement of words in a sentence, have already been indicated and are here formally stated.

Obs. The “third concord” has to do with complex sentences only (see § 497).

§ 311. CONCORD I. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case, and the verb agrees therewith in number and in person.

lābuntūr annī. prēcūl, ō prēcūl estē, prēcānī.
years glide by. away, away, ye uninitiated.

NOTE.—Sometimes the number of the verb depends on the sense rather than on the form of the subject; see Appendix (A.), *Synopsis*.

§ 312. CONCORD II. An adjective, participle, or adjectival pronoun agrees in gender, number, and case with the substantive to which it refers either as attribute or predicate.

solvītūr ācrīs hīems.
sharp winter is melting away.
mētūō pātrūae* verbērā linguāe.
I fear the scourging of an uncle's tongue.

* Besides the substantive *pātrūūs*, an *uncle*, there is an adjective *pātrūūs*, of an *uncle*; *pātrūae* is from the latter.

fortūnā caecā est.

fortune is blind.

Cl̄ytaemnestrā ā filiō suō occisā est.

Cl̄ytaemnestra was slain by her son.

NOTE.—An adjective that expresses a quality possessed by the subject at the time of action is often represented by an English adverb; e.g. *Invitās id feci, I did so unwillingly.*

§ 313. A masculine or feminine substantive sometimes has as predicate a neuter adjective used substantively.

vāriū ē mūtābilē semp̄r fēminā.

woman is ever a pickle and inconstant thing.

§ 314. A substantive may stand to another substantive in the relation of an attribute, and is then said to be in apposition to it. A substantive agrees in case with that to which it is in apposition, but not necessarily in number.

tē cānam, magnī Iōvis ē dēōrum nuntiū.

thee wilt I hymn, the messenger of great Jupiter and the gods.

Cōriōlī oppidū captū.

the town of Corioli was taken.

Obs. Note that apposition is often represented by the English preposition *of*. (Cōriōlī is nominative plural.)

§ 315. A substantive in apposition often has special reference to the time of action, and must then be translated with the addition of *when* or *as*.

Cicērō consūl haec fēcīt.

Cicero did these things when consul.

COMPOUND CONCORDS.

§ 316. Two or more substantives (not in apposition) having the same predicate form what is called a composite subject. (See the next section for examples.)

§ 317. A composite subject has, according to rule, its verb in the plural; and if the members of the composite subject are of different persons, the verb agrees with the "prior" person, the first person being reckoned prior to the second, and the second to the third.

ēgō ēt Cicērō vālēmūs.

Cicero and I are well.

tū ēt Tullīā vālētīs.

you and Tullia are well.

§ 318. Very commonly, however, a composite subject is constructed with a singular verb for one of the following reasons :—

(a) The verb agrees with one member of the subject only, being understood with the other. This is always the case where the conjunction joining the members of the subject means *or* or *nor*.

(b) The two members of the subject are either practically synonymous or combine to form one idea.

(a) *fāvēt nox ēt Vēnūs.*

night and Venus are favourable.

citā mors vēnīt aut victoriā laetā.

a swift death comes or a joyful victory.

(b) *rēligiō ēt fidēs antēpōnātūr amicitiae.*

let religion and good faith be considered before friendship.

319. An adjective used as an attribute of several substantives usually agrees with the nearest.

vīgēbāt in illā dōmō patriūs mōs ēt disciplinā.

there flourished in that house ancestral custom and rule.

NOTE.—Occasionally the rule for the agreement of the secondary predicate of a composite subject (§ 321) applies here.

§ 320. A plural substantive may have, when the sense requires it, two attributes, each in the singular.

in cornībūs dextrō Poenōs lōcāt, laevō Afrōs. [left.

he places the Carthaginians on the right wing, the Africans on the

NOTE.—Similarly two individual names in the singular are constructed with a family name in the plural; e.g. *Mihī Gnaeūs ēt Publiūs Scipionēs fortunātī videntūr*, *Gnaeus and Publius Scipio seem to me fortunate.*

§ 321. An adjective or participle serving as the secondary predicate of a composite subject is, according to rule, put in the plural number; and if the members of the subject are of different genders, the adjective is masculine if it refers to persons, neuter if it refers to things.

mortūi sunt pāter ēiūs ēt mātēr.

his father and mother are dead.

divitiāe dēcūs gloriā in oculis sitā sunt.

riches, honour, and glory are set before our eyes.

NOTE.—Two or more feminine abstract substantives may have a neuter plural predicate: e.g. *Stultitiā ēt tēmēritās sunt fūgiendā*, *Folly and rashness are things to be avoided* (cp. § 313).

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—SUBSTANTIVES: THE USE OF THE CASES AND NUMBERS.

I.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

§ 322. The nominative is used—

(a) as the subject of a finite verb:

E.g., C a e s ā r p e r v ē n ī t, Caesar arrived;

(b) as secondary predicate of that subject:

E.g., I u p p ī t ě r r e x h ā b ē t ū r, Jupiter is accounted king;

(c) in apposition to another nominative:

E.g., P ā t ě r A e n ē ā s f l ē b ā t, Father Aeneas was weeping;

(d) occasionally, in place of the vocative, to denote the person addressed:

E.g., A u d ī t ū, p ō p ū l ū s A l b ā n ū s, Hear thou, Alban nation.

§ 323. The commoner verbs with which a secondary predicate is used in the same case as the subject are here given (these are often termed copulative verbs):—

(a) The verb *sum*, *I am*:

E.g., C i c ě r ō c o n s ū l ē r ā t, Cicero was consul.

(b) The passive of verbs signifying to *make*, *name*, *esteem*, and the like (including *fiō*, *I become*, which serves as the passive of *fāciō*, *I make*, and *vidēōr*, *I seem*, passive of *vidēō*, *I see*):

E.g., H i b ē ā t ī v ī d e n t ū r, These men seem happy.

(c) Intransitive verbs such as *nascōr*, *I am born*; *vīvō*, *I live*; *mānēō*, *I remain*:

E.g., Ē g ō v ī v ō m ī s e r r ī m ū s, My life is most wretched.

II.—THE VOCATIVE CASE.

§ 324. A substantive in the vocative case stands as an exclamation. It bears no syntactical relation to the sentence with which it is used.

hūc ādēs, mī fili

come here, my son.

Obs. For the nominative used as vocative, see § 322.

III.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

§ 325. A word in the accusative case for the most part defines the sphere of a verb's action, and is called the object of that verb.

The object is—

(A.) external, denoting that to which the verbal action is applied (§§ 326—333); or

(B.) internal, denoting the extent or character of the action (§§ 334—344).

The accusative is also used with many prepositions (§§ 345—346).

Obs. The terms “external” and “internal” are explained and illustrated in § 336.

For the accusative used as subject of an infinitive, see § 408, *Obs.*

(A.) ACCUSATIVE OF THE EXTERNAL OBJECT (INCLUDING THE “GOAL,” WHEN THE VERB EXPRESSES MOTION).

§ 326. The object of a transitive verb, personal or impersonal, is in the accusative case.

multī divitiās despiciunt.

many despise riches.

oportet mē abire.

it behoves me (i.e. I ought) to go away.

NOTE.—Participles of transitive verbs, and the infinitive and other verbal substantives (§ 407) take an accusative of the object.

Caesar cōhortātus sūo proelium commisit.

Caesar, having encouraged his men, joined battle.

§ 327. This accusative of the external object is found not only with active and deponent transitive verbs, but also in poetry with passive verbs used in a middle sense (§ 304), and especially with their perfect participles.

induitur cultum faciēmq̃ Dianae.

she assumes the garb and form of Diana.

pueri laevō suspensī lōcūlōs tābūlamq̃ laceratō ibant.

the boys used to go, having slung on their left arm satchel and tablet.

§ 328. Verbs which are, strictly speaking, intransitive are occasionally, by a slight stretch of their meaning, constructed with an accusative of the external object, especially in poetry.

tribūnicium nō mē nō horrēbant.

they stood in dread of the title of "tribune."

iō cā tūā risi sātis.

I laughed heartily at your jests.

§ 329. The accusative used in exclamations is the object of some verb more or less distinctly understood.

ō mē perditum! ō mē afflictum!

alas for me, undone and overthrown!

Obs. The above usage must be distinguished from that of an interjection with the vocative of the person addressed (§ 324).

§ 330. With verbs of *making* or *calling* (known as *factive* verbs), the object has a predicate in agreement with it.

tē faciūmus, Fortūnā, dēam.

we make thee, Fortune, a goddess.

Cātōnem sapiētem appellant.

they style Cato wise.

Obs. When a sentence such as the above is reproduced in a passive form, the predicative word agrees with the subject of the passive verb; the above examples become tū, fortūnā, fīs dēā, and Cātō appellātūr sapiēns.

§ 331. The accusative is used both with and without a preposition to denote the goal of motion.

It is used **without** a preposition when the goal is expressed by—

(a) the name of a town;

(b) the name of a small island—i.e. one small enough to be regarded as a place, not a country;

(c) the words dōmūs, *home* (but not in the meaning *house*); rūs, *country*.

Brundūsium pervēnimūs, indē Leucādem.

we came to Brundisium and thence to Leucas.

vōs itē dōmum, ēgō rūs ibō.

you go home, I will go into the country.

NOTE 1.—If a substantive (*e.g.* *urbs, city; oppidum, town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town which is the goal of motion, a preposition is generally used with that substantive.

consul pervēnit in oppidum Cirtam.
the consul arrived at the town of Cirta.

NOTE 2.—The difference between the Latin and the English idiom in sentences such as the following should be noted: *Lēgātī missī Sāguntum ad Hannibālem, Ambassadors were sent to Hannibal at Saguntum.*

NOTE 3.—The accusative of words other than names of towns and small islands is occasionally used (without a preposition) by the poets to denote the goal of motion; *e.g.* *Dēvēnērē lōcōs laetōs, They reached the joyful spots.*

§ 332. The accusative supine represents an action as the “goal,” and accordingly is used with verbs implying motion.

lūsum it Maecēnās, dormitum egō Vergīliusquē.
Maecenas goes to play, Vergil and I to sleep.

§ 333. In the case of words other than names of towns or small islands, *dōmūs, rūs*, and supines, the goal of motion is in prose expressed by the accusative with a preposition.

Caesār in Galliam contendit.
Caesar hastens into Gaul.
lēgātōs ad Caesārem mittunt.
they send ambassadors to Caesar.

(B.) ACCUSATIVE OF THE INTERNAL OBJECT.

§ 334. The uses classed under the heading of “internal” accusative are far more varied than the preceding. The internal accusative is found with adjectives as well as with verbs and participles; with adjectives it denotes the extent to which the adjective is applicable to its substantive (§ 340). The usages in which the accusative expresses extent of space or time also fall under the general heading of “internal object.”

Obs. The name “adverbial” is often given to the accusative of the internal object generally, though some confine the term to the adverbial use in § 341.

§ 335. Intransitive verbs may have as an accusative of the internal object a substantive expressing something allied to or contained in the notion of the verb. This is often called the cognate accusative.

pāter eiūs servitūtem servivīt.

his father was a slave (lit. served a service).

pōpūlūs laetum tēr crēpūt sōnū.

the people thrice applauded joyfully (lit. clapped a joyful sound).

§ 336. Certain transitive verbs may have two objects in the accusative—one external, the other internal: these verbs are such as denote *asking* or *teaching*; also *cēlō*, when meaning *I keep in ignorance* (not *I hide*). The internal accusative with these verbs expresses that with regard to which the action is performed on the external object.

clāvēs portārum māgistrātūs pōposcīt.

he asked the magistrates for the keys of the gates.

(The internal object is *clāvēs*, the subject-matter of his demand.)

pūērōs ēlēmētā dōcēbō.

I shall teach boys their letters.

(The internal object is *ēlēmētā*, the subject-matter of my teaching.)

nōn cēlāvī tē sermōnem Tītī.

I did not keep you in ignorance as to Titus' conversation.

(The internal object is *sermōnem*, that with regard to which I keep you in ignorance.)

Obs. These examples illustrate the meaning of the terms "external object," "internal object." Thus, in the first example, *māgistrātūs* is *external* to the verbal action, and gives no information with regard to its nature; whereas *clāvēs* is *internal*, and defines the nature of the request. So, too, in the second example, "boys" is the object of the act of teaching, but *external* to it; whereas "letters"—the contents of the lesson—is the *internal* object of the verbal action.

NOTE.—These verbs do not by any means always take two accusatives.

§ 337. When a sentence such as the above is reproduced in a passive form, the external object becomes the subject of the passive verb, but the internal object is retained in the accusative. This may be called the retained accusative.

Cicērō sententiām rōgātūs est.

Cicero was asked his opinion.

Obs. **Discō**, *I learn*, is usually substituted for the passive of **dōcēō**, *I teach*.

§ 338. With **cēlō**, *I keep in ignorance*, **dē** with the ablative is generally (except in the case of neuter pronouns) substituted for the internal object when the sentence assumes a passive form.

nōn est prōfectō dē illō vēnēnō cēlātā mātēr.

his mother was certainly not kept in ignorance with regard to that poison.

nosnē hōc cēlātōs (sc. **essē**, § 413) **tam dīū!**

to think of our being kept in ignorance of this so long!

§ 339. The extent of the action of any verb—transitive, intransitive, or passive—may be expressed by a neuter pronoun in the accusative.

nōs āliqūid Rūtūlōs contrā iūvīmūs.

I, on the other hand, have helped the Rutuli somewhat.

NOTE.—**Nihil**, *in no respect*, **cētērā**, *in all other respects*, are similarly used.

§ 340. In poetry the accusative of any substantive may be used to express the part affected by the action of an intransitive verb, or the part to which an adjective or passive participle is applicable. This is sometimes called the accusative of specification or of respect.

ēquūs trēmīt artūs.

the horse trembles in his limbs.

huic sē formā dēi obtūlit, omniā Mercūrīō simīlis, vōcemquē cōlōremquē.

to him the form of the god presented itself, like unto Mercury in all respects, both in voice and in complexion.

mānūs iūvenem post tergā revinctum trāhēbant.

they were haling a youth with his hands bound (lit. hand-bound) behind his back.

Obs. 1. In prose the ablative (§ 370) is used. °

Obs. 2. The accusative of specification or respect is to be distinguished from the accusative governed by a passive verb used in a middle sense (§ 327).

§ 341. The accusative neuter of an adjective, singular or plural, serves as an adverb to qualify an intransitive verb. This use is mainly poetic, and is known as the adverbial accusative.

dulcē ridentem Lālāgēn āmābō.

my sweetly laughing Lalage I will love.

ācerbā tūens rētrō rēdit.

glaring sourly he draws back.

§ 342. Here may be noted the phrases *hōc gēnūs*, of this kind; *id gēnūs*, of that kind; *virilē sēcūs*, of the male sex; which are occasionally found instead of the positive of quality (§ 391); also *instār*, like, properly of the weight (cf.).

mihī concrēdit nūgās hōc gēnūs.

he confides to me trifles of this sort.

instār mūrī hae saepēs mūnimentā praebēbant.

these hedges presented barriers like a wall.

§ 343. Extent of space is expressed by the accusative.

nōs pēdem ē villā adhuc ēgressi nōn sūmūs.

so far I have not stepped a foot out of my country-house.

Caesār milīā passūm triā ab Helvētiōrum castris castrā pōnit.

Caesar pitches his camp three miles (lit. three thousand paces) from the camp of the Helvetii.

dūas fossās quindēcim pēdēs lātās perduxit.

he constructed two trenches fifteen feet broad.

§ 344. The time throughout which an action or state extends is expressed by the accusative.

Rōmulus septem ēt trigintā regnāvīt annōs.

Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.

Cātō annōs quinquē ēt octōgintā nātūs excessit ē vitā.

Cato died at the age of (lit. having been born) eighty-five years.

THE ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

§ 345. A list of the prepositions which are used with the accusative is given in § 255, and some of the more noticeable usages are illustrated in §§ 598, 600.

§ 346. Verbs compounded with *trans*, *across*, may have an accusative dependent on *trans*, in addition to the accusative of the object.

Caesār Germānōs flū mēn trācīt.

Caesar puts the Germani across the river.

NOTE.—The accusative dependent on *trans* is also found when the verb is passive; e.g., *Exercitūs flūmēn trāductūs est*, *The army was conveyed across the river.*

IV.—THE DATIVE CASE.

§ 347. The use of the dative falls under two main headings:—

(A.) Dative of the indirect object—i.e. the person or thing *affected* by the action of the verb (§§ 348—358).

(B.) Predicative dative, indicating that which a person or thing serves as or results in (§ 359).

(A.) DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT.

§ 348. The dative of the indirect object is found with transitive and intransitive verbs, active and passive.

Transitive.

virtūti ōpĕram dātō.

give attention to virtue.

h ōmīnībŭs ānīmŭs dātŭs est.

to men a mind has been given.

Intransitive.

impĕrīō illĕ pātrīs magnī pārērĕ pārābāt.

he was preparing to obey the command of his mighty sire.

mendācī h ōmīnī nōn crĕdītŭr.

no confidence is placed in a liar.

Obs. 1. That which is *affected* by an action (dative) being termed the “indirect object,” that which is *acted on* (accusative) is for distinction often called the “direct object.”

Obs. 2. The passive of intransitive verbs is used **impersonally only** (see § 303).

§ 349. Verbs which admit a dative of the indirect object are—

(1) Transitive verbs, such as those of *showing*, *telling*, and *giving*, which do not yield a complete sense when accompanied by a direct object only.

(2) Many verbs (transitive and intransitive) compounded with—

bĕnĕ, mālĕ, sātīs, rĕ-,

antĕ, ād, īn, intĕr, dĕ,

cum, sŭb, sŭpĕr, post, ōb, prae.

(3) All compounds of sum (except possum).

(4) Other intransitive verbs rendered by English transitive verbs signifying—

To please, obey, command, persuade.

Harm, pardon, spare, believe, and aid.

NOTE.—The most common verbs of this last class are:—

Verb (Indic. and Infin.).	Meaning.	Usual English rendering.
plāc-ēō, -ērē	<i>to be pleasing</i>	<i>to please</i>
pār-ēō, -ērē	<i>to be obedient</i>	<i>to obey</i>
serv-iō, -iērē	<i>to be a slave</i>	<i>to serve</i>
impēr-ō, -ārē	<i>to give orders</i>	<i>to command</i>
suād-ēō, -ērē	<i>to re-motivate</i>	<i>to persuade</i>
nōc-ēō, -ērē	<i>to be harmful</i>	<i>to harm</i>
ignosc-ō, -ērē	<i>to overlook (an offence)</i>	<i>to pardon</i>
indulg-ēō, -ērē	<i>to give way, be kind</i>	—
parc-ō, -ērē	<i>to be sparing</i>	<i>to spare</i>
crēd-ō, -ērē	<i>to trust, entrust</i>	<i>to trust, believe</i>
fid-ō, -ērē	<i>to have confidence</i>	<i>to trust</i>
auxili-ōr, -ārī	<i>to give help</i>	<i>to help</i>
fāv-ēō, -ērē	<i>to be favourable</i>	<i>to favour</i>
mēd-ēōr, -ērī	<i>to be a cure</i>	<i>to heal</i>

Obs. Delectō, *I delight*; iūvō, *I command*; iūvō, *I help or delight*; laedō, *I hurt*; sālō, *I heal*, are transitive verbs, and have a direct object in the accusative.

- (1) Aenēās rēgi mēmōrāt nōmenquē gēnusquē.
Aeneas recounts to the king his name and descent.
bellicōsis fātā Quirītibūs dicō.
I declare to the warlike Quirites their destiny.
- (2) āmicitiām omnībūs rēbūs hūmānīs antēpōnō.
I value friendship above all human things.
subvēnistī hōmīnī iam perditō.
you have come to the help of a man already lost.
- (3) nē dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.
let not roses be wanting to the feast.
nihil tibi littērae mēae prōdērunt.
my letter will do you no good.
- (4) nō bis nōcētūr. Parthī fūgae fidunt.
we are being injured. the Parthians trust to flight.

NOTE 1.—The dative of the indirect object is found with some verbs of *taking away*; e.g., *Nihil tibi detraxit senectūs, Old age has borne nothing off from you.* These verbs are *ādīmō*, *I take away*, and some compounds of *āb*, *dē*, *ex*.

NOTE 2.—A name is often attracted to agree in case with the dative substantive denoting the person to whom the name is given; e.g. *Pūcō Egeriō inditum nōmēn, The name Egerius was given to the boy.*

§ 350. The dative is used with adjectives and adverbs implying likeness or nearness, or any notion similar to that of a verb that is constructed with a dative of the indirect object. (For *sīmīlis*, see § 569.)

Belgae proximī sunt Germānis.

the Belgae are nearest to the Germani.

congruentēr nātūrae sapientēs vivunt.

wise men live agreeably to nature.

§ 351. The dative of advantage or disadvantage is a development of the dative of the indirect object; it is commonly rendered by “for” or “in honour of.”

nōn solum nōbīs divitēs esse vōlūmūs, sēd libērīs.

we wish to be rich not for ourselves only, but for our children.

Iūlus dūcīt āvō turmās.

Iulus leads squadrons in honour of his grandfather.

§ 352. Occasionally the dative expresses the person whose point of view the writer assumes.

illē clārūs ērit postgēnītīs.

he will be renowned in the eyes of posterity.

§ 353. A personal pronoun in the dative is sometimes introduced for dramatic effect, and indicates that the statement is one that concerns the person in question; this is called the *ethic dative*.

āt illē tībī pergīt Brundisium.

but, look you, he is going on to Brundisium.

quid mihī Celsus agit?

pray, what is Celsus doing?

Obs. 1. The term “ethic” is derived from the Greek *ἠθος* (*ēthōs*), a word used by writers on rhetoric to signify the influence exercised by a speaker’s personality.

Obs. 2. It should be noted that this ethic dative is found in Shakespearian English; e.g. “He plucked *me* ope his doublet,” “Knock *me* on this door.”

§ 354. The dative is sometimes used in a **possessive** sense, especially with substantives denoting parts of the body.

sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesārī ad pēdēs prōiēcērunt.
they all threw themselves at Caesar's feet weeping.

hōc multīs ērāt in ōrē.
this was in many people's mouths.

§ 355. The verb *sum* in the third person with a dative (of advantage) may often be rendered by the English verb *to have*.

sunt nobīs mīlīa pōmā.
we have million apples.

§ 356. The dative is used to express the **agent**, i.e. the person by whom an action is performed—

(1) regularly with the gerund, gerundive, or verbal adjective ending in *-bilis* (§ 269);

(2) sometimes (in both prose and poetry) with the perfect participle passive or a tense formed by the verb *sum* with that participle;

(3) occasionally in poetry and very rarely in prose with other tenses of the passive.

(1) sūo cuiquē iūdicīo est utendum (§ 586).

use must be made by each of his own judgment.

hōc faciendum imitandumquē est omnībūs.

this is to be done and imitated by all.

multīs illē bōnīs flēbīlīs occīdit.

he died lamented by many good men.

(2) cui nōn sunt audītae Dēmōsthēnīs vigīliae?

by whom have not Demosthenes' nights of work been heard of?

(3) hōnestā bōnīs vīrīs quaeruntūr.

honourable objects are sought by good men.

Obs. 1. The dative of the agent should not be used in translating English into Latin except with the gerund, gerundive, or verbal adjective ending in *-bilis*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the agent may be shown to fall under the heading of dative of the indirect object by rendering *Hōc faciendum est omnībūs* as *This is for all a thing to be done*.

§ 357. The place towards which motion takes place is occasionally in poetry expressed by the dative.

ūnus hōmō iūvēnum primōs tōt mīserīt Orcō?

shall one man have sent so many of the chief of the youths to Orcus?

lābentūr flūminā pontō.

ivers will glide on to the sea.

Obs. 1. This usage may be brought under the general heading of dative of the indirect object by understanding, for instance, in the above example the exact meaning to be *sent them for Orcus to receive*.

Obs. 2. The prose construction is *ad* and the accusative.

§ 358. The dative used in close connection with a substantive may indicate the purpose to which the latter is put. This is frequently called the dative of the work contemplated. Cp. § 430 (ii.).

dīēs collōquiō dictūs est.

a day for a parley was appointed.

(B.) PREDICATIVE DATIVE.

§ 359. A large number of substantives more or less abstract in meaning (most of them implying verbal action) are used in the dative singular to denote that which a person or thing serves as or results in. This dative stands (a) as secondary predicate of the subject of the sentence, or (b) as primary predicate of the direct object, and is known as the predicative dative.

(a) *haec mīhī sunt cūrae.*

these things are an anxiety to me.

maximō mīhī ūs ūī ērīs.

you will be of very great use to me.

(b) *ēquitātum auxiliō Caesārī Aedūī mīserant.*

the Aedui had sent cavalry as an aid to Caesar.

Obs. 1. A dative of the indirect object nearly always accompanies the predicative dative; hence the name of "double dative" is sometimes given to this construction.

Obs. 2. The predicative dative either has no attributive adjective or one denoting quantity (e.g. *magnūs*).

Obs. 3. In usage (b) the verb is one of *sending* or *placing*, or else *dārē*, *dūcērē* (*to consider*), or *hābērē*; in (a) the verb is *essē*, or a verb of *going*, or the passive of one of the above-mentioned verbs.

V.—THE LOCATIVE CASE.

§ 360. The locative case has, except in the words and classes of words enumerated below, become merged in the ablative; accordingly only those usages in which the locative has a form distinct from that of the ablative are here treated.

The locative denotes—

- (A.) the place where an action is performed;
- (B.) the time when an action is performed;
- (C.) certain forms denoting the value at which a person or thing is held have also been regarded as locative by some grammarians, and are here so classed.

(A.) LOCATIVE DENOTING PLACE WHERE.

§ 361. Place where, as expressed by the locative of—

(1) names of towns and small islands belonging to the first or second declension and singular in form (§§ 17, 20); (2) a few names of towns of the third declension singular (§ 37); (3) a few other words, of which the most common are *dōmūs* (*home*), *hūmūs* (*ground*), *rūs* (*country*), *bellum* (*war*), *militiā* (*warfare*), which have locatives *dōmī*, *hūmī*, *rūrī*, *bellī*, *militiāe*, respectively.

Rōmae rūs optās.

at Rome you wish for the country.

Pollex mihi Lānūvii praestō fuit.

Pollex was ready for me at Lanuvium.

militiāe quam dōmī respubiā mēliūs administrātā est.

public affairs were carried on better at the wars than at home.

NOTE.—Under this heading falls the use of *ānīmī* (locative of *ānīmūs*) with verbs and adjectives—e.g. *ānīmī pendēō*, *I am irresolute*; *aegēr ānīmī*, *sick at heart*. Also *cordī*, *dear* (e.g. *nōbīs cordī ēs*, *you are dear to us*, lit. *at our heart*), is locative of *cōr*.

(B.) LOCATIVE DENOTING TIME WHEN.

§ 362. In classical Latin only two substantives have distinct locative forms denoting time when—viz. *lux*, *light*, and *vespēr*, *evening*; their locatives are *lūcī* (*in daylight*) and *vespērī* (*in the evening*).

ād mē hērī vespērī vēnit Caesār.

Caesar came to me yesterday evening.

NOTE.—*Hērī* and some other adverbs were originally locatives.

(C.) EXPRESSIONS OF VALUE AND PRICE.

§ 363. The great or small value at which a person or thing is held is expressed by genitive singular neuter forms of certain adjectives, and genitive singular forms of certain substantives :—

tantī (tantūs, <i>so great</i>),	quantī (quantūs, <i>as great</i>)
magnī (magnūs, <i>great</i>),	maxīmī (maximūs, <i>very great</i>)
parvī (parvūs, <i>small</i>),	plūrimī (plūrimūs, <i>very much</i>)
flocī (flocūs, <i>flock of wool</i>),	minīmī (minimūs, <i>very small</i>)
nihilī (nihilum, <i>nothing</i>),	pīlī (pīlūs, <i>a hair</i>)
	pensī (pensum, <i>a weighty matter</i>)

quantī quisquē sē ipsē faciūt, tantī fit āb āmicīs.
at whatever price each values himself, at this price is he valued by his friends.

parvī sunt forīs armā nīsi est consiliū dōmī.
arms are of little value abroad, unless there is good counsel at home.

rem publicam floccī nōn faciīs.
you do not care a straw for the commonwealth (lit. *value at a flock of wool*).

Obs. These forms may be explained as genitives of quality. They have also been regarded as locatives indicating *position* in an imaginary scale of values.

§ 364. The following, which are undoubtedly genitive forms, were similarly used to express value :—

plūris (gen. sing. of plūs, neuter substantive, *more*),
 minōris (gen. sing. neut. of minōr, *smaller*).
 mēā mihi conscientiā plūris est quam omnium sermō.
a good conscience is of more value to me than what all say.

NOTE.—Assis (genitive of ās, a copper coin) was similarly used.

§ 365. Tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris are also used to denote the price at which a thing is bought or sold.

quantī emptum ?
at what price was it bought ?

Obs. The *ablative* of all other words must be used to denote price (§ 377).

VI.—THE ABLATIVE CASE.

§ 366. The usages of the ablative fall into three main divisions :—

(A.) **Local**, in which the ablative has absorbed (except in the instances mentioned in §§ 361—365) the functions of the locative.

(B.) **Instrumental**, in which the ablative has absorbed the functions of a lost instrumental case.

(C.) **Ablative proper**, signifying *separation*, the word “ablative” being formed from the supine base of *aufērō*, *I bear away*.

Obs. The ablative when used with a preposition (§§ 256, 257) may usually be classed without difficulty under one of these headings; *e.g.* the ablative with *in*, *prō*, or *sūb* is local, with *cum* instrumental, with *āb*, *dē*, *ex* ablative proper.

(A.) LOCAL ABLATIVE.

§ 367. The usages of the ablative which fall under the heading of “local” denote (1) the **place where** an action is performed, (2) the **time when** an action is performed.

§ 368. In prose **place where** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition only in the case of—

(a) names of towns or small islands belonging to the third declension or (if plural in form) to the first or second declension; (b) substantives accompanied by *mēdiūs*, *middle*, or *tōtūs*, *whole*, as an attribute;

(c) *terrā*, *mārī* (used in connection), *by land*, *by sea*;

dextrā, *on the right*; *laevā*, *on the left*;

lōcō (usually with an attribute), *lōcīs* (always with an attribute), from *lōcūs*, *place*;

partē, *partībūs* (always with an attribute), from *pars*, *part*;

rēgiōnē (with attribute or genitive), from *rēgiō*, *direction*.

(a) *hic Tibūrē nātūs est, illē Gābīis.*

one was born at Tibur, the other at Gabii.

Āthēnīs Crātippum audīebam.

at Athens I used to hear Cratippus' lectures.

Obs. 1. There are no names of towns or other place-names belonging to the fourth or fifth declension.

- (b) *carcēr mēdiā urbē aedificātūr.*
a prison is being built in the middle of the city.
tōtis castris undiquē ad consulēs currītūr.
throughout the camp there is a rush from all quarters
to the consuls.
- (c) *ōrātiō pūerilis est multis locis.*
the speech is in many passages puerile.
utrāquē partē Tiberis pōpūlātōrēs oppressit.
on each side of the Tiber he surprised plunderers.

Obs. 2. A preposition *may* be used with the words *locō*, etc.

NOTE.—If a substantive (e.g. *urbs*, *cit̃*; *oppidum*, *town*) stands in apposition to the name of a town expressing *place where* either by the locative or by the ablative, the preposition *in* is used with the ablative of that substantive; e.g. *Albae constitērant in urbē opportūnā*, *They had stopped at Alba, a convenient city.*

§ 369. In prose *place where* is expressed by the ablative with a preposition, except in accordance with the preceding rule, or where the locative may be used; but poets freely employ the local ablative without a preposition.

in eā civitatē duō dē principātū intēr sē contendēbant.
in that state two were contending for the sovereignty.

Caesār in Gallīā hibernā constitūt.
Caesar fixed his winter quarters in Gaul.

solā dōmō maerēt vācūā.—Vergil.
she mourns alone in the empty house.

§ 370. The ablative is used to limit the application of a substantive, adjective, or verb. This usage is called the *ablative of respect*, and falls under the general heading of “local” ablative.

nōn tōtā rē sēd tempōribūs errasti.
you have made a mistake not as to the whole matter but as
to dates.

hī omnēs linguā institūtis lēgībūs intēr sē diffērunt.
these all differ in language, customs, and laws.

Obs. This use of the ablative is very common in dependence on words expressing *plenty* or *want*; e.g. *Nōn egēō medicīnā*, *I do not require a remedy.*

§ 371. The time when an action is performed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Ārābēs campōs hīēmē ēt a estātē pēragrant.
the Arabs wander about the country in winter and in summer.
 hōrā diēi dēcīmā Rōmam pervēnī.
I reached Rome at the tenth hour of the day.

§ 372. The time within which an action is performed is also expressed by the ablative.

Āgāmemnōn vix dēcem annīs urbem ūnam cēpīt.
in ten years Agamemnon barely took one city.

NOTE.—The preposition *in* is used with the ablative when a distributive or adverbial numeral forms part of the expression; *e.g.* *Indē vix tēr in annō nuntīum audimūs, We receive news thence barely three times a year.*

(B.) INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

§ 373. In the usages which fall under this heading the ablative expresses, as did the lost instrumental case, either the instrument or some accompaniment of an action, in both of which characters it answers to the English preposition “with.”

§ 374. The ablative of the instrument denotes the thing by means of which an action is performed, and is found with active and passive verbs alike.

mēā ōpērā Tārentum rēcēpistī.
by my help you recovered Tarentum.
 nōn virībūs aut vēlōcītātē rēs magnae gēruntūr.
great things are not achieved by strength or swiftness.

§ 375. The ablative of the agent—*i.e.* of the person by whom an action is performed—cannot stand without the preposition *ā, ab*, and is found with passive verbs only.

Sōphōclēs ā filiīs in iudīcium vōcātūs est.
Sophocles was prosecuted by his sons.

Obs. 1. The ablative of the agent is placed here in order that it may be contrasted with ablative of the instrument; strictly speaking it falls under the heading of “ablative proper,” the agent being regarded as the *source* of action.

Obs. 2. For the dative of the agent, see § 356.

§ 376. The instrumental ablative expresses the road by which a journey is performed.

ibam fortē viā sacrā.

I was walking by chance along the sacred way.

§ 377. The price for which a thing is bought or sold is put in the ablative case, the price being regarded as the instrument of purchase.

sāl impensō prētiō vēnībāt.

salt was being sold at a high price.

NOTE 1.—The genitive forms *tantī, quantī, plūris, mīnōris*, are used instead of the ablative to express price; e.g. "*Quantī emptum?*" "*Parvō.*" "*Quantī ergō?*" "*Octussibūs.*" "*At what price was it bought?*" "*At a low price.*" "*At what price, now?*" "*For eight asses.*"

Obs. The ablatives *magnō, permagnō, plūrimō, parvō, mīnimō* are used without a substantive as ablatives of price.

NOTE 2.—With the verb *aestimō, I value*, the ablative singular neuter of *tantūs, quantūs, magnūs, parvūs*, etc., may be used instead of the genitive form (§ 363); e.g. *Virtutem magnō aestimō, I value virtue greatly.*

§ 378. The ablative of measure indicates by how much one thing differs from another.

Caesār lēgiōnem passibūs cc āb ēō tūmūlō constitūt.

Caesar halted the legion 200 paces from that mound.

proellum ēquestre paucis antē diēbūs ērāt factum.

a cavalry engagement had taken place a few days before.

Obs. Distinguish this ablative of measure in expressions such as *dēcem annis antē* or *post* (*ten years before* or *after*, lit. *before* or *after by ten years*) from the ablative of time in *dēcimq; annō antē* or *post* (*in the tenth year before* or *after*).

§ 379. An ablative, apparently local but really instrumental, is found with the verbs *tēnēō* or *continēō, I hold*; *rēcipīō, I withdraw*; *abdō, I conceal*.

Ariovistūs castris sē tēnēbāt.

Ariovistus was keeping within his camp.

§ 380. The ablative of cause is an extended use of the instrumental ablative.

vīrēs eum lassitūdīnē dēfēcērunt.

his strength failed him owing to fatigue.

§ 381. Various accompaniments of an action are expressed by the ablative, the largest class being those denoted by the ablative of manner. A substantive used in the ablative to express manner must be accompanied by (1) the preposition *cum*, or (2) an adjective, except (3) in the case of a few words, of which the most important are:—

mōdō, dōlō, silentiō, clāmōrē,
vī, rātiōnē, fraudē, artē, mōrē,
iniuriā, consensū, cāsū, iūrē.

- (1) nōs illūd idēm cum pācē āgēmūs.

we will do that same thing peacefully.

summā cum cēlērītātē ad exercitum rēdīt.

he returned to the army with the greatest speed.

- (2) incrēdibīlī cēlērītātē dē victōriā Caesārīs
fāmā perfertūr.

with incredible swiftness the news is brought of Caesar's victory.

- (3) aut vī aut fraudē fīt iniuriā.

wrong is done by force or fraud.

Obs. From the above rule it may be seen that manner may be expressed in four ways; e.g. the sentence *I came with speed* may be rendered (1) *cēlērītēr vēnī*, (2) *cum cēlērītātē vēnī*, (3) *summā cum cēlērītātē vēnī*, (4) *summā cēlērītātē vēnī*; but *cēlērītātē* must not be used to denote manner without *cum* or an attribute.

§ 382. The ablative of description is always accompanied by an attribute, and usually expresses some temporary or external characteristic, less often a mental quality.

Britannī cāpillō sunt prōmissō.

the Britons are long-haired.

Cātilīnā fūit magnā vī ēt ānimī ēt corpōris, sēd
ingēniō mālō prāvōquē.

*Catiline was a man of great mental and bodily power,
but of an evil and corrupt disposition.*

Obs. 1. This usage may be regarded as a development of the ablative of manner.

Obs. 2. Contrast the genitive of quality (§ 394).

§ 383. With a substantive in the ablative (a) a participle, (b) an adjective, or (c) another substantive may stand predicatively. This construction is known as the ablative of attendant circumstances or ablative absolute.

(a) *Caesār, expōsitō exercitū ēt lōcō castris idōnēō captō, ād hostēs contendit.*

the troops having been landed and a fit position for the camp secured, Caesar hastens against the enemy.

Obs. 1. In the above example there are two instances of the ablative of attendant circumstances: the first consists of *expōsitō* used predicatively with *exercitū*, the second of *captō* similarly used with *lōcō*. The predicative character of *captō* here may be seen by comparing it with *idōnēō*, which stands as attribute to *lōcō*—*lōcō idōnēō* is a fit place, but *lōcō captō* is a place having been taken, not a taken place.

(b) *exīgūa partē aestātis rēliqūa Caesār in Brītaniam prōficiēci contendit.*

a small part of the summer being left, Caesar hastens to set out for Britain.

(c) *illē Caepiōnē ēt Philippō itērum consūlibus mortuus est.*

he died when Caepio and Philippus were consuls for the second time.

Obs. 2. The name of ablative absolute was given by the old grammarians to the ablative of attendant circumstances, because they regarded it as standing free (*absolutūs*) from the rest of the sentence; it is probably an instrumental ablative.

(C.) THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

§ 384. The place from which motion takes place is expressed by the ablative without a preposition if it is denoted by the name of a town or small island, or by *dōmō*, *from home*; *hūmō*, *from the ground*; *rūrē*, *from the country*.

Pompēiūs Lūcēriā prōficiēciūr Cānūsium.

Pompeius sets out from Luceria for Canusium.

multī dōmō exīrē nōlēbant.

many were unwilling to leave home.

Obs. 1. With any other words a preposition must be used; e.g. *Dūcītē āb urbē dōmum, mēā carminā, dūcītē Daphnīm*, *Draw Daphnis, my songs, draw Daphnis home from the city.*

Obs. 2. The above rule (§ 384) applies only to expressions implying motion. A preposition is required to express distance; e.g. *Tum Brūtūs āb Rōmā ābērāt, At that time Brutus was away from Rome.*

NOTE 1.—If a substantive (e.g. *urbs, city; oppīdum, town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town from which motion takes place, a preposition is used with that substantive; e.g. *Vercingētōrix expellītūr ex oppīdō Gergōviā, Vercingetorix is driven out of the town of Gergovia.* (Cp. § 331, NOTE 1.)

NOTE 2.—The place from which motion takes place is occasionally expressed in poetry by means of the ablative without a preposition, even when the substantive is not the name of a town, etc.; e.g. *Frātrēs Lyciā missōs occidit, He slays the brothers sent from Lycia.*

§ 385. An ablative of separation without a preposition is used in dependence on words compounded with one of the prepositions *āb, dē, ex*, or the verbs *cēdō, I withdraw; mōvēō, I set in motion*, and a few others.

Caesār omnēs cōpiās castris educīt.

Caesar leads all his forces out from the camp.

Obs. 1. Even with the above verbs a preposition is commonly used; e.g. *Helvētī ē finibūs suis exēunt, The Helvetii leave their territories.*

Obs. 2. For the dative with verbs of taking away, see § 349, NOTE 1.

NOTE.—So, too, *libēr cūrā, free from anxiety; vacūus igni, devoid of fire*, etc.

§ 386. A substantive denoting a person or family may be used in the ablative to express origin.

nātē dēā, pōtēs hōc sūb cāsū dūcērē somnōs?

Goddess-born, canst thou at this emergency prolong slumber?

§ 387. The ablative is used to express the standard of comparison, i.e. that from which the subject or object of the sentence diverges in respect of the quality denoted by a comparative adjective or adverb.

nihil est otīosā sēnectūtē iucundiūs.

nothing is more pleasant than a calm old age.

sōl multīs partībūs est terrā māiōr.

the sun is many times greater than the earth.

Obs. 1. In this example the sun is measured by its divergence from the "standard of comparison"—viz. the earth. *Multīs partībūs* is ablative of measure (§ 378).

Obs. 2. *Quam* than, may always be used instead of the ablative of the "standard of comparison." See § 593.

VII.—THE GENITIVE CASE.

§ 388. The cases hitherto treated stand, in the great majority of their usages, in direct relation to the verb; the genitive, on the other hand, serves primarily to indicate the relation of one substantive to another—a relation which in English is for the most part expressed by the preposition *of*. The employment of the genitive with verbs and adjectives is of secondary importance.

§ 389. The usages of the genitive, which are very various, may be conveniently arranged as follows:—

(A.) **Attributive** genitive, the substantive in the genitive standing in the relation of **attribute to another substantive**.

(B.) **Predicative** genitive, the substantive in the genitive forming a predicate (usually with the verb *sum*).

(C.) **Objective** genitive, the substantive in the genitive being the object of action expressed by an intransitive verb or implied in a substantive or adjective.

(A.) THE ATTRIBUTIVE GENITIVE.

§ 390. The following usages of the genitive are included under the heading “attributive”:—

- (i) Genitive of the **possessor or author** (§ 391).
- (ii) **Subjective** genitive (§ 392).
- (iii) Genitive of **material** (§ 393).
- (iv) Genitive of **quality** (§ 394).
- (v) **Partitive** genitive, or genitive of the divided whole (§ 395).

§ 391. The genitive denoting the possessor or author corresponds to the English possessive case.

nōn Diōmēdis ēquōs, nec currum cernīs Achillīs.
thou seest not Diomedes' horses, nor Achilles' chariot.

pērūtīlēs Xēnōphontīs librī sunt.
Xenophon's books are very useful.

NOTE.—The substantive on which the genitive depends is sometimes omitted if easily understood; e.g. *Ventum ērat ad Vēstae*, *We had come to Vesta's temple*. (Compare the English usage “St. Paul's.”)

§ 392. The **subjective** genitive denotes the subject of the verbal action implied in the substantive on which it is dependent.

hostēs Rōmānōrum adventum expectābant.
the enemy were awaiting the arrival of the Romans.

sententiā iūdicum est liberātus.
he was discharged by the verdict of the jury.

Obs. The "subjective" character of the genitive in the former example may be seen by using in place of *adventum* the corresponding verbal construction, "The enemy were waiting until the Romans arrived"; here "Romans" is clearly subject to "arrived."

NOTE.—The corresponding possessive adjective is used instead of the subjective genitive of a personal pronoun; *e.g.* *Caesar suā senātusque in eum beneficiā commemorāvit*, *Caesar recounted his own and the senate's kindnesses towards him.*

§ 393. The **genitive of material** expresses that of which or in which a thing consists.

formicae pōpulant ingentem farris ācervum.
the ants are plundering a huge heap of spelt.
 rerum cōpiā verbōrum cōpiam gignit.
abundance of matter produces abundance of words.

§ 394. The **genitive of quality** expresses some inherent or leading characteristic which serves to classify the substantive on which it is dependent, and therein differs from the ablative of description (§ 382), which for the most part denotes a temporary or external characteristic. This genitive (like the ablative of description) is always accompanied by an attribute.

Tītus Manlius vir erat priscae sēvēritātis.
Titus Manlius was a man of old-fashioned sternness.

~ magni pondēris saxa in mūrō collocārant.
they had placed in the wall stones of great weight.

Caesar diērum itēr quadrāgintā prōcessit.
Caesar advanced forty days' march.

§ 395. The **partitive genitive** (better called the **genitive of the divided whole**) expresses the *whole*, of which that denoted by the substantive on which it depends forms a part.

mīnūs hābēō vīrīum quam vestrum ūtervis.

I have less strength than either of you.

Obs. The forms *nostrum, vestrum* are used as **partitive genitives**; *nostrī, vestrī* as **objective genitives** (§ 397).

NOTE 1.—The genitive singular neuter of an adjective of the first class (§ 80) may be used substantively as a **partitive genitive** with *aliquid, multum, nihil*, etc. (nom. or acc.); e.g. *nihil novī, nothing new*.

NOTE 2.—In poetry the **partitive genitive** sometimes depends on a neuter adjective used substantively in the plural; e.g. *cunctā terrarum, all lands*.

NOTE 3.—The **partitive genitive** is found with some adverbs of place; e.g. *ubi terrarum? where in the world?*

(B.) THE PREDICATIVE GENITIVE.

§ 396. A genitive (*a*) of the possessor or author or (*b*) of quality may be used as a secondary predicate, and is then termed a **predicative genitive**.

(*a*) *omniā quae mulieris fuerunt viri fiunt.*

all that was the woman's becomes the husband's.

tēmēritās est flōrentis aetātis, prūdentiā sēnescentis.

rashness belongs to the prime of life, discretion to its close.

(*b*) *tuae litterae maximī sunt apud mē pondēris.*

your letter is of great weight with me.

Obs. When the subject in usage (*a*) is an infinitive (e.g. *Hōminis est errārē*), the usual translation is *It is the characteristic* (or *function or duty*) of . . .

(C.) THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

§ 397. The genitive is used with certain classes of verbs to express the **matter with regard to which** the action takes place. These verbs are enumerated in the following rhyme:—

mīsērēōr, such verbs as mean *remind*,

Forget, and some impersonals* we find

With genitives constructed; class with them

Fill, lack, abound, accuse, acquit, condemn.

* *mē hūiūs taedēt, mīsērēt,*
vēl pigēt, pūdet, paenitēt.

That is to say, the genitive expresses the matter with regard to which a person—

(a) *feels pity* (*miserēōr*, *I feel pity*), or some emotion expressed by one of the impersonal verbs *miserēt*, *paenitēt*, *pigēt*, *pūdet*, *taedet* (§ 232);

(b) *reminds* another or *is reminded*, or *forgets*;

(c) *lacks* or *abounds*, or *makes to abound* (i.e. *fills*);

(d) *brings upon* another or *suffers accusation*, *acquittal*, or *condemnation*.

(a) *nātiquē patrisquē miserērē.*

take pity on father and on son.

mē civitātis mōram pigēt taedetquē.

I am disgusted and wearied with the morals of the state.

Obs. 1. When an impersonal verb is used, the person who feels pity, etc., is expressed by an accusative.

Obs. 2. There are in addition to *miserēōr* three verbs meaning *to pity*—viz. *miserescō* (used in poetry only), which is constructed with a genitive, and *miserōr*, *commiserōr*, both transitive verbs of the first conjugation, regularly constructed with a direct object in the accusative.

(b) *adversae dēindē rēs admōnūerunt religiōnum.*

misfortunes subsequently put us in mind of religious duties.

vētēris contūmēliae obliviscī vōlō.

I am willing to forget an old insult.

Obs. 3. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* are often constructed with the accusative when the subject is an eye-witness; e.g. *Cinnam mēmīni*, *I remember Cinna*. (*Rēcordōr* nearly always governs the accusative.)

(c) *ēgēt a eris Cappadōcum rex.*

the king of the Cappadocians is in want of money.

hic error formidīnis Samnitēs implēvīt.

this mistake filled the Samnites with alarm.

Obs. 4. The ablative is also used in this connection (see § 370, *Obs.*).

(d) *mē timōris argūunt.*

they accuse me of fear.

accūsātōrēs ērant ipsī ambitūs condemnātī.

the accusers had themselves been convicted of bribery.

Obs. 5. Note the phrase *căpitis damnare*, to condemn on a capital charge, and also some (*e.g.* *damnatus longi laboris*, condemned to protracted toil) in which the genitive is used to denote the penalty instead of the charge.

§ 398. Substantives and adjectives corresponding to verbs included in the preceding section are constructed with an objective genitive, as may be seen from the following examples:—

Cătilină mēmōr fūit priscae dignitātis suae.
Catiline was mindful of his former rank.

Galliā est plēnā civiū Rōmānōrum.
Gaul is full of Roman citizens.

multis immīnēt damnātiō ambitūs.
conviction for bribery hangs over the head of many.

§ 399. Many other substantives and adjectives implying verbal action may be constructed with an objective genitive; such are—

<i>ămōr</i> , love	<i>ăvidūs</i> , greedy
<i>cūră</i> , care	<i>ēdax</i> , devouring
<i>fūgă</i> , flight	<i>pătīens</i> , enduring
<i>ōdiūm</i> , hatred	<i>pērītūs</i> , skilled

vincēt ămōr pătīriae laudum quē immensă cūpidō.
love of fatherland and boundless desire for praise will prevail.

hostēs lōcōrum sciētēs ērant.
the enemy were acquainted with the locality.

Obs. 1. The objective character of the genitive in the former example may be seen by using in place of *ămōr* and *cūpidō* respectively the corresponding verbal constructions *ămō pătīam* and *cūpiō laudēs*, in which *pătīam* and *laudēs* are direct objects of the verb (*cp.* § 392).

The term “objective genitive” is commonly restricted to the usages mentioned in this section and the preceding one.

Obs. 2. Note the difference between *pătīens lăbōris*, capable of enduring toil, and *pătīens lăbōrem*, (actually) enduring toil; in the former *pătīens* is used adjectivally, in the latter as a participle governing the same case as its finite verb.

OTHER USAGES.

§ 400. Poets and later prose writers employ the genitive to express that in respect of which an adjective is applicable to its substantive.

ō sēri stūdiōrum!

O ye late learned!

hōc Hēlymūs faciūt, hōc aevi mātūrūs Ācestēs.

this Helymus does, and Aevus ripe in age.

§ 401. In many instances—among them the following—the genitive is probably due to a conscious imitation of Greek usages:—

iustitiāenē priūs mirer bellinē lābōrum?

am I to wonder first at your justice or your toils in war?

dēsine mollium tandem quērēlarum.

cease at length from manly regrets.

Daunūs āgrestium regnāvīt pōpūlōrum.

Daunus reigned over country tribes.

Obs. For the genitives of value and price (plūris, etc.), see §§ 364-5.

VIII.—THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ 402. Poets frequently use the plural of concrete substantives where the sense requires the singular. This is done to add dignity to the expression or to suit the metre.

mirātūr clipeum Vulcāni, dōnā pārentis.

he admires the shield of Vulcan, his mother's gift.

NOTE.—The first person plural is sometimes used, out of modesty real or assumed, for the first person singular; e.g. saepe sōli sūmūs, *I am often alone.*

Obs. For Latin plural substantives rendered by the singular in English, see §§ 58, 59.

§ 403. An abstract substantive may be used in the plural where it (a) has a genitive plural dependent on it, or (b) denotes actions or states involving the quality which the abstract substantive expresses.

(a) Lysandēr prōcērītātēs arbōrum admirātūs est.

Lysander admired the height of the trees.

(b) vērās āmicitiāe sempiternae sunt.

true friendships are everlasting.

§ 404. Pronominal adjectives which in the singular refer to two persons or things are in the plural used of two classes or groups; e.g. Neutēr altērum cernēbāt, *Neither perceived the other*; Neutri altērōs cernēbant, *Neither party perceived the other.*

§ 405. SUMMARY OF THE CHIEF CASE-USAGES.

ACCUSATIVE (§§ 325—346).

EXTERNAL.	§ 326. Object of Transitive Verb :	<i>divitiās despiciō.</i>
	§ 330. Object of Factive Verb :	<i>tē faciūmus deam.</i>
	§ 333. Goal of Verb of Motion— with preposition :	<i>In Galliā contendō.</i> "
	§§ 331-2. Goal of Verb of Motion— without preposition (only town, small island, dōmūs, rūs, or supine) :	<i>Rōmam contendō; dormitum ibō</i>
INTERNAL.	§ 335. Cognate Object of Intran- sitive Verb :	<i>longam irē viā.</i>
	§ 336. Object of Verb (of <i>asking</i> or <i>teaching</i>) with External Object :	<i>otium divos rogō.</i> *
	§ 339. Extent of Action :	<i>egō illud tibi assentiōr.</i>
	§ 340. Part Affected (poetic) :	<i>equus trēmīt artus.</i>
	§ 341. Adverbial (n. adj., poetic) :	<i>acerbā tueris, you look sour.</i>
	§ 343. Extent of Space :	<i>Caesar millē passūs processit.</i>
	§ 344. Extent of Time :	<i>Caesar quinquē diēs commorātus est.</i>

DATIVE (§§ 347—359).

INDIRECT OBJECT.	§ 348. Indirect Object Proper (with Verbs) :	<i>virtutē opēram datō; captivis parcam; captivis parcetūr.</i>
	§ 350. With Adjectives and Adverbs :	<i>grātus eram tibi.</i>
	§ 351. Advantage or Disadvantage :	<i>ducit avē turmās.</i>
	§ 353. Ethic :	<i>quid mihi Celsus agit?</i>
	§ 354. Possessive :	<i>hōc multis erat in ore.</i>
	§ 355. With <i>sum</i> (= <i>to have</i>) :	<i>sunt nobis mīlīa pōmā.</i>
	§ 356. Agent—with gerund, gerundive, or adj. in -bilis (normal) :	<i>haec Caesarī erant agendā.</i>
	Agent—with perf., pluperf., or fut. perf. (occasional) :	<i>cui haec nōn sunt auditā?</i>
PREDICATIVE.	Agent—with pres., imperf., or fut. (poetic and rare) :	<i>nōn cernitūr ulli.</i>
	§ 358. Purpose :	<i>diēs collōquiō dictus est.</i>
	§ 359. Predicate of the Subject (with dative of indirect object) :	<i>haec mihi sunt cūrae.</i>
	Predicate of the Object (with dative of indirect object) :	<i>equitātum auxiliō Caesarī mittunt.</i>

LOCATIVE (§§ 360—365).

PLACE WHERE.	§ 361. Town or small island, 1st or 2nd decl. sing. :	<i>Rōmae, Cōrinthi, Tārenti habītabam.</i>
	The words <i>dōmī, hūmī, rūri, bellī, militīae, ānīmī.</i>	
	TIME WHEN. § 362. <i>Lūci, vespēri.</i>	

GEN. VALUE. § 363. *Tanti, quanti, magni, etc.: virtūsmagnī habēātūr.*

or LOC. PRICE. § 365. *Tanti, quanti: quantū emptum?*

ABLATIVE (§§ 366—387).

LOCAL.	§ 369. Place where—with preposition:	Caesār in Galliā ērat.
	§ 368. " " without " in prose only in case of—	in prose only in case of—
	(a) town or small island, 1st or 2nd declension plural or 3rd declension:	Āthēnīs, Thūriīs, Tibūrē, Gādībūs hābitābam.
	(b) substantives with mediūs or totūs:	carcēr mediā urbē aedificātūr.
	(c) terrā mārīquē, dextrā, laevā, lōcō, partē, rēgiōnē.	tōtā rē errastī.
INSTRUMENTAL.	§ 370. Respect:	hōrā dēcimā pervēnī.
	§ 371. Time when:	Āgāmemnōn vix dēcem annīs
	§ 372. " within which:	urbem ūnam cēpit.
	§ 374. Instrument:	Galliā Ōcēānō continētūr.
	§ 376. Road:	ibam viā sācrā.
ABLATIVE PROPER.	§ 377. Price:	parvō emptum.
	§ 378. Measure or Amount of Difference:	proelium paucīs antē diēbūs ērat factum.
	§ 380. Cause:	fāmē ēt siti mōrīōr.
	§ 381. Manner—with preposition:	cum cēlērītātē vēnī.
	" with attribute:	summā cēlērītātē vēnī.
ATTRIBUTIVE.	" without preposition or attribute:	certain words only.
	§ 382. Description (with attribute):	Britānnī cāpillō sunt prōmissō.
	§ 383. Attendant Circumstances:	Caesār expositō exercitū ad hostēs contendīt.
	§ 384. Place whence motion takes place:	ab urbē rēdī.
	with preposition:	ab urbē rēdī.
PREDICATIVE.	without " (only town, small island, or dōmō, hūmō, rūrē):	Rōmā rēdī; dōmō prōficiēscār.
	§ 385. Separation:	Caesār cōpiās castrīs ēdūcīt.
	§ 386. Origin:	Aenēās nātūs est dēā.
	§ 375. Agent (the source of action)—with preposition:	Clētaemnestrā ā filiō occisā est.
	§ 387. Standard of Comparison:	sōl est terrā maiōr.
GENITIVE (§§ 388—401).		
ATTRIBUTIVE.	§ 391. Possessor or Author:	Dīomēdis ēquōs cernō.
	§ 392. Subjective:	Rōmānōrum adventum exspectō.
	§ 393. Material:	formīcae pōpulant farris ācervum.
	§ 394. Quality (with attribute):	magnī pondēris saxā collōcō.
	§ 395. Partitive or Divided Whole:	hōrum fortissīmī sunt Belgae.
OBJECTIVE.		
§ 396. Possessor:	Quality:	hōmīnis est errārē.
		tūae littērae maxīmī sunt pondērī
§ 397. With verbs:		mē tīmōris argūnt.
	§§ 398, 399. " adjectives:	Galliā est plēnā civiūm.
	§§ 398, 399. " substantives:	vincēt āmōr patriae.

CHAPTER XXXIX.—VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

§ 406. The chief usages of the verbal substantives and adjectives included in the tables of conjugations (see §§ 125—129) are here treated in the following order:—

Substantives	{	The infinitive (active and passive) and its tenses (§§ 408—420).
		The supine (§§ 421—422).
		The gerund (§§ 423—429).
Adjectives	{	The gerundive (§§ 430—432).
		The present participle active (§§ 433—437).
		The future participle active (§§ 438—439).
		The perfect participle passive and deponent (§§ 440—446).

§ 407. These forms each have one or more of the following verbal characteristics: (*a*) voice, (*b*) tense, (*c*) construction with an object, (*d*) in the case of the verbal substantives, qualification by adverbs, not by adjectives. On the other hand they are, with the exception of the infinitive, declined as substantives or adjectives.

THE INFINITIVE.

§ 408. The infinitive is an indeclinable neuter substantive, and stands to the finite verb of the sentence in the relation of **subject**, **predicate**, or **object**; but, inasmuch as it implies verbal action, it may have a subject of its own, and also an object (direct or indirect) in the same case as the object of the finite verb from which it is formed.

Obs. The subject of the infinitive is in the nominative case when the infinitive is used either as primary predicate (historic infinitive, § 415) or as secondary predicate (§ 409, *b*). Except in these two usages the subject of the infinitive is in the **accusative** case. (See § 411, *Obs.*)

§ 409. The infinitive used as a nominative may serve as
(*a*) subject of a finite verb, (*b*) **secondary predicate** (§ 307).

(*a*) *dulcē ēt dēcorū est prō patriā mōri.*
to die for one's country is sweet and befitting.

haec olim meminissē iuvābūt.

to remember these things will some day afford delight.

(b) lectitā vissē Plātōnem Dēmōsthēnēs dīcītūr.

Demosthenes is said to have been in the habit of reading Plato.

dī bēātī essē intellēguntūr.

it is understood that the gods are happy (lit. the gods are understood to be happy).

Obs. 1. When the finite verb is one expressing *opinion*, the personal construction is used in preference to the impersonal; so too with *vidēōr*, *I seem*; *iūbēōr*, *I am commanded*; *vētōr*, *I am forbidden*.

Obs. 2. Verbs which in their finite forms have a secondary predicate in the same case as the subject (§ 323) are similarly constructed in the infinitive; e.g. in the second example in (b) above *bēātī* is nominative to agree with *dī*, and in the third example in § 411 *perfectā* is accusative to agree with *haec*.

The rule holds even when the subject of the infinitive is not expressed; e.g. *Magnis in laudibus fuit victōrem Olympiae citārī*, *To be proclaimed victor at Olympia was a great distinction*.

NOTE.—When *essē* stands as a subject of the sentence, the predicative adjective accompanying it is usually attracted into agreement with the substantive to which it refers; e.g. *Licuit Themistocli essē otīosō*, *To be at leisure was lawful to Themistocles*. But also: *Cūr his essē libērōs nōn licēt?* *Why may not these be free?* (See Obs. 2.)

§ 410. The infinitive used as an accusative serves as the object of a verb.

Caesār mātūrāt āb urbē prōficiscī.

Caesar hastens his departure from the city.

numquam dignē sātīs laudārī phīlōsōphīā pōtērīt.

philosophy can never be really worthily praised.

fīliūm ēquītārē dōcūi.

I taught my son riding.

Obs. 1. In the first example the infinitive is the external object of a transitive verb; in the second it is the internal object of an intransitive verb; and in the third it is the internal object of *dōcūi* (cp. § 336).

Obs. 2. With the passive of *dōcēō*, *iūbēō*, or *vētō* the infinitive is retained (cp. the retained accusative, § 337); e.g. *Puer doctus est sagittas tendere*, *The boy has been taught to aim arrows*.

§ 411. The infinitive and its own subject (in the accusative case) together stand as the direct object of a verb of saying, or one expressing some mental process, such as perceiving, thinking, rejoicing, wishing, or the verbs iūbēō, vētō. This is known as the accusative and infinitive construction.

vōs sǎpĕrĕ ēt sōlōs āiō bĕnĕ vivĕrĕ.

I declare that you have good sense and alone live aright.

nīhīl essĕ pĕrīcūlī sensīmūs.

we perceived that there was no danger.

haec perfectā essĕ gaudĕō.

I am glad that these things are finished.

vīm vōlūmūs exstinguī.

we want violence to be stamped out.

lex pĕrĕgrīnum vētāt īn mūrūm ascēdĕrĕ.

the law forbids a foreigner to go up on to the wall.

Obs. The use of the accusative as the subject of an infinitive probably originated in sentences in which the accusative was at first the object of a finite verb; e.g. in *Sentiō eum sequī*, *I perceive him to be following*, the case of *eum* is in origin due to the transitive verb *sentiō*.

NOTE.—Instead of *dīcō* followed by *nōn*, *nĕgō* is used; e.g. *Illĕ vĕrūm plānĕ nĕgāt essĕ*, *He distinctly says that truth does not exist.*

§ 412. The accusative and infinitive construction is also found with expressions kindred in meaning to some verb included in the above rule, e.g.—

certiōr fiō, *I am informed.*

incrĕdībilĕ est, *it is incredible.*

fāmā est, *there is a rumour.*

ōpīnō est, *there is a notion.*

(mīhī) vēnīt īn mentem, *it occurs to (me).*

Caesār certiōr factūs est hostēs sūb montē consēdissĕ.
Caesar was informed that the enemy had posted themselves at the foot of the mountain.

§ 413. The use of the infinitive in exclamations falls under the heading of “accusative and infinitive,” dependent on some verb which is not expressed.

mēnĕ inceptō dēsistĕrĕ victam?

what, I draw back defeated from a task begun?

§ 414. The continuous use of the accusative and infinitive in reports of speeches, etc., known as **indirect discourse** or **oratiō obliquā**, is treated in Chapter XLVI. (pp. 265-271).

§ 415. In the construction known as **historic infinitive**, the infinitive takes the place of primary predicate to the subject of the sentence, and is thus practically equivalent to a finite verb; the subject is in the nominative case. This usage is found in graphic narrative, and is confined to the present infinitive.

multī sēquī fūgērē, occīdī cāpī.

many were following or fleeing, being slain or being taken prisoners.

POETIC USAGES OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 416. In the usages already noticed the infinitive stands as a verbal substantive either in the nominative or in the accusative; it is for the most part only in poetry that the infinitive stands as any other case, the gerund or some other construction being used instead.

§ 417. The infinitive in most of these poetic usages is equivalent to a dative of purpose (§ 358), and is dependent on (a) a substantive, (b) an adjective or participle. (c) a verb.

(a) *tempūs est iam hinc ābīrē mē.*

it is already time for me to go hence.

This use of *tempūs* is found in prose.

(b) *audax omniā perpētī gens hūmānā rūit pār vētītum nēfās.*
bold to endure all things, the race of men rushes headlong through forbidden sin.

The prose construction would be *audax ād omniā perpētīendā* (§ 430, i.).

(c) *quem vīrum sūmīs cēlēbrārē, Clīo?*

what hero, Clīo, dost thou select to glorify?

lōricam dōnāt h ā b ē r ē vīrō.

he presents to the hero a cuirass to keep.

The prose construction would be *quam hābēāt* (§ 501, c).

Obs. The infinitive was originally a case-form—usually the dative—of a verbal substantive. This would account for its force in the above usages; e.g. the last two examples may be rendered, *What hero dost thou take for (the purpose of) praising? He presents to the hero a cuirass for keeping.*

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 418. In the accusative and infinitive construction—

the present infinitive is used of an action contemporaneous with that of the finite verb ;

the perfect infinitive is used of an action prior to that of the finite verb ;

the future infinitive is used of an action subsequent to that of the finite verb.

This is perfectly natural and regular, and would not require pointing out were it not that in the English rendering of the accusative and infinitive construction the principal verb, *if in a past tense*, causes a change in the tense of the verb in the dependent clause. Contrast the following, in which the speaker reports what he said on a former occasion :—

Original Statement.	Report of Statement.
errās. <i>you are making a mistake.</i>	dixī tē errārē. <i>I said you were making a mistake.</i>
errābās. <i>you were making a mistake.</i>	{ dixī tē errāvissē. <i>I said you had made (or had been making) a mistake.</i>
errastī. <i>you made or have made a mistake.</i>	
errābīs. <i>you will make a mistake.</i>	dixī tē errātūrum essē. <i>I said you would make a mistake.</i>

Obs. 1. Sometimes the past tense in the English dependent clause represents a past tense in the original statement; *e.g.* "He told me to-day that John was ill yesterday" reports the statement "John was ill yesterday." The student will never be in doubt as to the tense of the infinitive to be used in Latin if he will consider what tense was used in the original statement, and represent a present tense in the original statement by the present infinitive, a past tense by the perfect infinitive, and the future by the future infinitive.

Obs. 2. For the future infinitive active or passive a consecutive clause introduced by **fōrē ūt** or **fūtūrum essē ūt** (§ 552) *may* be substituted in the case of any verb, and *must* be used if the verb has no supine base.

§ 419. The perfect infinitive is found in the archaic language of legal enactments after the verbs *völō* and *nölō*. This usage was followed by the poets and Livy, and employed also with other like verbs.

nē quis convēnissē sacrōrum causā vēlīt.

let no one presume to assemble for the purpose of sacred rites.

gaudēt pēpūlissē fossōr tēr pēdē terram.

the digger delights in thrice striking the earth with his foot.

§ 420. The Latin present infinitive with a verb expressing possibility or duty in the past is often rendered by an English perfect infinitive.

dēlēri tōtūs exercītūs pōtūit.

the whole army might have been destroyed.

pēcūniam his oportūit civitatībūs prō frūmentō dāri.

money ought to have been given to these states in payment for corn.

Obs. This usage in English is due to the words *could*, *should*, *ought*, etc., having now no distinctly past signification.

THE SUPINE.

§ 421. The accusative supine is used as an accusative of the goal of motion, the action implied in the supine being regarded as the goal. The supine may govern an object (direct or indirect) in the same case as the object of the finite verb to which it belongs.

Aedūi lēgātōs ād Caesārem mittunt rōgātum auxiliū.
the Aedui send ambassadors to Caesar to ask for help.

Grāiis servitum mātrībūs ibō.

I shall go to be a slave to Greek matrons.

§ 422. The ablative supine is in common use only in the case of certain verbs of *saying*, *perceiving*, and *knowing*, with *nascōr* (*nātū*, *by birth*) and *faciō* (*factū*, *in doing*); it is generally used with an adjective as ablative of respect (§ 370).

nēc hōc tam rē est quam dictū mirābilē.

nor is this so wonderful in reality as it is to tell.

īd exprīmērē Lātīnē diffīcīlē factū est.

to express that in Latin is a difficult thing to do.

THE GERUND.

§ 423. The nominative gerund of intransitive verbs is used with the third person singular of some tense of *sum*; the idea thus conveyed is that of necessity or duty. The gerund may govern an object in the same case as that governed by the finite verb from which it is formed; the agent is expressed by a dative, or (where the dative would cause ambiguity) by *ā* or *āb* and the ablative.

mōriendum est omnībūs.

all must die.

rēsistendum sēnectūtī est.

old age must be resisted.

illis ērit ā vōbīs consūlendum.

their interests will have to be consulted by you.

Obs. 1. The literal rendering of *mōriendum est omnībūs* is *there is a dying for all* (Cp. § 356, *Obs. 2*). The nominative gerund used to be called the “neuter gerundive used impersonally,” and a few grammars still retain that name.

Obs. 2. The accusative gerund of intransitive verbs is similarly used with *essē* in the accusative and infinitive construction; e.g. *Constāt omnībūs mōriendum essē*, *It is agreed that all must die.*

§ 424. The nominative gerund of a transitive verb is occasionally used, and is accompanied by a direct object, its construction being in other respects that of an intransitive gerund.

hanc viām nōbīs quōquē ingrēdiundum est.

we too must enter upon this road.

Obs. This usage is quite exceptional and is not to be imitated.

§ 425. The accusative gerund is used after certain prepositions (*ād*, *to*, being by far the commonest). It cannot, even if from a transitive verb, govern a direct object, and the gerundive construction (§ 430, i.) then takes its place.

brēvē tempūs sātīs longum est ād bēnē vivendum.
for living aright a short time is long enough.

§ 426. The **dative gerund** is used as a dative of purpose (§ 358) in close connection with a substantive, adjective, or verb. It cannot, even if from a transitive verb, govern a direct object, but the gerundive construction (§ 430, ii.) takes its place.

ērant pugnandō pārēs nostrī.

our men were equal to (the task of) fighting.

§ 427. The **ablative gerund** is used with or without a preposition. If formed from a transitive verb it frequently has a direct object (especially a neuter adjective or neuter pronoun), but the gerundive construction (§ 430, iii.) is also used.

ūnūs tū nobīs cunctandō restitūis rem.

thou alone by delay restorest fortune to us.

honestum versātūr in tribuendō sūm cuiquē.

honesty consists in giving each his own.

NOTE.—The ablative gerund without a preposition is usually instrumental (§ 373).

§ 428. The **genitive gerund** is used in dependence on substantives and adjectives. If formed from a transitive verb it frequently has a direct object, but the gerundive construction (§ 430, iv.) is also used.

gēnūs fōrensē dicendī tractārē vōlō.

I wish to treat of the forensic style of oratory.

cūpidūs sum tē audiendī.

I am desirous of hearing you.

Obs. It is to be borne in mind that the use of the gerundive construction (§ 430) is much more frequent than that of any case of the gerund governing a direct object, and that it must *always* be adopted instead of an accusative or dative gerund governing a direct object.

§ 429. Occasionally an objective genitive plural takes the place of the direct object of a genitive gerund.

Marcō Antōniō facultās dātūr āgrōrum sūis lātrōnībūs
condōnandī.

*an opportunity is being given to Marcus Antonius of presenting
lands to his freebooters.*

THE GERUNDIVE.

§ 430. As a rule the place of a transitive gerund and its direct object is taken by the gerundive and a substantive with which the gerundive agrees in gender and number and case.

In this construction, commonly known as the gerundive (or gerundial) attraction, the substantive is in the case of the gerund which the gerundive replaces.

- (i.) *Acc.* **Caesār ād conventūs āgendōs prōfectūs est.**
Caesar set out to hold the assizes.

Here the gerundive construction is necessarily used instead of the gerund **āgendum** with the direct object **conventūs**.

- (ii.) *Dat.* **tresvīrī cōlōniāe dēdūcendae crēatī sunt.**
a commission of three was appointed for planting a colony.

Here the gerundive construction is necessarily used instead of the gerund **dēdūcendō** with the direct object **cōlōniām**.

- (iii.) *Abl.* **ā rēbūs gērendīs sēnectūs abstrāhīt.**
old age withdraws us from active life (lit. from carrying on affairs).

Here the gerundive construction is used instead of the gerund **gērendō** with the direct object **rēs**.

- (iv.) *Gen.* **Caesār proeliī committendī signum dēdīt.**
Caesar gave the signal for beginning the battle.

Here the gerundive construction is used instead of the gerund **committendī** with the direct object **proelium**.

NOTE.—The genitive singular neuter of the gerundive is used with the genitive of the personal pronouns (**mēi, nostrī, tūi, vestrī, sūi**), these forms being in origin the genitive singular neuter of the corresponding possessive adjectives; e.g. **Germāni ād-Caesārem vēnērunt sūi purgandī causā**, *The Germani came to Caesar for the purpose of expulating themselves.*

§ 431. The gerundive is also used to denote that the substantive to which it refers *ought to be, is to be*, or occasionally (with a negative) *cannot be* the object of the verbal action implied. The agent is expressed by a dative, or (where the dative would cause ambiguity) by **ā** or **āb** and the ablative.

nōn tangendā rātēs transiliunt vādā.

the barks leap over the waters that ought not to be meddled with.

hābendā est rātiō vālētūdīnis.

account must be taken of health.

bellāquē nōn pūērō tractāt āgendā pūēr.

and as a boy he meddles with wars that ought not to be waged by a boy.

vōtā vix nūmērandā faciūt.

he makes vows that can scarcely be numbered.

§ 432. A substantive and gerundive may together form a phrase, concrete in form but of abstract meaning, expressing an action that is to be performed on the substantive.

Caesar pontem in Ararē faciendum cūrāt.

Caesar sees to the making of a bridge over the Arar.

tū sēcandā marmōrā lōcās sūb ipsum fūnūs.

you, on the brink of the tomb, contract for having marbles cut.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

§ 433. The present participle of some verbs can be used as an attribute, like an ordinary adjective; when so used it may, if from a transitive verb, have a genitive in dependence on it (§ 399, Obs. 2).

amicum studiōsum et amantem suū fulsīt.

he has sustained a friend who is devoted and affectionate to him.

Obs. The ablative singular of a present participle used attributively ends in -ī; in other usages the termination -ē is preferred.

§ 434. Some present participles have comparative and superlative forms, e.g. *amans*, *loving*, makes comparative *amantiōr*, superlative *amantissimūs*. These do not differ syntactically from ordinary adjectives.

§ 435. The present participle used predicatively in dependence on a substantive may govern an object in the same case as the object of the verb from which it is formed.

tālīā dicentem Aenēan āversā tūētūr.

she gazes askance at Aeneas as he speaks thus.

Obs. A temporal clause (§ 528) is generally used instead of the present participle active in the nominative case, and the want of a present participle passive is compensated for in the same way.

§ 436. The present participle is very frequently used predicatively with a substantive in the ablative (ablative of attendant circumstances or ablative absolute, § 383).

Didō prōgrēditūr magnā stipantē cātervā.

Dido comes forth, a great throng pressing round her.

Obs. The substantive in the ablative of attendant circumstances is one that is not otherwise related (*e.g.* as subject, object, or instrument) to the finite verb. An exception to this rule is occasionally found in the case of a pronoun emphatically used; *e.g.* *Lācrimās nōtāvī, mē lācrimantē, tuās, I, shedding tears myself, have marked your tears.*

§ 437. A present participle without a substantive is found as an ablative of attendant circumstances when a substantive can easily be supplied from the context.

rursūs rēsistentībūs ad pēdēs dēsillūerunt hostēs.

our men again resisting, the enemy dismounted (lit. leapt down to their feet).

THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

§ 438. The future participle serves (*a*) as an attribute, *fūtūrūs* and *ventūrūs* alone being commonly so used; (*b*) predicatively, like the present participle, referring to the subject or object, or forming with a substantive an ablative of attendant circumstances, but these latter usages are of rare occurrence in writers of the best period.

(*a*) *signā ostenduntūr ā dīs rērum fūtūrārūm.*

omens of future things are shown by the gods.

(*b*) *ādest dē tē sententiām lātūrūs.*

he is here to give his vote concerning you.

§ 439. The commonest use of the future participle is that in which with the verb *sum* it supplies a number of additional tenses to the conjugation of an active or deponent verb (see § 156). In this use the future participle is, strictly speaking, a secondary predicate. The future participle is frequently used (without *essē*) as an equivalent for the corresponding future infinitive.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE AND DEPONENT.

§ 440. Perfect participles of verbs that are not deponents have a passive meaning; perfect participles of deponent verbs are, generally speaking, active in meaning. To this rule, however, there are two classes of exceptions:—

(*a*) Perfect participles of active meaning formed from active verbs, mostly intransitive (see § 177).

(b) Perfect participles of passive meaning formed from verbs which in classical Latin are deponent (see § 172).

The following are the most common of those belonging to the later class:—

confessus, <i>confessed</i> , from confitēōr	pactus, <i>agreed</i> , from pāciscōr
expertus, <i>tried</i> , „ expēriōr	pōpulatūs, <i>ravaged</i> , „ pōpulōr
mensus, <i>measured</i> , „ mētiōr	rātus, <i>settled</i> , „ rēōr
mentitus, <i>falsified</i> , „ mentiōr	sōrtitūs, <i>allotted</i> , „ sortīōr
oblītus, <i>forgotten</i> , „ oblīviscōr	ultus, <i>avenged</i> , „ ulciscōr

Obs. The above participles have an active meaning also, *having confessed*, *having tried*, etc. Rātus signifies *having thought* or *thinking* (§ 442, NOTE); sōrtitūs, *having assigned* or *having received by lot*.

§ 441. Some perfect participles may be used as attributes, and admit of degrees of comparison, like ordinary adjectives; e.g. irātus, *angry*. makes comparative irātior, superlative irātissimūs.

§ 442. The perfect participle may stand predicatively in dependence on a substantive; if deponent or used in a middle sense (§ 304), it may govern an object.

convēnērē tōris iussī discumbērē pictīs.

they assembled, having been bidden to recline on embroidered couches.

tum brevītēr Dīdō vultum dēmissā prōfātūr.

then Dido, casting down her eyes, briefly speaks.

NOTE.—Thus used predicatively a deponent or middle perfect participle is often translated by an English present participle; e.g. Illi, suppliciā Gallōrum vēriti, rēmānērē sē apūd Caesārem vellē dixerunt, *They, fearing punishment at the hands of the Gauls, said they were willing to remain with Caesar.*

§ 443. It will be noticed that, with the exception of deponents, Latin verbs have no perfect participle of active meaning. This deficiency is supplied (a) by a temporal clause (§ 328); (b) by the perfect participle passive in agreement with the object, e.g. Caesār fūgātōs hostēs sēcūtūs est, *Caesar, having put the enemy to flight, followed them*; or (c) by the perfect participle passive in the construction known as the ablative of attendant circumstances (§ 444).

§ 444. The perfect participle passive is very frequently used predicatively with a substantive in the ablative (ablative of attendant circumstances or ablative absolute, § 383). The same construction is found with the perfect participle of some deponent verbs, mostly intransitive.

hāc ōrātiōnē hābitā concīliū dīmīsīt.
having made this speech (lit. this speech having been made), he dismissed the meeting.

hōc responsō dātō discessīt.
when this answer had been given him, he departed.

Caesār ortā lūcē Britanniā conspexit.
as soon as day broke, Caesar descried Britain.

Obs. 1. The rendering of the participle in the above examples by an English active participle or an English dependent clause should be carefully noted.

Obs. 2. The substantive in the ablative of attendant circumstances is one that is not otherwise related (*e.g.* as subject, object, or instrument) to the finite verb.

NOTE.—A perfect participle passive is sometimes used impersonally in the ablative singular neuter without a substantive, *e.g.* *libātō*, a libation having been made; *compertō*, it having been ascertained.

§ 445. A substantive and perfect participle passive often together form a phrase, concrete in form but of abstract meaning, expressing an action performed on the substantive.

Hōmērūs fuit et Hēsiodūs antē Rōmā conditā.
Homer and Hesiod lived before the foundation of Rome.
mēmōrābilem pugnam fecit Hasdrubāl captūs.
the capture of Hasdrubal made the battle memorable.

§ 446. The use of the perfect participle as secondary predicate with some part of *sum* is the ordinary method of forming certain tenses of passive and deponent verbs.

Frequently, especially in poetry, *est* or *sunt* is not expressed; the participle then becomes a primary predicate, taking the place of a finite verb (§ 309).

Similarly the perfect participle may be used (without *essē*) as an equivalent for the corresponding perfect infinitive.

CHAPTER XL.—QUESTIONS.

§ 447. Questions are classed as “single” and “double.” A **single question** asks for information on a certain point; *e.g.* “Has Caesar won the battle?” A **double question** asks which of two or more alternatives is in accordance with fact; *e.g.* “Has Caesar or Pompeius won the battle?” “Has Caesar won the battle, or has he been defeated?”

§ 448. A question may be introduced by some **interrogative adjective, pronoun, or adverb**, such as *ūtēr*, *which of the two?* *quīs*, *who?* *ūbī*, *where?*

quid loquor? aut *ūbī* sum? *quae mentem insāniā mutāt?*

what am I saying? or where am I? what madness alters my purpose?

NOTE.—The use of *quīn* (= *quī?* *why?* + the inseparable particle *nē*, *not*) with the indicative in exhortations falls under this heading; *e.g.* *Quīn expergiscimīnī?* *Arise!* (lit. *Why do you not arise?*)

§ 449. Where no such interrogative word is used, the interrogative character of the sentence is generally indicated by one of the **interrogative particles** *-nē*, *nonnē*, *num*, and (in double questions only) *ūtrum*, *ān*. (For examples, see the succeeding sections.)

SINGLE QUESTIONS.

§ 450. *Nonnē* and *num* stand at the beginning of the sentence; *nonnē* indicates that an affirmative, *num* that a negative, answer is expected. The enclitic *-nē* is used without regard to the character of the answer expected, though the character of that answer is often clear from the context. It is appended to the emphatic word in the question, and this word as a rule stands first in the sentence.

nonnē vidēs rempublicam pērīssē?

do you not see that the commonwealth has perished?

num flētū ingēmūt nostrō? *tūnē* id vērītūs ēs?

did he sigh over my tears? were you afraid of that?

Obs. 1. For the term enclitic, see § 239, *Obs. 1*; for the shortened form of the second person singular with *-nē*, see § 239, *Obs. 2*.

Obs. 2. **Num** may be written as one word with *quīs*, *any one* (§ 115).

§ 451. A question is sometimes asked without the aid of any interrogative word or particle, especially if *nōn* is the first word of the sentence.

vīs rectē vivērē?

do you wish to live aright?

nōn fūgīs hinc praeceps?

do you not flee hence in haste?

DOUBLE AND OTHER COMPOUND QUESTIONS.

§ 452. The first member of a double question is most often introduced by *ūt*rum, the second by *ān*; less frequently the first member is introduced by *-nē* or stands without an interrogative particle.

*ūt*rum *ēā* *vestrā ān nostrā culpā est?*

is that your fault or ours?

vosnē vērō Dōmītium ān vōs Dōmītius dēsērūt?

did you in fact desert Domitius, or did Domitius desert you?

NOTE.—The latter alternative, when merely the contradictory of the former, is expressed usually by *annōn*, rarely by *necnē*.

*ūt*rum *haec aequō ānīmō pātiēmīni annōn?*

will you endure these things with a calm mind or not?

§ 453. When an interrogative sentence has more than two members, *ūt*rum introduces the first, *ān* the rest.

*ūt*rum *hōc tū pārū commēmīnistī, ān ēgō nōn sātīs intellexī, ān mūtastī sententiā?*

is it that you fail to remember this, or did I not quite understand, or have you changed your opinion?

§ 454. The first member of a double question is sometimes suppressed, and the second (introduced by *ān*) expresses wonder or indignation. This is always the case where *ān* introduces an apparently single question.

ān est ullum māiūs mālum turpitūdīnē?

is there any greater evil than disgrace?

Thus, before the above example, there is a suppression of some such question as *Is disgrace the greatest of evils?*

CHAPTER XLI.—VERBS: NUMBER AND PERSON.

§ 455. In Chapter XXXVIII. the chief rules relating to the number and case of the substantive have been stated; the voice of the verb has been dealt with in Chapter XXXVI.; the use of the remaining inflexions of the verb will now be treated, *viz.* number and person and (for simple sentences) mood and tense. The rules here given are not meant to be exhaustive, but to call attention to usages in which Latin differs noticeably from English, or which are otherwise worthy of attention.

§ 456. The first person plural is sometimes used by a speaker or writer to refer to himself alone when he wishes to assume an air of modesty.

nōs ādōlescentēs Sextō Rosciō subvēnīmūs.
as a young man I aided Sextus Roscius.

§ 457. The second person, singular and plural, should be rendered by *you* in prose and in poetry of the lighter kind; *thou* and *ye* should be reserved for serious poetry.

Obs. The second person plural is *never* used in Latin for the singular; consequently, in rendering English into Latin, *you* must be rendered by the singular unless the context clearly shows that the meaning is plural.

§ 458. The indefinite subject (French *on*) is represented in Latin by the following, among other forms of expression.

- (a) the first person plural;
 - (b) the third person plural of verbs expressing rumour or opinion;
 - (c) the second person singular subjunctive.
- (a) *virtūtem incōlūmem ōdīmūs.*
we dislike true merit when in our midst (lit. safe).
- (b) *tē sāpientem ēt appellānt ēt existimant.*
people both style and think you wise.
- (c) *crēdērēs victōs.*
you would have believed them conquered.

Obs. With usage (c) cp. § 477, § 514, *Obs.* 2.

CHAPTER XLII.—MOODS AND TENSES IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I.—THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 459. The **indicative** mood states a thing as a fact or asks a question as to whether a thing is a fact or not,

nonne mēmīnistī? mēmīni vērō.

do you not remember? I do indeed.

§ 460. The **present** indicative answers to the English continuous present (*I am loving, I am being loved*) as well as to the simple present (*I love, I am loved*).

quid strūis aut quā spē Lībŷcīs tērīs ōtīā terrīs?
*what art thou devising, or with what hope art thou spending
thy leisure in Libyan lands?*

Obs. With regard to the passive of verbs that express the bringing of a thing into a certain condition, see § 471.

§ 461. The present indicative is used of an action or state which has already been going on some time, and the imperfect of an action which at the time referred to had been going on some time. This is the case especially when the verb is accompanied by *iam, already, iamdūdum* or *iampridem, for some time already*.

annum iam audīs Crātippum.

you have already been attending Cratippus' lectures a year.

iamdūdum flēbam.

I had long been weeping.

§ 462. The **historic present**, in which a narrator describes an event from the standpoint of the time when it actually occurred, is more frequently used in Latin than in English.

tālībūs ōrābāt, tālesquē miserimā flētūs fert sōrōr.

*in such words did she continue to entreat, and such the
laments her most unhappy sister conveyed.*

Obs. The Latin historic present may sometimes be rendered with good effect by the same tense in English; but, on the whole, the learner will do better to make a practice of rendering it by the past.

For *dum* with the present indicative see § 534.

§ 463. The imperfect indicative answers to the English continuous past (*I was loving, I was being loved*); sometimes, however, the simple past tense (*I loved*) is a sufficient rendering.

nēc plūrā effātūs ād altōs
tendēbāt mūrōs, gressumquē in castrā fērēbāt.
*and, without saying more, he sought the lofty walls, and
bent his steps to the camp.*

NOTE.—The imperfect of sum and its compounds is more commonly used than the perfect, except in matters of historical fact; it is always rendered by the simple past in English.

§ 464. The imperfect indicative is also used to express (a) habitual action in past time, and (b) attempted action in past time.

(a) Karthāginē quōtannīs bīnī consūlēs crēābantūr.
at Carthage two consuls used to be appointed yearly.

(b) ex urbē Cātīlinam ēiciēbam.
I endeavoured to drive Catilina from the city.

§ 465. In writing a letter a Roman frequently used the imperfect to describe something going on at the time he was writing, that being the tense which would be applicable by the time the letter was delivered. This is known as the **epistolary imperfect**, and is found chiefly at the beginning and end of letters.

ex-ītīnērē scribēbam.
I am writing on my journey.

NOTE.—The pluperfect is similarly used of an action previous to the time of writing; e.g. *Ēgō constitūēram vēnirē in Pūtēolānum, I have determined to go to my seat at Puteoli.*

§ 466. In principal sentences the use of the Latin future corresponds with that of the English tense so named.

For the future in dependent clauses, see § 511 (conditional) and § 532 (temporal).

§ 467. The perfect indicative has two distinct functions: it is equivalent to (a) the English simple past, (b) the English present-perfect (simple or continuous). Thus, *amāvi* denotes (a) *I loved*, (b) *I have loved* or *I have been loving*.

(a) *incūbūitquē tōrō dixitquē nōvissimā verbā.*
she lay down on the bed and spake her last words.

(b) *urbem praelāram stātūī, mēā moeniā vīdī.*
I have built a noble city, I have seen my own walls rise.

Obs. For the meaning of the perfect and other tenses of the passive which are formed by means of the perfect participle and the verb *sum*, see § 471.

§ 468. Two poetical usages of the perfect are noticeable: (a) the perfect expressing instantaneous action; (b) the gnomic (i.e. proverbial) perfect, expressing customary action.

(a) *ēn nāvis fūgīt ēt portū sē condidīt altō.*
lo, the ship flies on, and has now hidden herself in the deep harbour.

(b) *nōn aeris ācervūs ēt aurī*
aegrōtō dōmīnī dēduxīt corpōrē fēbrēs.
a heap of bronze and gold is not wont to take away fevers from its possessor's diseased frame.

§ 469. For the perfect with temporal conjunctions, such as *antēquam*, *prīusquam*, and *postquam*, see §§ 529, 533.

§ 470. The future-perfect was in early Latin frequently used with a meaning practically equivalent to that of a simple future; in classical times this usage survives chiefly in the case of the verb *vidēō*, with which it signifies postponement.

rectē sēcusnē āllās vīdērīmūs.
whether rightly or otherwise, we will consider another time.

dē grēgē praestitērīt septem mactārē iūvencōs.
it will be well to sacrifice from the flock seven steers.

Obs. For the future-perfect in dependent clauses, see § 511 (conditional) and § 532 (temporal).

TENSES FORMED BY MEANS OF THE VERB *SUM* WITH THE
PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

§ 471. These tenses (viz. the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect passive) have meanings corresponding to those of the same tenses of the active. In the case however of verbs that express the *bringing of a thing into a certain condition* the perfect participle may denote the present condition brought about by past action, and the translation of the tenses formed by the help of the perfect participle of such verbs calls for attention.

To take, for example, the verb *mūnīō*, *I fortify*, i.e. *put into a fortified condition* :

The perfect indicative passive in the sentence

urbs mūnītā est (past act or present state)

expresses (a) *The city was fortified* (i.e. *was put into a fortified condition*) ;

(b) *The city has been fortified* (i.e. *has been put into a fortified condition*) ;

(c) *The city is fortified* (i.e. *is in a fortified condition*).

But the meaning of

urbs mūnītā fūit (past state)

is *The city was fortified* (i.e. *was in a fortified condition*).

Similarly the pluperfect

urbs mūnītā ērāt (pluperfect act or past state)

expresses (a) *The city had been fortified* (i.e. *had been put into a fortified condition*) ;

(b) *The city was fortified* (i.e. *was in a fortified condition*).

• And so on, with other tenses of the verb *sum* (see § 164).

Obs. When the English past participle is (like “fortified”) ambiguous, the Latin present, e.g. *mūnītūr*, should be rendered “*is being fortified*.”

II.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 472. The present imperative is the natural form for conveying a command or direction; the future imperative is used in laws and treaties, and when found elsewhere expresses an authoritative command.

fertē cītī flammās, dātē tēlā, impellitē rēmōs.

bring fire in haste, give out weapons, swing the oars.

noxīae poenā pār est ō. hunc tū cāvēt ō.

let the punishment be proportionate to the offence. be thou ware of him.

Obs. For the subjunctive expressing a command, see § 477.

§ 473. A prohibition (*i.e.* a negative command) in the second person is in poetry frequently expressed by *nē* and the present imperative, and in legal phraseology by *nē* and the future imperative.

ēquō nē crēditē, Teucrī. dōnum nē capiunt ō.

trust not to the horse, Trojans. they must not accept a gift.

NOTE.—In a compound sentence (in poetry) containing two imperatives the second (if negative) is introduced by *nēvē* or *neu* or by *nēc* or *něquē*; *e.g.* *Dōmum claudē nēc in vīās despīcē, Close the house, and look not down into the streets.*

Obs. The methods by which a prohibition in the second person is deferentially expressed in prose are:—

- (1) *nōlī* (or *nōlītē*) with the present infinitive, *e.g.* *nōlī ābirē*;
- (2) *cāvē* (or *cāvētē*) with the present subjunctive, *e.g.* *cāvē ābēās*;
- (3) *vidē* (or *vidētē*) *nē* with the present subjunctive, *e.g.* *vidē nē ābēās.*

For prohibitions expressed by *nē* and the present or perfect subjunctive (second person) see § 478.

A prohibition may in familiar language be expressed by *nōn* and the future indicative, *e.g.* *nōn ābibīs.*

III.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 474. The subjunctive is used in two classes of principal sentences, *viz.*—

- (1) a jussive sentence (jussive subjunctive);
- (2) the apodosis of a conditional sentence.

Its use in the latter is treated in Chapter XLV., under "Conditional Sentences" (§§ 507—517).

JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 475. Under the head of jussive subjunctive the following usages are comprised :—

(a) Subjunctive expressing a wish (optative use of subjunctive);

(b) Subjunctive expressing a command or exhortation (jussive use proper), including the concessive use;

(c) Subjunctive questioning what should be done (deliberative subjunctive).

§ 476. (a) The subjunctive expressing a wish is commonly introduced by *ūtīnam* (equivalent to *O would that . . . !*). The negative used is *nē* or *nōn*.

The present subjunctive is used of a wish that may yet be realised.

falsūs ūtīnam vātēs sim.
may I prove a false prophet.

The imperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that something were otherwise than it now is.

illūd ūtīnam nē vērē scribērem.
would that what I am writing were not true.

The pluperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that something had been otherwise than it was.

ūtīnam ālitēr accidissēt.
would that it had happened otherwise.

§ 477. (b) The present subjunctive expresses a command or exhortation* in the first person plural, in the third person, singular or plural, and (if no definite individual is addressed) in the second person singular; this last-named construction is rare. The negative used is *nē*.

absistām ūs, āit. hostībūs nē cēdām ūs.
let us desist, he says. let us not yield to the enemy.

angustam āmicē paupēriem pātī condiscāt pūēr.
let a boy learn to endure gladly straitened means.

iniūrīās fortūnae dēfūgiendō rēlinquās.
one should escape by flight the harsh treatment of Fortune,

§ 478. A prohibition addressed to a definite person is sometimes expressed by *nē* and the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive. This form of prohibition may be regarded as unceremonious and colloquial; it is accordingly very rare in dignified prose.

nē pertimescās.

don't be alarmed.

hōc nē fēcērīs.

you must not do this.

Obs. The perfect is more peremptory than the present; cp. "Go" and "Begone."

§ 479. In the imperfect or the pluperfect tense the jussive subjunctive expresses what ought to have taken place. The negative used is *nē*. (This usage is rare.)

restītissēs, rēpugnassēs, mortem pugnans oppētissēs.

you should have resisted, you should have fought against it, you should have met death fighting.

§ 480. The jussive subjunctive in the present tense often expresses a readiness to assume something *for the sake of argument* to be the case; the perfect similarly concedes a request that something is to be considered to have happened. The negative used is *nē*.

nēgant quemquam esse vīrum bonum nisi sapiētem: sit itā sānē.

they say that no man is good unless he is wise: well, granted that it is so.

nēmō is, inquit, umquam fuit: nē fūerit.

there never was, you will say, such a man: granted there was not.

Obs. This usage is termed "concessive subjunctive." It is to be distinguished from the use of the subjunctive in a concessive clause (§§ 521—524).

§ 481. (c) The interrogative form of the jussive subjunctive is called the **deliberative** or **dubitative** subjunctive; the present is used in questions as to the course of action which is to be pursued, the imperfect in questions as to the course which should have been pursued. The negative used is *nōn*.

quid hōc hōmīnē fāciās?

what is one to do with this fellow?

quid āgērem? contendērem contrā tribūnum plēbīs?

what was I to do? was I to fight against a tribune of the people?

CHAPTER XLIII.—COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING A SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSE.

§ 482. A substantival clause stands as subject or object to the verb of the principal sentence, and is of the nature of (I.) a question, (II.) a command, (III.) a statement.

I.—DEPENDENT QUESTION.

§ 483. It must be clearly understood that the term "dependent question" (or, as it is often called, "indirect question,") applies only to the dependent clause, not to the whole complex sentence of which the clause forms part. The principal sentence is not necessarily interrogative, but it has dependent on it a question which in Latin has its finite verb in the subjunctive, the mood serving to indicate that the question is *not asked, but mentioned or reported*.

For dependent questions introduced by *sī* see § 519; for questions in *oratio obliqua* see § 563.

The dependent clause may be

- (a) subject of an impersonal verb in the principal sentence,
- (b) object of the finite verb in the principal sentence;
- (c) object of some verbal substantive or adjective, or of some substantive or adjective containing a verbal notion, in the principal sentence.

- (a) *nātūrā fiērēt laudābīlē carmēn ān artē quaesītum est.*
whether a praiseworthy poem was produced by nature or by art was a subject of enquiry.

Direct question (*i.e.* the question in the form in which it is supposed to have been asked): *nātūrā fit laudābīlē carmēn ān artē?*

- (b) *fārē, āgē, quīd vēnīās.*
tell me, now, why you come.

Direct question: *quīd vēnīs?*

- (c) *cūrā quīd expēdiāt priōr est quam quīd sīt hōnestum.*
the anxiety is rather as to what is expedient than as to what is honourable.

Direct question: *quīd expēdit? quīd est hōnestum?*

Caesār certīor factūs est quae rēs gērērentūr.

Caesar was informed what was going on.

Direct question: *quae rēs gēruntūr?*

§ 484. A further point to be noticed is that *in both languages* a past tense in the principal sentence requires a past tense in the dependent clause. Beyond this, the sense alone determines what tense is to be used in English in each case, but in Latin the choice of a tense of the subjunctive for the dependent clause is narrowed by the following rule as to the sequence of tenses.

§ 485. For the purposes of this rule tenses are divided into two classes : **primary** tenses and **historic** tenses :—

PRIMARY.

Indicative and Imperative.	Subjunctive.
Present.	Present.
Future.	Perfect.
Perfect (with Present-Perfect meaning).	
Future-Perfect.	

HISTORIC.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Imperfect.	Imperfect.
Perfect (with past meaning).	Pluperfect.
Pluperfect.	

Obs. 1. The perfect indicative is said to be used with “present-perfect” meaning when it answers to the English present-perfect, *e.g.* *āmāvi*, *I have loved*, and is said to be used with a “past” meaning when, as is usually the case, it answers to the English past tense, *e.g.* *āmāvi*, *I loved*. Even when used with present-perfect meaning it often has historic sequence.

Obs. 2. The historic present (§ 462) often counts, for the purpose of sequence, as a historic tense.

RULE.—A primary tense in the principal sentence requires a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a historic tense in the principal sentence requires a historic tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause.

Examples are given on the next page of direct questions and the forms they assume when dependent.

(A.) *Quid Marcūs āgīt?* *What is Marcus doing?* or *What does Marcus do?*

<i>quaerō, I ask</i>	}	<i>quid Marcūs āgāt, what Marcus is doing or does.</i>
<i>quaeram, I shall ask</i>		
<i>quaesivī, I have asked</i>		
<i>quaesivērō, I shall have asked</i>		
<i>quaerē, quaerītō, ask</i>	}	<i>quid Marcūs āgērēt, what Marcus was doing or did.</i>
<i>quaerāmūs, let us ask</i>		
<i>quaerēbam, I was asking</i>		
<i>quaesivī, I asked</i>		
<i>quaesivēram, I had asked</i>		

(B.) *Quid Marcūs āgēbāt?* *What was Marcus doing?*
Quid Marcūs ēgīt? *What did Marcus do? or What has Marcus done?*

<i>quaerō, I ask</i>	}	<i>quid Marcūs ēgērīt, what Marcus was doing or did or has done.</i>
<i>quaeram, I shall ask</i>		
<i>quaesivī, I have asked</i>		
<i>quaesivērō, I shall have asked</i>		
<i>quaerē, quaerītō, ask</i>	}	<i>quid Marcūs ēgissēt, what Marcus had been doing or had done.</i>
<i>quaerāmūs, let us ask</i>		
<i>quaerēbam, I was asking</i>		
<i>quaesivī, I asked</i>		
<i>quaesivēram, I had asked</i>		

The tenses of *sum* used with the future participle conform to the same rule as to sequence :

(C.) *Quid Marcūs āgēt?* *What will Marcus do?*

<i>quaerō, I ask</i>	}	<i>quid Marcūs actūrūs sīt, what Marcus will do.</i>
<i>quaeram, I shall ask</i>		
<i>quaesivī, I have asked</i>		
<i>quaesivērō, I shall have asked</i>		
<i>quaerē, quaerītō, ask</i>	}	<i>quid Marcūs actūrūs ēssēt, what Marcus would do.</i>
<i>quaerāmūs, let us ask</i>		
<i>quaerēbam, I was asking</i>		
<i>quaesivī, I asked</i>		
<i>quaesivēram, I had asked</i>		

§ 486. Sometimes the subjunctive in a dependent question represents a deliberative subjunctive (§ 431) in the direct form.

quid āgērem dūbītāvī.

I doubted what I should do.

Obs. Here the direct question was quid āgam? *what am I to do?*

§ 487. The interrogative particles (-nē, nonnē, num) used to introduce direct single questions are used also to introduce dependent questions; num, however, does not in a dependent question necessarily expect a negative answer, but is used as an equivalent to -nē.

vidēāmūs sātisnē istā sīt vērā dēfīnītīō.

let us see if that definition of yours is sufficiently accurate.

exsistīt quaestīō num quandō āmicī nōvī vētērībūs sint antēpōnendī.

the question arises whether at any time new friends are to be preferred to old.

§ 488. Ūtrum . . . ān (or -nē . . . ān) are used in dependent as in direct double questions.

quaerō ūtrum īs clēmens ān inhūmānissimūs essē vidēātūr.

I ask whether he seems to be merciful or most savage.

āgītūr libērīnē vīvāmūs ān mortem ōbēāmūs.

the question is whether we are to live in freedom or face death.

§ 489. Where the latter alternative is the contradictory of the former, necnē is more usual than annōn in dependent questions.

sāpientīā bēātōs efficiāt necnē quaestīō est.

the question is whether philosophy makes men happy or not.

§ 490. The following is a summary of the usages of interrogative particles :—

	Direct Questions.	Dependent Questions.
Single.	-nē (<i>open</i>), nonnē (<i>yes</i>), num (<i>no</i>)	-nē or num (<i>open</i>), nonnē (<i>yes</i>)
Double.	utrum . . . ān, annōn	utrum . . . ān, necnē
	-nē . . . ān, annōn	-nē . . . ān, necnē
	(no particle) . . . ān, annōn	(no particle) . . . ān, necnē
Apparently Single.	ān (<i>indignant</i>)	(haud sciō or nesciō) ān

§ 491. The interrogative particle *ān* is, strictly speaking, used only in the second or subsequent member of a compound question direct or dependent; but *ān* is found introducing apparently single dependent questions after expressions of doubt, such as *haud scīō, nescīō, I do not know; dūbītō, I doubt.*

haud scīō ān nēmō beātīōr possit essē.

I am inclined to think that no one can be happier.

ingens ēō diē rēs ac nescīō ān maximā illō bellō gestā sūt.

a great deed was done on that day, and probably the greatest in that war.

Obs. It is important to note that in sentences such as the above the improbable alternative is omitted in Latin, and the probable one alone expressed; whereas in English, after the phrase *I do not know whether*, it is the improbable alternative that is expressed; hence *haud scīō ān hōc vērūm sūt* must be rendered *I am inclined to think this is true, or I don't know whether this isn't true.*

II.—DEPENDENT COMMAND.

§ 492. A command mentioned or reported forms a dependent clause, having its verb in the subjunctive mood; it is introduced by the conjunction *ūt* or (in the case of negative commands) *nē*. The tense of the subjunctive is in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 485).

Hannibāl ēquīfībūs praecepīt ūt ādōrīrentūr impēditum agmēn.

Hannibal ordered his cavalry to attack the encumbered line.

mōnēō hortorquē vōs nē tantum scelūs impūnitum ōmittātis.

I warn and exhort you not to let so great a crime go unpunished.

Obs. 1. Note that in English *to* with the infinitive is the natural form of a dependent command; the Latin infinitive is to be used to express a dependent command with *iūbēō, I command*, and *vētō, I forbid* (§ 411), but with these verbs only.

Obs. 2. The construction of verbs of *determining* or *deciding* is no exception to this rule. They are used with *ut* and the subjunctive to express a determination of one person as to the course of action to be taken by another; e.g. *Dēcrēvīt sēnātūs ut consūlēs prōvinciās sortirentūr*, *The senate decreed that the consuls should receive their provinces by lot.* With the infinitive they refer to the action of the subject, and do not introduce a dependent command; e.g. *Hannibāl Sāguntinīs inferre bellum statūt*, *Hannibal determined to wage war on the people of Saguntum.*

§ 493. A jussive subjunctive is often used (without a conjunction) in *semi-dependence* on the principal verb.

Caesār rogāt finem orandī fāciāt.

Caesar bade him make an end of entreating.

mēcum mōriāris oportēt.

it is right that you should die with me.

NOTE.—The subjunctive is by analogy similarly constructed with *cāvē*, and refers to an action to be avoided, e.g. *Cāvē quidquam turpē faxis* (§ 200), *Beware of doing anything disgraceful.*

III.—DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

[The place of an English dependent clause consisting of a statement is in Latin usually taken by the accusative and infinitive construction (§ 411).]

§ 494. *Quōd*, denoting *the fact that*, may introduce a clause which stands as subject to the sentence. The verb in the clause is in the indicative mood.

nēc tantum māli est peccārē principēs quantum illūd quōd permultī imitātōrēs principū existunt.

nor is it so great an evil that rulers should do wrong as that very many imitators of rulers arise.

§ 495. An explanatory clause introduced by *ut* and with its verb in the subjunctive may stand in apposition to the principal sentence or to a word in it.

fēcī nōn invītūs, ut prōdessem multis rogātū tūō.

I acted not unwillingly in doing a service to many at your request.

concēdētūr vērum essē ut bonōs bonī diligant.

it will be allowed that it is true that good men like good men.

Obs. 1. The rule (§ 485) for the sequence of tenses applies here.

Obs. 2. The learner will do well always to use the accusative and infinitive in rendering into Latin an English dependent statement.

CHAPTER XLIV.—COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING AN ADJECTIVAL CLAUSE.

§ 496. Adjectival clauses are introduced by *quī*, *who*, or some other relative pronoun or adjective (§ 118, 2nd column). Thus in the sentence *vīrum cānō quī āb ōris Trōiae primūs vēnit*, *I sing of the hero who was first to come from the shores of Troy*, the clause introduced by *quī* describes *vīrum*, and stands to it in the relation of an adjective. *Vīrum* is said to be the “antecedent” of the relative *quī*.

THE CONCORD OF THE RELATIVE (OTHERWISE CALLED THE THIRD CONCORD).

§ 497. The relative is regularly of the same gender and number and person as its antecedent, but its case is determined by its own clause.

sōl, quī terrārum flammīs ōpĕrā omniā lustrās.
sun, that visitest with thy beams all the actions of the world.
quoscumquē dē tē quĕrī audivi quācumquē pōtūi
rātiōnē plācāvi.
whomsoever I have heard complaining of you, them I have
satisfied in every possible way.

Obs. It is necessary to determine of what person (first, second, or third) the relative is, because if the relative is the subject of its clause the verb of the clause must agree with it in person, in accordance with the first concord (§ 311).

NOTE.—An adjective which in Latin qualifies the relative is in English often transferred to the antecedent; *e.g.* *Īn tūmūlō, quem proximū Gallīs cāpĕrē pōtūit, cōpiās instruxit.* *He drew up his forces on the nearest eminence to the Gauls which he could seize.*

§ 498. When a substantive stands to the relative pronoun in the relation of predicate, the relative generally assumes the gender and number of that substantive.

dōmiciliā coniunctā quā s urbēs dicimūs moenībūs saepsērunt.
they surrounded with walls the united dwellings which we call
cities.

§ 499. In Latin the relative clause often precedes the so-called "antecedent." The substantive is then usually placed with the relative, not with the demonstrative.

quae civitas calamitatem populo Rōmānō intulērāt, eā princeps poenās exsolvit.

the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.

§ 500. Often the antecedent is not separately expressed, but is contained in the relative.

ēquitēs quōs possunt occidunt.

the cavalry kill whom they can.

Obs. This construction is found also in English; e.g. "Who steals my purse, steals trash."

MOOD OF THE VERB IN A RELATIVE CLAUSE.

§ 501. The verb in the relative clause is in the subjunctive mood when the clause implies (a) concession, (b) cause, (c) purpose, or (d) result.

(a) tū nōn adfūistī quī illum diem sōlītūs essēs ōbīrē.
you were not present although you had been accustomed to observe that day.

Here quī is equivalent to quamvis (tū), *although you.*

(b) Tīturiūs, quī nīhīl antēā prōvidissēt, trēpidārē.
Tīturius grew alarmed, for he had made no preparations beforehand.

Here quī is equivalent to quōd (is), *because he.*

(c) Caesār ēquitātum quī sustinērēt hostiū impētum mīsīt.

Caesar sent the cavalry to resist the enemy's onset.

Here quī is equivalent to ut (is), *in order that it.*

(d) quis tam praeceps est quī hōc nēgēt?
who is so rash as to deny this?

Here quī is equivalent to ut (is), *(so) that he.*

Obs. The rule given for the sequence of tenses (§ 485) applies to the subjunctive in relative clauses.

§ 502. Of the usages of the subjunctive with *quī* that expressing result is the least obvious at first sight. It occurs where *tālīs ūt (īs)* (*such that he*) might be substituted for *quī*, and also where the antecedent is indefinite, *quī* then denoting *any one who* (i.e. *any such as*).

ūbī ēs invēniēmus quī ōpēs amicitiae nōn antepōnant?
where shall we find those who do not prefer wealth to friendship?
quid dulciūs quam hāberē quicum omniā audēās dicere?
what is more pleasant than to have some one with whom you can
venture to speak on every matter?

virgīs caesi quī ad nōminā nōn respondiissent.
all that did not answer to their names were beaten with rods.
impēriti faciē quōd stultē dixērīs reprehendunt.
the unskilled easily take up anything foolish you may have said.

§ 503. This subjunctive is especially frequent after the phrases *est quī, sunt quī*, meaning *there is a sort of man that, there is a class of men who*; also after *is quī*, meaning *one who*.

sunt delicta tamen quibus ignovissē velimūs.
there are faults, however, which we are willing to pardon.
nōn tū is es quī hōc nesciās.
you are not the man to be ignorant of this.

NOTE 1.—The indicative is used when the antecedent is definite; e.g. *Vestēs purpūrē tinctas sunt quī nōn hābēant, est quī nōn curat hāberē*, *There are people (indefinite antecedent) who do not possess garments dyed with purple, there is one (definite antecedent) who does not care to possess them.*

NOTE 2.—Poets sometimes use the indicative after *sunt quī*, regarding the phrase as a single word; e.g. *Sunt quōs curriculō pulvērē Olympiē collēgissē iuvāt*, *It delights some to have collected upon their chariot the dust of Olympia.*

§ 504. When the relative clause does not imply concession, cause, purpose, or result, but is merely a description or definition, the verb is in the indicative.

Galliā est omnis divisa in partes tres quarum unam incolunt Belgae.
Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts, of which the Belgae inhabit one.

See also the examples in §§ 496—500.

§ 505. When an adjectival clause consists of a **description** or **definition** which the writer or speaker does not insert in his narrative as so much additional explanation, but **reports** as being given at the time of the action, the verb in this adjectival clause is subjunctive.

Caesār obsīdēs quī ād ēōs perfūgissent pōposcīt.
Caesar demanded such hostages as had taken refuge with them.

Āgāmemnōn Dīānae dēvōvīt quōd pulcherrīmum nātum
 essēt ēō annō.

Agamemnon vowed to Diana the most beautiful creature that should be born that year.

In the first example above, Caesar is recording a past action of his own. The clause quī ād ēōs perfūgissent is not a description added for the benefit of the reader, but a report of the description given by Caesar in making his demand: obsīdēs quī ād vōs perfūgērunt poscō.

Obs. Clauses such as the above are sometimes called “virtually oblique.”

The tense of the subjunctive is decided in accordance with (*a*) the rule for the sequence of tenses, and (*b*) the tense of the indicative which would have been used in the relative clause in the direct form. Thus:—

DIRECT.		REPORTED.	
Indic.		Primary sequence. Historic sequence.	
Present		} Subj. Present	Subj. Imperfect
Future			
Imperfect		} .. Perfect	.. Pluperfect
Perfect			
Pluperfect			
Future-Perfect			

Here the representation of the future and future-perfect indicative is the chief thing to be noticed. In the second example above the words which Agamemnon is supposed to have used are Dīānae dēvōvēō (or immōlābō) quōd pulcherrīmum nātum ērīt (future-perfect) hōc annō.

These rules as to the tense of the subjunctive apply to virtually oblique clauses in general (cp. § 518), and also to sub-dependent clauses (§ 549). Thus the two examples in § 518 severally represent aedēn Fortūnae dēvōvēō (or dēdicābō) sī hōdiē hostās fūdērō (future-perfect) and vōbīs auxiliū mēum pollicēōr (or auxiliū fēram) sī āb Suēvis prēmēmēnī (future).

CHAPTER XLV. — COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING AN ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.

§ 506. Adverbial clauses are here arranged in the following four classes :—

§§ 507—520. I. **Conditional** (in English usually introduced by *if*).

§§ 521—537. II. **Circumstantial**, *i.e.* such as express some circumstances under which the action of the principal sentence is represented as taking place, including :

§§ 521—524. (i) **concessive** (in Eng. introd. by *although*).

§§ 525—527. (ii) **causal** (" " " *because*).

§§ 528—535. (iii) **temporal** (" " " *when*).

§ 536. (iv) **local** (" " " *where*).

§ 537. (v) **comparative** (" " " *as*).

§§ 538—542. III. **Final**, expressing the *purpose* of the action of the principal sentence.

§§ 543—547. IV. **Consecutive**, expressing the *consequence* or *result* of the action of the principal sentence.

The chief point to attend to in an adverbial clause is the mood of its verb, which is always either indicative or subjunctive.

The rule for the **sequence of tenses** (§ 485) applies to all sentences in which the verb of the dependent clause is subjunctive.

I.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

§ 507. It is convenient to give here the rules not only for the **conditional** (or “if”) **clause** (usually known as the **protasis**), but also for the principal sentence to which the conditional clause is subordinate, *viz.* the **hypothesis** or (to use the name corresponding to “protasis”) **apodosis**.

The whole complex sentence, consisting of conditional clause (or protasis) and hypothesis (or apodosis), is known as a **conditional** (or **hypothetical**) sentence; thus *sī hōc crēdis, errās* (*if you believe this, you are wrong*) is a conditional sentence, of which the protasis is *sī hōc crēdis* and the apodosis *errās*.

§ 508. The protasis is usually introduced by one of the conjunctions *sī*, *if*, *nī* (or, especially in poetry and legal language, *nī*), *if . . . not, unless*. For *sivē* or *seu*, see § 607.

Obs. *Etsī*, *ētiāmsī*, *tāmet**sī* are treated under "Concessive Clauses" (§§ 523, 524).

§ 509. Hypothetical sentences fall into three divisions according as the condition expressed by the protasis is represented, as:—

(A.) A condition that **may or may not** have been fulfilled in the **past**,

or a condition that **may or may not** be fulfilled in the **present**;

(B.) A condition that **may or may not** be fulfilled in the **future**;

(C.) A condition that **is not** fulfilled in the **present**, or a condition that **was not** fulfilled in the **past**.

§ 510. (A.) When the condition is represented as one that **may or may not** have been fulfilled in the **past**, or one that **may or may not** be fulfilled in the **present**, the **indicative** is used in both protasis and apodosis, the tense in each being present, imperfect, perfect or pluperfect according to the sense.

sī peccāvī, insciēns fēcī.

if I did wrong, I did so unwittingly.

sī quandō nostrī nāvem rēligāvērant, hostēs succurrēbant.

if at any time our men had moored a ship, the enemy rushed up.

assēquor omniā, sī prōpērō; sī cunctor, amittō.

I gain all, if I hasten; if I delay, I lose it.

NOTE.—The imperative may also be used in the apodosis; e.g. *Dēsilitē, nī vultīs āquilam hostībūs prōdērē, Leap down, unless you want to betray the standard to the enemy.*

§ 511. (B.) When the condition is represented as one that **may or may not** be fulfilled in the **future**, the **future** or (more commonly) the **future-perfect indicative** is used in

the protasis, and the future indicative (rarely the future-perfect) in the apodosis.

scribentŭr fortassē plŭrā, sī vitā suppētēt.

more will perhaps be written, if life lasts.

quidquid fēcēris, approbābō.

I shall approve of anything you do.

pergrātum mihi fēcēris, sī dē āmicitiā dispūtāris.

you will do me a great pleasure, if you discuss friendship.

Obs. In conditional clauses of this kind the Latin future or future-perfect of the protasis is represented by the English present or present-perfect.

NOTE.—The imperative may also be used in the apodosis; e.g. *Sī dē mē ipsō plŭrā dicere vidēbōr, ignoscitōtē, If I shall seem to speak rather much about myself, you must pardon me.*

§ 512. But if the idea of futurity is not prominent, the present subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis.

sī Scipionis dēsideriō mē mōvēri nēgem, certē mentiār.

•were I to deny that I am moved with regret for Scipio, I should assuredly lie.

Obs. In this form of sentence the contingency is regarded as less probable than it is when the future indicative is used.

§ 513. (C.) When the condition is represented as one that is not fulfilled in the present, the imperfect subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis; when it is represented as one that was not fulfilled in the past, the imperfect subjunctive or (more commonly) the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis.

sī ūtilitās āmicitiās conglutinārēt, eādem commūtātā dissolvērēt.

if expedience cemented friendships, it would also when it lay in a different direction dissolve them.

Tarentum nisi tū āmisissēs, numquam rēcēpissēm.

had you not lost Tarentum, I should never have recovered it.

tūm māgis id dicērēs, sī nūpēr in hortis Scipionis adiūissēs.

you would then say so all the more, if you had lately been present in Scipio's garden.

§ 514. The preceding rules may be thus illustrated :—

Condition		{		sī hōc crēdidistī, errastī. <i>if you believed or have believed this, you were or have been wrong.</i>
(A.) that may have been fulfilled in the	}	past	{	sī hōc crēdebās, errābās. <i>if you used believe this, you were wrong.</i>
that may be fulfilled in the	}	present	{	sī hōc crēdīs, errās. <i>if you believe this, you are wrong.</i>
(B.) that may be fulfilled in the	}	(definite) future	{	sī hōc crēdidērīs, errārīs. <i>if you believe this, you will be wrong.</i>
that may be fulfilled in the	}	(vague) future	{	sī hōc crēdās, errēs. <i>if you were to believe this, you would be wrong.</i>
(C.) that is not fulfilled in the	}	present	{	sī hōc crēdērēs, errārēs. <i>if you believed this, you would be wrong.</i>
that was not fulfilled in the	}	past	{	sī hōc crēdidissēs, errāvissēs. <i>if you had believed this, you would have been wrong.</i>

Obs. 1. Especial care must be taken to distinguish the use of the present subjunctive (B) from that of the imperfect subjunctive (C) in conditional sentences, the English translation being often the same for both. In *Sī hōc crēdās, errēs*, the meaning is *If you were to believe this (and perhaps you will), you would be wrong*; whereas in *Sī hōc crēdērēs, errārēs* it is *If you believed this (but I know you do not), you would be wrong*.

Obs. 2. The above are examples of the conditional sentence in its normal forms; other combinations occur of the various tenses of the indicative (cp. the second example in § 510). The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive may also be used together, as in the last example in § 513. A subjunctive is found in the protasis with an indicative in the apodosis in accordance with the next two sections, and also when the second person singular denotes an indefinite subject; e.g. *Mēmōriā minuitūr, nisi exercēās*, *The memory grows weak unless one exercises it.* Cp. § 458.

§ 515. Occasionally a past tense of the indicative takes the place of an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis, greater vividness being thus imparted to the narrative; similarly a future indicative may replace a present subjunctive.

sī nōn āliūm iactārēt ōdōrem, laurūs ērāt.

save that it threw out a different scent, it was a bay-tree.

mē truncūs illapsūs cērēbrō sustūlērāt, nīsi Faunūs ictum lēvassēt.

the fall of a tree upon my head had carried me off, were it not that Faunus warded off the blow.

sī fractūs illābātūr orbīs, impāvīdum hunc fēriēnt rūinae.
if the universe fall shattered upon him, the crash will strike him unalarmed.

§ 516. The verb *sum* accompanied by a gerund or verbal adjective, and the verbs *possum*, *dēbēō*, *dēcēt*, *oportēt*, are in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences commonly used in a past tense of the indicative, where other verbs would be in the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

sī ūnum diēm mōrātī essētīs, mōriēndum omnībūs fūit.

** had you tarried a single day, you must all have been put to death.*

nēquē sustinēri pōtērant, nī cōhortēs sē obiēcissent.

nor could they have been withstood, if the cohorts had not interposed.

NOTE.—Similarly the present tense is used in such phrases as *Longā est fābūla*, *It would be a long story (to tell).*

§ 517. Often a hypothetical sentence is found without any expressed protasis; the mood of the verb in such sentences is subjunctive, and is often termed the **potential subjunctive**. The present and perfect are used of something that may be realised; the imperfect of something that may not.

tū vēlim saepē ad nōs scribās.

I should like you to write often to me.

quid nōn sīt citiūs quam quid sīt dixērim.

I could more easily say what it is not than what it is.

** vellem ādessēt Marcūs Antōniūs.*

I could wish Marcus Antonius were here.

Obs. The effect of the present or perfect subjunctive is to give a mild or modest tone to the statement.

§ 518. Conditional clauses with the verb in the subjunctive and without any formal apodosis are used to report a condition laid down at the time of the action described in the principal sentence.

consul aedem Fortūnae dēvōvīt sī ēō dīe hostēs fūdissēt.

the consul vowed a temple to Fortune, if on that day he should rout the enemy.

Caesār iis auxiliū sūm pollicītus est sī āb Suēvis prēmērentūr.

Caesar promised them his aid if they were hard pressed by the Suevi.

Obs. Clauses such as the above are sometimes called “virtually oblique.”

519. Clauses apparently conditional are found in dependence on a principal sentence which is not the apodosis, when the conjunction *sī* may be rendered to see if or in case. In these clauses, which are best classed as dependent questions, the verb is subjunctive.

hanc pāludem sī nostrī transirent hostēs expectābant.

the enemy were waiting to see if our men would cross (or in case our men should cross) this marsh.

NOTE.—The use of *sī* after expressions of wondering is probably an imitation of a similar construction in Greek; e.g. *Nōn mirum sī hōc vōbis ridicūlum vidētūr*, *It is not wonderful if this seems ridiculous to you.*

§ 520. Quāsi, as if, and *sī* preceded by *āc*, *quam*, *tamquam*, *ūt*, or *vēlūt*, introduce conditional clauses with no expressed apodosis. These clauses indicate that the action of the principal sentence is such as would be expected under other circumstances. The verb of the clause is always subjunctive, and its tense is regulated in accordance with the sequence of tenses.

spērāt sibi quisquē fortunam prōindē quāsi plūrēs fortunātī sint quam infelicēs.

each hopes for good fortune for himself, just as if more were fortunate than unfortunate.

Sēquānī absentis Ariovistī crudelitātem, vēlūt sī eōram ādessēt, horrēbant.

the Sequani stood in dread of the cruelty of Ariovistus when he was absent, just as if he were present.

Obs. The suppressed apodosis may easily be supplied; e.g. *each hopes, as he would hope if . . .*; *they stood in dread of him, just as they would do if . . .*

II.—CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES.

(i.) Concessive Clauses.

§ 521. The verb of a concessive clause introduced by *quamvis* (*although*), *licet* (*although*), *cum* (*although*), or *ut* (*although*) is in the subjunctive.

sēnectūs, quamvis nōn sīt grāvis, tāmēn aufert vīrditātem.

although old age is not burdensome, it nevertheless takes away one's freshness.

Quinctiūs quam causam umquam antēā dixērāt, cum annōs quinquāgintā nātūs essēt?

what cause had Quinctius ever pleaded before, although he was fifty years old?

ut dēsint vīrēs, tāmēn est laudandā vōluntās.

though strength be lacking, yet willingness is praiseworthy.

NOTE 1.—The poets often construct *quamvis* with the indicative; e.g. *Polliō amāt nostram, quamvis est rusticā, Mūsam, Pollio loves my muse, rustic though she be.*

NOTE 2.—*Quamvis* is also used with adjectives and adverbs as an adverb of degree; e.g. *Mihī facīlē est quamvis multōs nōmīnātīm prōferrē, It would be easy for me to instance any number by name.*

§ 522. *Quamquam* (*although*) is used with the indicative.

quamquam festīnās, nōn est mōrā longā.

though you are in a hurry, the delay is not great.

NOTE 1.—The subjunctive is freely used after *quamquam* by Tacitus and other late writers.

NOTE 2.—*Quamquam* is sometimes used as an adverb of transition at the beginning of a principal sentence; e.g. *Quamquam nōn cārēt is quī nōn dēsiderāt, And yet he lacks not who feels not his want.*

§ 523. *Tāmeti* (*notwithstanding that, although*) is used with the indicative.

Cæsār, tāmeti ērant mūnitiōnēs magnae, tāmēn celeritēr hostēs ex vallō dēturbāvit.

although the fortifications were of great size, Caesar nevertheless quickly drove the enemy down from the rampart.

§ 524. *Etsi* (*although, even if*) and *etiamsi* (*although, even if*) are used with the indicative when what is conceded is regarded as a fact, with the subjunctive when something is conceded merely for the sake of argument.

*ergō, etsi conferrē mānum pūdōr irāquē monstrāt,
obiciunt portās tāmēn.*

*therefore, although shame and anger point them to battle,
they nevertheless bar the gates.*

*etsi nīhil āliūd Sullae nīsi consūlātum abstūlissētis,
tāmēn ēō vōs contentōs essē oportēbāt.*

*even if you had robbed Sulla of nothing except the consul-
ship, you ought, nevertheless, to have been satisfied.*

NOTE.—*Etsi* is sometimes used as an adverb of transition; e.g. *Etsi ex partē magnā tibi assentiō, Yet to a great extent I agree with you.*

(ii.) Causal Clauses.

§ 525. The verb of a causal clause introduced by *cum* (*since*) is always subjunctive.

*Aedūi, cum sē dēfendērē nōn possent, lēgātōs ād
Caesārem mittunt.*

*as they were unable to defend themselves, the Aedui sent
ambassadors to Caesar.*

Obs. The tense of *possent* in the above example is due to *mittunt* being in the historic present; see § 485, Obs. 2.

§ 526. After the other causal conjunctions *quōd* or *quīā* (*because*), *quōnīam* (*since*), *quandōquīdem* (*since*), the indicative is used if the cause is stated as a fact; the subjunctive reports the cause assigned at the time of the action described in the principal sentence; the conjunction may then be rendered by *on the ground that* or *because (he) said (or thought) that*.

dōlēō quīā dōlēs.

I am grieved because you are.

*indignābantūr Rōmānī quōd victōrībūs victī inferrēt
armā.*

*the Romans were indignant at the conquered making war
on their conquerors.*

mihī hōmīnēs grātulābantūr quōd hābitūrū essem
 contrā tribūnum furiōsum fortem consulem.

*people were congratulating me on the ground that I should
 have in opposition to the furious tribune a brave consul.*

Obs. If in this last example *eram* were substituted for *essem*, the speaker would commit himself to an acknowledgment of the consul's bravery, whereas by using the subjunctive he is able to imply that the popular expectation was disappointed.

NOTE.—*Quandō* is also used (with the indicative), chiefly by Livy and the poets, with the meaning of *since*.

§ 527. The subjunctive is also used after *nōn quōd* or *nōn quō*, the reason they introduce not being stated as a fact, but mentioned only to be rejected.

quibuscum mē pugnāntem nōn vidēbitis; nōn quō mihī fās
 sīt quidquam dēfugērē, sēd quīā nōn nēcēssē est.

*but you will not find me contending with them; not that I have a
 right to evade anything, but because it is unnecessary.*

(iii.) Temporal Clauses.

§ 528. In temporal clauses which merely define the time of the action described in the principal sentence the verb is indicative; if, however, concession, cause, or purpose is implied, the verb in the temporal clause is subjunctive.

§ 529. After the temporal conjunctions *ūt*, *ūbī*, *quandō*, *quē*, *quandocumquē*, *sīmūl ac* (or *sīmūl atquē*), *postquam*, the indicative is used, the clauses introduced by these conjunctions being merely temporal.

Ariovistūs, ūt Gallōrum cōpiās vīcīt, crūdēlītēr impērāt.
*as soon as he has defeated the forces of the Gauls, Ariovistus
 governs with cruelty.*

ēō postquam Caesār pervēnīt, obsidēs pōscīt.
Caesar, after he had arrived there, demanded hostages.

Obs. Often after *ūt*, *ūbī*, *sīmūl ac*, *postquam*, the perfect indicative is more naturally rendered by the English pluperfect.

NOTE.—*Ūbī* is found with the subjunctive, chiefly in Livy and later writers, when an action of frequent occurrence is denoted (iterative subjunctive); e.g. *Hasdrubāl Hannibālem praeficiēbāt ūbī quīd fortitēr āgendū essēt*, *Hasdrubal used to put Hannibal in command whenever anything had to be done with courage.*

§ 530. After *postquam* the perfect indicative is the usual tense; but if the interval is specified the pluperfect may be used.

annō octāvō postquam in Hispāniā vērāt Scipio est interfectus.

Scipio was slain in the eighth year after his arrival in Spain.

§ 531. (a) *Cum*, *when*, referring to present or future time, is used with a primary tense of the indicative.

(b) *Cum*, *at the time when*, referring to past time, is used with the imperfect or perfect indicative to denote a state or action which is represented as marking the time of the event related in the principal sentence.

(c) *Cum*, *when*, referring to past time, is used with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to denote a state or action with which that of the principal sentence is represented as closely connected.

(a) *cum hostium cōpiae nōn longē absunt, agrī culturā dēsērūt.*

when an enemy's forces are near, the cultivation of the land is abandoned.

(b) *cum Caesār in Galliā vērīt, principēs ērant Haedui.*
at the time of Caesar's arrival in Gaul, the Haedui were the leading state.

(c) *Gyges, cum terrā discessissēt, descendit in illum hīatum.*

Gyges, when the earth had opened, went down into the chasm.

Obs. Cum, when, with the subjunctive, is often indistinguishable from *cum* causal (§ 525).

NOTE 1.—The historians and other writers occasionally adopt, for the sake of emphasis, an *inversion* whereby the action which would normally be that of the principal sentence is transferred to a temporal clause introduced by *cum* and with its verb in the indicative; e.g. *Mūrō circumdārē urbem pārābāt, cum Sābinum bellum coeptis intervēnit.* *He was preparing to surround the city with a wall, when the Sabine War interrupted his plans.*

NOTE 2.—When *cum* introduces a definition of the action of the principal sentence, it is followed by the indicative; e.g. *Cum collēgae Brūtūs impēriū abrōgābāt, pōtērāt vidērī facērē iniustē.* *Brutus may have seemed to be acting unjustly in depriving his colleague of office.*

NOTE 3.—In a temporal clause introduced by *cum*, repeated action is expressed by the pluperfect indicative; e.g. *Nēquē vēdō, cum aliquid mandārāt, confectum putābāt*, *Nor indeed, when he had given orders for a thing, was he wont to regard it as done*. But the subjunctive is sometimes found, and becomes frequent in late writers.

§ 532. The verb in a temporal clause referring to future time must be in the future or future-perfect, the English use of the present or present-perfect being merely idiomatic.

dē hīs rēbūs, ōtīōsī cum ērimūs, lōquēmūr.

we will speak about these matters when we are at leisure.

mōrātī meliūs ērimūs cum didicērimūs quae nātūrā dēsiderēt.

we shall be better in character when we have learnt what nature requires.

Obs. This rule applies to all indicative clauses referring to the future, irrespective of the conjunction by which they are introduced. Cp. *sī* with the future and future-perfect (§ 511).

§ 533. (c) The verb in a clause introduced by *antēquam* or *priusquam* is indicative when mere sequence of events is denoted; but it is subjunctive if the action expressed by the clause is purposely anticipated or (when the principal sentence is negative) purposely awaited.

nēc priūs illē est rēlictūs lōcūs quam finis est pugnandī factūs.

nor was that position abandoned before an end was made of fighting.

Rōmānūs priusquam fōrēs obicērentūr irrūpīt.

the Romans rushed in before the gates could be shut.

Gallī nōn priūs dūcēs dimittunt quam āb hīs sit concessum armā ūtī cāpiant.

the Gauls would not send away the chieftains before the latter had consented to take up arms.

• Obs. 1. Often after *antēquam* or *priusquam* the perfect indicative is more naturally rendered by the English pluperfect.

Obs. 2. *Antēquam*, *priusquam*, *postquam* may each be written as two words: *antē*, *priūs*, or *post* is frequently placed in the principal sentence, *quam* introducing the clause. (Cp. the first and third of the above examples.)

NOTE.—The subjunctive after *antēquam* and *priusquam* is sometimes iterative (cp. § 529, NOTE), and is by Livy sometimes used in a merely temporal sense.

§ 534. *Dum*, meaning *while* (i.e. *in the time that*), is followed by the present indicative.

dum haec gēruntūr, lēgātī discessērunt.
while this was going on, the ambassadors departed.

NOTE 1.—*Dum*, *dōnēc*, and *quōāđ*, meaning *so long as*, are followed by the indicative; e.g. *Dum tēcum vixi, dum mē lēvis aurā fērēbāt. haec mēā pēr plācidās cumbā cūcurrīt āquās, So long as I lived with you, so long as the light breeze bore me on, this my bark sailed through calm waters.* Livy uses *dōnēc* in this sense with the subjunctive.

NOTE 2.—*Dum*, when meaning *so long as* in the sense of *provided that*, is followed by a subjunctive; e.g. *Ōdērint, dum mētūant, Let them hate, so long as they fear.* In this sense the compound *dummōđō* is also used. The negative in this usage is *nē*.

§ 535. The indicative is used after *dum*, *dōnēc*, and *quōāđ*, when they mean *until*, if the relation between the principal sentence and the clause is merely temporal. If, however, the action expressed by the clause is **purposely** awaited, the verb of the clause is subjunctive; *dum* may then often be rendered *in order that* *meanwhile*.

pugnāvērunt hostēs dum dux interfectūs est.
the enemy fought until their leader was slain.
obsīdīō pēr paucōs diēs māgis quam oppugnātīō fūit,
dum vulnūs dūcis cūrārētūr.
there was a blockade for a few days rather than an assault,
that the general's wound might meanwhile be attended to.

NOTE.—*Dōnēc*, *until*, is not used with the subjunctive in good prose.

(iv.) Local Clauses.

§ 536. A local clause is introduced by some relative adverb of place (§ 240, column 2), such as *ūbī*, *where*; *quō*, *whither*; *undē*, *whence*. The mood of the verb in the clause is regulated by the same conditions that determine the mood after a relative pronoun (§ 501), i.e. the subjunctive is used if the clause implies concession, cause, purpose, or result.

- (a) *Caesār ēōdem undē rēdīērāt prōfīciscītūr.*
Caesar sets out for the same place whence he had returned.
(b) *consul lōcum pētīt undē hostem invādāt.*
the consul seeks a position from which to attack the enemy.
Obs. In (b) *undē* is equivalent to *ūt indē*, *in order that thence*,

(v.) Comparative Clauses.

§ 537. A comparative clause is introduced by some relative adverb of manner, such as *ūt, as; quam, than; or ac* in the combinations *pēriṇdē ac, just as; nōn sēcūs ac, not otherwise than*. The mood in a comparative clause is naturally indicative.

cunctā ūt gestā sunt expōnam.

I will relate everything as it happened.

illūd, quōd dixī, nōn dixī sēcūs ac sentiēbam.

what I said, I did not say otherwise than as I thought.

Obs. 1. Adverbs of manner are very commonly used without a dependent clause; e.g. *Planci salūtem nōn sēcūs ac mēam tūerī debēō, I ought to guard Plancius' welfare no less than my own*. For *quam* so used, see § 593.

Obs. 2. For adverbs of manner followed by *sī*, see under Conditional Clauses (§ 520).

III.—FINAL CLAUSES.

§ 538. A final clause is one that expresses the purpose or end (*finis*) of the action of the principal sentence; its verb is always in the subjunctive.

The chief conjunctions that introduce final clauses are *ūt (that, in order that)*, *nē (lest, in order that . . . not)*, *quō (in order that thereby)*, *quōmīnūs (that . . . not)*, *quā (that . . . not)*.

§ 539. *Ūt* with a final subjunctive is very frequently rendered by the English infinitive* with *to*; similarly *nē* with a final subjunctive may be rendered by *not to* . . .

ēquitēs misit ūt ēōs qui fūgerant persēquērentūr.
he sent horsemen to pursue those who had fled.

dandā ōpērā est nē quā amicōrum discīdiā fiant.
care must be taken that no estrangements take place between friends.

* Taking this rule together with that relating to dependent commands (§ 492), we have conversely :

With *ask, command, advise, and strive,*

By *ūt* translate infinitive ;

But not so after *iūbēō, nor*

With *vētō* or deponent *cōnōr*.

NOTE.—A final clause is frequently used parenthetically; e.g. *Quōmōdō, ūt aliā ōmittam, mortem filiī tulit!* *How well (to pass other matters by) he bore his son's death!*

Obs. In negative final clauses *nē* must be used; not only *ūt nōn*, but *ūt* followed by any negative word, is inadmissible when purpose is denoted.

Thus, instead of *ūt nēmō* we have *nē quīs*, *that no one*;

„ „ *ūt nullūs*, „ *nē ullūs*, *that no*;

„ „ *ūt numquam*, „ *nē umquam*, *that never*.

The second example in § 539 contains an instance of *nē quīs*.

§ 540. When *nē* introduces a clause dependent on a verb of *fearing*, it is usually rendered in English by *that* more naturally than by *lest*, *ūt* in a similar position being rendered by *that* . . . *not*.

ōrātōr mētūō nē languescāt sēnectūtē.

I fear that the orator will be enfeebled by old age.

illā duō vērēōr ūt possim tibi concēdērē.

I fear that I cannot grant you those two points.

NOTE.—Occasionally *nē nōn* is used instead of *ūt*; e.g. *Timēō nē nōn impētrēm*, *I fear I shall not obtain my request*.

§ 541. *Quō* (properly abl. sing. neut. of *quī*, *who*) is used as a final conjunction chiefly when the clause introduced by it contains a comparative adjective or adverb.

Pompēiūs, quō faciiliūs impētum Caesārīs tardārēt, portās obstrūit.

the more easily to impede Caesar's attack, Pompeius barred the gates.

Obs. The tense of *tardārēt* in the above example is due to *obstrūit* being in the historic present; cp. § 485, *Obs.* 2.

§ 542. After verbs of *hindering* or *preventing* the dependent clause is introduced by *quōminūs* or (if the principal sentence is negative) by *quān*.

nāvēs ventō tēnēbantūr quōminūs in portum vēnirē possent.

the ships were hindered by the wind from being able to reach the harbour.

*Germani retinēri nōn pōtūerunt quīn in nostrōs telā
conicērent.*

*the Germani could not be restrained from hurling darts at
our men.*

Obs. Quōmīnūs is equivalent to *ūt ēō mīnūs*, in order that . . . the
less, and is sometimes written as two words—*quō mīnūs*.

IV.—CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 543. A consecutive clause is one that expresses the consequence or result of the action of the principal sentence; its verb is always in the subjunctive.

§ 544. Consecutive clauses are usually introduced by *ūt* (*that, so that*); if the clause is negative, *ūt* is followed by *nōn* or some other negative word. A consecutive clause is often preceded by a demonstrative adverb meaning *so*; e.g. *ādēō, itā, sic, tam*.

*mons altissimūs impendebāt ūt faciļe perpauci obstārē
possent.*

*a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could
easily block the way.*

accidit ūt essēt lūnā plēnā.

it so happened that the moon was full.

itā vixi ūt nōn frustrā mē nātum existīmem.

I have so lived that I consider I was not born in vain.

Obs. *Nē* is inadmissible in consecutive clauses: hence we find *ūt nēmō, ūt nullūs, ūt numquam*, etc., in consecutive clauses; never (as in final clauses) *nē quis, nē ullūs, nē umquam*, etc. Cp. § 539, *Obs.*

§ 545. The conjunction *quīn* is used after a negative or interrogative principal sentence, and (with the dependent clause which it introduces) expresses an **exception**; the verb in the clause introduced by *quīn* is subjunctive.

(i.) *Quīn* is rendered by *who . . . not, that* (relative pronoun) . . . *not*.

nēmō fuit militum quīn vulnerārētūr.

there was not one of the soldiers who was not wounded.

hōrum nihil est quīn intērēāt.

of these there is nothing that does not perish.

(ii.) Quīn is rendered by *but, but that, that* (conjunction)

. . . *not.*

fācērē nōn possum quīn ād tē mittam.

I cannot but send to you.

fiērī nōn pōtest quīn haec itā sint.

it cannot but be that these things are so.

quid est causae quīn licēāt hōc dicērē?

what is the reason that we may not say this?

(iii.) Quīn is rendered by *from* or *without* with a verb-noun in *-ing*.

lēgātōs nostrōs haud prōcūl āfūit quīn viōlārent.

they were not far from outraging our ambassadors.

Trēvēri tōtiūs hīēmīs nullum tempūs intermiserunt quīn
trans Rhēnum lēgātōs mittērent.

*the Treveri let no time in the whole winter go by without
sending ambassadors across the Rhine.*

Obs. For quīn after verbs of *hindering*, etc., see § 542; for the interrogative adverb quīn, see § 448, NOTE.

§ 546. Quīn with the subjunctive is also used after a negative or interrogative principal sentence expressing doubt, such as nōn est dūbium, nōn dūbitō, quīs dūbitāt? Quīn so used is rendered by *that*.

nōn dūbitō quīn brēvi sīt Trōiā pēritūrā.

I do not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed.

nēquē ābest suspiciō quīn ipsē sibi mortem conscivērit.

*nor are there wanting grounds for suspecting that he
committed suicide (lit. adjudged death to himself).*

§ 547. In consecutive clauses the ordinary sequence of tenses is so far modified that a perfect subjunctive is often found (especially in Livy) in dependence on a historic principal verb.

is, tormentis cum lacerārētūr, eō fūit hābitū orīs, ut ridentis
etiam spēciem praebūērīt.

*though he was being torn on the rack, he wore such an expression
of countenance that he presented the appearance of a man
actually smiling.*

Obs. The perfect subjunctive thus used states an actual result rather than a natural consequence.

CHAPTER XLVI.—CLAUSES DEPENDENT ON AN INFINITIVE OR DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE, *ORATIO OBLIQUA*, AND TABLE OF SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES.

I.—CLAUSES DEPENDENT ON AN INFINITIVE OR DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 548. The rules given in the last three chapters apply to clauses directly dependent on some word in the principal sentence. Certain modifications, however, in these rules are required in the case of clauses dependent (*a*) on the infinitive or some word closely connected with it in the "accusative and infinitive" construction (§ 411), or (*b*) on a dependent clause of which the verb is subjunctive.

Obs. 1. A clause dependent on a dependent clause is called a sub-dependent clause.

Obs. 2. The verb in many dependent clauses is indicative. Sub-dependent clauses dependent on such are subject to exactly the same rules as clauses directly dependent on a principal sentence; *e.g.* *Caesar, etsi intelligebat quae res eos terreret, principem ad se venire iussit*, *Although Caesar understood what circumstance alarmed them, he ordered the chieftain to come to him.* (Here *intelligebat*, the verb of a dependent clause, introduces a dependent question, just as it would if it were a principal verb.)

§ 549. In a clause dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase or on a subjunctive dependent clause the mood used, if the writer wishes (as he usually does) to bring out this dependence, is subjunctive. (For the tense see § 505).

vidi senatum, sine quo civitas stare non posset, omnino de civitate esse sublatum.

I saw that the senate, without which I knew the government could not continue, had been altogether removed from the government.

huic imperat quas possit adire (§ 493) civitates.
he orders him to visit what states he can.

fraus fidem in parvis sibi praestruit, ut, cum operae pretium sit, cum mercede magna fallat.

deceit wins for itself confidence in small matters, in order that, when it is worth while, it may cheat with great profit.

Obs. Here in the first example the subjunctive *possēt* implies that the clause beginning *sīnē quō* formed part of the speaker's reflection at the past time referred to. The indicative (§ 551, i.) would have been used if the clause had been a parenthetical statement addressed to the audience. So in the second example *quās possit* represents a clause in the order as given ("visit what states you can"); and in the third example the temporal clause *cum . . . sit* is closely connected in sense with the final clause, and is not an independent mark of time.

§ 550. The sequence of tenses is so far modified in the case of clauses dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase or subjunctive dependent clause, that a perfect infinitive or perfect subjunctive is usually followed by an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, even when the principal verb is primary.

*crēdō dēōs immortālēs sparsissē ānīmōs īn corpōrā hūmānā
ūt essent quī terrās tūērentūr.*

I hold that the immortal gods assigned rational souls to human bodies in order that there might exist some beings who should care for the earth.

*accusēs eūm quī sē praesīdīō mūniōrīt ut vitam suam
possēt dēfendērē?*

are you to accuse him for having protected himself by means of a body-guard in order that he might be able to preserve his life?

§ 551. In clauses dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase or on a subjunctive dependent clause, the indicative is used under certain circumstances.

(i.) The indicative is used in a relative or other clause which the writer or speaker introduces for the information of his readers or hearers.

*dēcrēvīt sēnātūs ut ēis quī sālūtīs mēae causā convēnērāt
āgērētūr grātiae.*

the senate decreed that thanks should be tendered to those who had assembled on behalf of my welfare.

Obs. 1. If *convēnissent* were substituted for *convēnērāt*, it would imply that the relative clause formed part of the decree.

(ii.) The indicative is often used in a short relative or other clause which simply defines, and sometimes in a clause introduced by *ut* meaning *as*, *dum* meaning *while*, or *cum* used in a merely temporal sense.

haec ipsā, quae dixi, sentīō fūissē longiōrā.

I feel that what I have said has been itself somewhat long.

quātūs quisquē phīlōsōphōrum invēnitūr quī sīt itā mōrātūs ūt
rātō postulat!

*how few philosophers are found whose manner of life is such as
reason demands!*

nōlitē arbitrārī mē, cum ā vōbīs discessērō, nusquam aut
nullum fōrē.

*you must not think that when I have departed from you I shall
be nowhere or non-existent.*

Obs. 2. Were the subjunctive used after ūt, dum, or cum, the mean-
ing might be mistaken; e.g. cum might be rendered *although* or *since*.

§ 552. In the accusative and infinitive construction (§§ 411,
412), the future infinitive active may be replaced by fōrē
ūt (or fūtūrum essē ūt) and the present or imperfect sub-
junctive active, and the future infinitive passive may be
replaced by fōrē ūt (or fūtūrum essē ūt) and the present or
imperfect subjunctive passive; the present subjunctive is
used when the principal verb is primary, the imperfect
subjunctive when the principal verb is historic (§ 485).

spērō fōrē (or fūtūrum essē) ūt multā discam.

I hope that I shall learn much.

spērābam fōrē (or fūtūrum essē) ūt multā discerem.

I hoped that I should learn much.

sciō fōrē (or fūtūrum essē) ūt urbs cāpiātūr.

I know that the city will be taken.

sciēbam fōrē (or fūtūrum essē) ūt urbs cāpērētūr.

I knew that the city would be taken.

Obs. 1. In this usage the subjunctive is consecutive (§ 544), and
the clause is sub-dependent, being dependent on the infinitive fōrē
or fūtūrum essē.

Obs. 2. The above construction may be used in place of the future
infinitive of any verb, and must be used in the case of verbs that
have no supine base.

§ 553. When a conditional sentence with a subjunctive in the
apodosis becomes a dependent statement or a dependent question,
the subjunctive of the apodosis is represented by a periphrastic form
as shown by the examples in the next two sections.

§ 554. (i.) Direct form: sī nēgem, mentīār.

were I to deny it, I should lie.

(a) aiō mē, sī nēgem, mentitūrum essē.

(b) aiēbam mē, sī nēgārem, mentitūrum essē.

(a) *I declare*

(b) *I was declaring* } *that were I to deny it, I should lie.*

(ii.) Direct form : *sī ādessēs, gandērem.**if you were present, I should be glad.*(a) *dīcō mē,* } *sī ādessēs, gāvīsūrum fūissē.*
(b) *dixī mē,* }(a) *I say that, if you were present, I should be glad.*(b) *I said that, if you had (when I spoke) been present, I should have been glad.*(iii.) Direct form : *sī adfūissēs, gāvīsūs essem.**if you had been present I should have been glad.*(a) *dīcō mē,* } *sī adfūissēs, gāvīsūrum fūissē.*
(b) *dixī mē,* }(a) *I say that, if you had been present, I should have been glad.*(b) *I said that, if you had (on a former occasion) been present, I should have been glad.*§ 555. (i.) Direct form : *quid ēvēniāt, sī urbs cāpiātūr?**what would happen, were the city to be taken?*(a) *mīrōr quid ēventūrum sīt sī urbs cāpiātūr.*(b) *mīrābār quid ēventūrum essēt sī urbs cāpērētūr.*(a) *I wonder*(b) *I was wondering* } *what would happen, were the city to be taken.*(ii.) Direct form : *quid dīcērēs, sī ādessēs?**what would you say if you were there?**scīō (scīēbam) quid, sī ādessēs, dīcērēs.**I know (knew) what you would be saying if you were there.*(iii.) Direct form : *quid dixissēs, sī adfūissēs?**what would you have said if you had been there?**scīō (scīēbam) quid, sī adfūissēs, dictūrūs fūērīs.**I know (knew) what you would have said if you had been there.*NOTE 1.—The perfect subjunctive of *essē* is here used with the future participle in historic as well as in primary sequence (cp. § 547).NOTE 2.—Similar constructions are found when the conditional sentence is introduced by *quān* (after expressions of *doubting*) or by *ūt* consecutive.§ 556. When the verb of the apodosis is passive or has no future participle, *fūtūrum fūissē* *ūt* and the subjunctive may be used to represent the direct form of § 554 (iii.) and the direct form of § 555 (iii.) may remain unchanged.*dīcō (dixī) fūtūrum fūissē* *ūt vincērēmūr, sī bellum indixissēmūs.**I say (said) that we should have been defeated, if we had declared war.**quōd illē sī rēpūdīassēt, dūbitātīs quān vīs essēt allātā?**do you doubt that, had he rejected that, force would have been used?*

II.—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

§ 557. The name *ōrātiō obliquā* (*indirect discourse*) is given to the form assumed by speeches and other statements (usually of some considerable length) reported, not in the words actually used, but, after some verb of *saying, questioning, or commanding*, expressed or understood. For examples, see § 562.

§ 558. The use of moods and tenses in oratio obliqua is the same as in the accusative and infinitive construction or in dependent commands; that is to say:—

Statements in a principal sentence of oratio recta are expressed by the infinitive in oratio obliqua, and commands or verbs in dependent clauses of oratio recta are expressed by the subjunctive in oratio obliqua.

Special rules (§ 563) apply to questions in oratio obliqua.

§ 559. The following are the changes which take place in mood and tense when a sentence is reported in oratio obliqua dependent on an introductory verb in a historic tense.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	Oratio Recta.	Oratio Obliqua.
Statements:	Indic. present	Infinitive present
	„ imperfect	„ perfect
	„ perfect, plupf.	
	„ future	„ future
	„ fut-perf. (act.)	
	„ „ (passive)	Perfect participle with <i>fōrē</i>
Apodosis of Conditional Sentences	Subj. present	Future participle alone or with <i>essē</i>
(Active):	„ impf. or plupf.	Fut. participle with <i>fūissē</i>
Apodosis of Conditional Sentences	„ present	{ <i>fōrē</i> (or <i>fūtūrum essē</i>)
		{ <i>ūt</i> with imperf. subj.
(Passive):	„ impf. or plupf.	<i>fūtūrum fūissē ūt</i> with imperf. subj.
Commands:	Imperative	Subjunctive imperfect
	Subjunctive present or <i>nōli</i> with inf.	
DEPENDENT CLAUSES:	Indic. pres., imperf., fut.	{ Subjunctive imperfect
	Subj. pres., imperf.	
	Indic. perf., pluperf., fut.-perf.	{ Subjunctive pluperfect
	Subj. perf., pluperf.	

§ 560. If the introductory verb is primary instead of (as is assumed above) historic, the same rules hold good, except that the present subjunctive is used instead of imperfect, and the perfect subjunctive instead of the pluperfect. The present and perfect subjunctive are also found occasionally after a historic introductory verb, a more graphic character being thus given to the report. Cp. *vēlīt* in § 562 (a).

§ 561. All verbs and pronouns and possessive adjectives in *oratio obliqua* are of the **third person**; *hic, istē*, adverbs derived from them (§ 243), and some other adverbs, are changed in the transformation from *oratio recta* to *oratio obliqua*.

Oratio Recta.

ēgō, mēus, nōs, nostēr
tū, tūus, vōs, vestēr
hic, istē
nunc

Oratio Obliqua.

sē (in nominative *ipsē*), *sūus*
is (sometimes *illē*), *ēiūs*, etc.
illē (sometimes *hic* is retained)
sometimes changed to *tum*.

NOTE 1.—The first person plural is retained in *oratio obliqua* when it refers to the Roman people.

NOTE 2.—*Sē, sūus*, occasionally represent the second person of the *oratio recta*, and *ipsum, ipsiūs*, the first. Cp. § 563, II. (b).

§ 562. *Oratio Recta.*

(a) *agrum dābō in Itālīā Africā*
Hispaniā ubi quisquē vōlēt; quī
pēcūniam quam agrum mālūērīt,
ēi argentō sātisfāciām.

I will give land in Italy,
Africa, or Spain, wherever each
shall wish; I will satisfy with
money the man who shall prefer
money to land.

(b) *nē commissērīs ūt hic locūs,*
ūbī constitimūs, ex cālāmītātē
pōpūli Rōmānī nōmēn cāpiāt.

do not bring it about that this
place where we have taken our
stand should derive renown
from a disaster to the Roman
people.

Oratio Obliqua.

agrum sēsē dātūrum essē in
Itālīā Africā Hispaniā ubi quisquē
vēlīt (§ 560); quī pēcūniam
quam agrum mālūissēt ēi sē
argentō sātisfactūrum.

he would (he said) give land
in Italy, Africa, or Spain,
wherever each should wish; he
would satisfy with money the
man who should prefer money to
land.

nē committērēt ūt is locūs
ūbī constitissent, ex cālāmītātē
pōpūli Rōmānī nōmēn cāpērēt.

let him not bring it about that
the place where they had taken
their stand should derive renown
from a disaster to the Roman
people.

§ 563. Questions in oratio obliqua (§ 557) are not immediately dependent (as are "dependent questions," § 483) on a principal verb. The following are the main rules:—

I. Questions in which the verb is subjunctive in oratio recta retain the subjunctive in oratio obliqua;

II. (a) Questions in the 1st or 3rd person indicative in oratio recta become infinitive in oratio obliqua;

(b) Questions in the 2nd person indicative in oratio recta become subjunctive in oratio obliqua.

I. cūr vulnerārī pātīār optīmē
dē mē mēritōs militēs?

*why am I to allow troops that
have deserved so well of me to be
wounded?*

cūr vulnerārī pātērētūr optīmē
dē sē mēritōs militēs?

*why was he to allow troops
that had deserved so well of him
to be wounded?*

II. (a) si vērētis contūmēliāe
oblivisci vōlō, num ētiam rē-
centūm iniuriarum mēmōriam
dēpōnērē possum?

*if I am willing to forget
an old insult, can I also lay
aside the remembrance of recent
wrongs?*

si vērētis contūmēliāe oblivisci
vellēt, num ētiam rēcentūm
iniuriarum mēmōriam dēpōnērē
possē?

*if he were willing to forget
an old insult, could he also lay
aside the remembrance of recent
wrongs?*

(b) si Ariovistūs bellum in-
tūlērīt, quid tandem vērēbimīnī?
aut cūr dē vestrā virtutē aut dē
mēā diligentīā despērātīs?

*if Ariovistus makes war, what,
pray, will you fear? or why do
you despair of your own valour
or my carefulness?*

si Ariovistūs bellum intūlissēt,
quid tandem vērērentūr? aut
cūr dē suā virtutē aut dē ipsiūs
diligentiā despērarent?

*if Ariovistus made war, what,
pray, would they fear? or why
did they despair of their own
valour or his carefulness?*

NOTE.—A question in the second person in O.R. may become infinitive in O.O. if practically equivalent to a negative statement.

• ubi tū nobiscum acicē confixistī?
*when did you fight in battle
with us? (i.e. you never fought
in battle with us).*

ubi eum secum acicē confixissē?
*when had he fought in battle
with them?*

Obs. The rules as to tenses in questions in O.O. are the same as for principal statements if the verb is infinitive, and the same as for dependent statements if the verb is subjunctive.

§ 564. TABLE OF SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES.

I.—Subjunctive in Principal Sentences.

		Negative
(A.) HYPOTHETICAL, <i>i.e.</i> in apodosis of		
Conditional Sentences:	see opposite page.	nōn.
§ 517. Potential:	vēlim mīhī ignoscās.	nōn.
(B.) JUSSIVE.		
§ 476. Optative, <i>i.e.</i> expressing a wish:	vālēant civēs mēi.	nē.
§ 477. Command or Prohibition (1st pl. or 3rd person):	āmēmūs patriām.	nē.
§ 477. Command or Prohibition, 2nd sing. indefinite (rare):	{ istō bōnō ūtārē dum adsīt, cum absīt nē rēquīrās.	nē.
§ 478. Colloquial Prohibition, 2nd person (rare in prose):	{ nē pertimescās. tū nē quaesierīs.	nē.
§ 480. Concessive:	nē sint in sēnectūtē vīrēs.	nē.
§ 481. Deliberative or Dubitative:	quid āgam?	nōn.

II.—Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.

(C.) § 493. SEMI-DEPENDENT COMMAND:	vēlim mīhī ignoscās.	—
§ 492. DEPENDENT COMMAND:	tē ōrō ūt huic ignoscās.	nē.
(D.) FINAL, <i>i.e.</i> expressing Purpose.		
§ 539. With final conjunction:	ēdō ūt vīvam.	nē.
§ 541. " " "	adiūvā mē quō id fiāt faciiliūs.	nē.
§ 542. " " "	hiems prōhibēt quōmīnūs vēnīrem.	—
§ 540. " " " after verbs of <i>fearing</i> :	{ vērēor nē vēniant hostēs.	{ nē n or
§ 535. " temporal "	expectā dum vēnīam.	—
§ 501, c. " relative pronoun:	légatōs mittit qui pācem pētant.	nē.
§ 536. " adverb of place:	lōcum pētīt undē hostem invādāt.	nē.
(E.) CONSECUTIVE, <i>i.e.</i> expressing Consequence or Result.		
§ 544. With ūt:	itā stultūs est ūt quidvis crēdāt.	nōn.
	accidit ūt essēt lunā plēnā.	nōn
§ 545. " quīn:	nēmō est quīn hoc crēdāt.	—
§ 501, d. " relative pronoun *:	quīs tam praeceps est quī nēgēt?	nōn
§ 503. " " "	sunt quī divitiās nōn hābēt nt.	nōn

* Or with relative adverb of place (§ 536).

Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses (*continued*).(F.) CONDITIONAL, *i.e.* in protasis of Conditional Sentences.

		Negative.	
§ 512. With subjunctive in apodosis:	sī hōc crēdās, errēs.	} nīsī or sī nōn.	
§ 513. " " "	sī hōc crēdērēs, errārēs.		
" " "	sī hōc crēdīdissēs, errāvissēs.		
§ 519. With sī = <i>to see if</i> :	sī hostēs ādirent exspectābāmūs.	—	
§ 520. " quāsī, vėlūt sī, etc.:	illum horrēō vėlūt sī adsīt.	nōn.	

(G.) CIRCUMSTANTIAL, *i.e.* in Concessive, Causal, and Temporal Clauses.

§ 521. Concessive, with <i>quamvis</i> , <i>hunc</i> , <i>quamvis</i> sīt stultūs, āmō. nōn.	
licēt, ūt, <i>cum</i> (<i>although</i>):	ūt dēsint virēs, vōluntās ādest. nōn.
§ 501. <i>a.</i> Concessive, with <i>quī</i> *:	tū nōn adfūistī, quī illum diem sōlūtūs essēs ōbīrē. nōn.
§ 525. Causal, with <i>cum</i> (<i>since</i>):	cum mē dēfendērē nēquēam, ād tē vēnīō. nōn.
§ 501. <i>b.</i> " " " <i>quī</i> *:	tū, quī nīhīl prōvidērīs, trēpidās. nōn.
§ 531. Temporal, historic tense with <i>cum</i> (occurrence in principal sentence being closely connected):	Gyḡās, cum terrā discessissēt, descendīt in illum hiātum. nōn.

(H.) REPORTING or OBLIQUE.

§ 483. (a) Dependent (*i.e.* Reported) Question:

§ 505. Reported Description:	quaerō quīd Marcūs āgāt. Caesār obsīdēs quī ād eos perfūgissent pōposeit.
------------------------------	--

§ 518. " Condition: templum dēvōvīt sī hostēs fūdissēt.

§ 526. " Cause: Sōcrātēs accūsātūs est quōd iūventūtem corrupērēt.

§ 549. (b) In a clause dependent on a dependent subjunctive: huic impērāt quās possīt ādēāt civitātes.

§ 549. (c) In a clause dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase: vīdī sēnātum, sinē quō civitās stārē nōn possēt, sublātum.

§ 559. In a dependent clause in oratio obliqua: see examples in § 562.

* Or with a relative adverb of place (§ 536).

CHAPTER XLVII. — CONSTRUCTIONS AND USAGES OF CERTAIN WORDS.

§ 565. In the preceding chapters the general principles of syntax and the construction of classes of words have been set out and illustrated. The present chapter deals with some noticeable constructions and usages of individual words. These constructions may, in some cases, be easily seen to be governed by general principles, while in others the connection is not at first sight obvious, and in some few instances cannot with certainty be traced.

I.—SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 566. *Ōpūs*, *work*, constructed with an ablative of that with which the work has to be done (instrument, § 374), signifies (*there is*) *need of*.

māgistrātībūs ōpūs est.

there is need of magistrates (lit. *there is work to be done with magistrates*).

Ōpūs is also used as a secondary predicate in the sense of *necessary*.

dūcēs nobīs ōpūs sunt.

we need leaders (lit. *leaders are necessary for us*).

§ 567. *Ūsūs*, *use*, has a construction and meaning similar to that of *ōpūs* with the ablative. Cp. § 586.

nunc vīrībūs ūsūs.

now we need strength.

II.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 568. Some adjectives, instead of qualifying as a whole the substantives of which they are the attributes, often specify certain parts of those substantives. The adjectives commonly so used are :—

<i>prīmūs</i> , <i>first</i>	<i>mēdiūs</i> , <i>middle</i>	<i>extrēmūs</i> , <i>last</i>
<i>summūs</i> , <i>highest</i>	<i>infimūs</i> or <i>imūs</i> ,	} <i>lowest</i> <i>rēliquūs</i> , <i>remaining</i>

They are commonly rendered by English substantives, thus : *prīmum vēr*, *the beginning of spring* ; *mēdiā urbs*, *the middle of the city* ; *extrēmā ōrātiō*, *the end of the speech* ; *summūs mons*, *the top of the mountain* ; *infimā arā*, *the lowest part of the altar* ; *rēliquā praedā*, *the rest of the booty*.

§ 569. *Similis*, *like*, is used with a genitive or dative of that with which its substantive is compared. A person is more commonly in the genitive; a thing is in the genitive or dative indifferently.

Atticōrum similēs esse vōlūmus.

we wish to be like the Attic writers.

quid hābēt illiūs carminis similē haec ōrātiō?

what resemblance has this speech to that poem?

nihil est mortī tam similē quam somnūs.

nothing is so like death as sleep.

NOTE.—*Dissimilis*, *unlike*, is constructed like *similis*.

§ 570. The following adjectives are used with an ablative:—*dignūs*, *worthy (of)*; *indignūs*, *unworthy (of)*; *praeditūs*, *endowed (with)*; *frētūs*, *relying (on)*; *contentūs*, *content (with)*; *laetūs*, *rejoicing (in)*.

* Rhyme:—Construct with ablative *contentūs*, *laetūs*,
Dignūs, *indignūs*, *praeditūs*, and *frētūs*.

glandē sūēs laetī rēdēunt.

the swine return gladdened with acorns.

dignum laudē vīrum Mūsā vētāt mōrī.

the Muse forbids the man who is worthy of praise to die.

§ 571. *Aptūs*, *fit*, and *idōnēūs*, *suitable*, are used with the dative, or with *ad* and the accusative.

castrā erant ad bellum dūcendum aptissimā.

the camp was well suited for prolonging the war.

Caesar castris idōnēum locum dēlēgīt.

Caesar chose a spot suitable for a camp.

§ 572. *Dignūs*, *indignūs*, *aptūs*, *idōnēūs* are followed by *quī* and the subjunctive.

nullā vidēbātūr aptiōr persōnā quae dē sēnēctūtē:

lōquērētūr.

there seemed no character more fit to discourse on old age.

§ 573. **Ālīūs** (§ 81) is frequently repeated in a different case, or followed by an adverb formed from it. The translation of the doubled **ālīūs** is to be noted.

ālīūs in āliā est rē māgis ūtilīs.

one is more useful in one business, another in another.

ālīi āliō mittēbantūr.

some were being sent one way, some another.

NOTE.—**Ālīūs** followed by **atquē** or **ac** is used in the sense of *other than*; e.g. **Hi longē āliā ratiōnē ac reliquī Galli bellum gērunt,** *These wage war in a manner very different from the rest of the Gauls.*

NUMERALS.

§ 574. The plural of **ūnūs** is used with **substantives** plural in form and singular in meaning; e.g. **ūnae littērae,** *one letter (epistle)*; **ūnā castrā,** *one camp.* (Distributives are used with these substantives for numbers above 1, see § 99.)

§ 575. In poetry **distributives**, singular or plural, are sometimes substituted for the corresponding cardinal numerals.

ternō consurgunt ordinē rēmī.

the oars rise in three tiers.

tōt lectī procērēs tēr dēnīs nāvībūs ibant.

in thrice ten ships an equal number of chosen nobles were voyaging.

III.—PRONOUNS.

§ 576. The **personal pronouns** **egō, tū,** are seldom used in the nominative except for emphasis or contrast.

vōs itē dōmum, egō rūs ibō.

you go home, I will go into the country.

Obs. For the distinction between the two forms of the genitive plural (**nostrum, vestrum,** and **nostrī, vestrī**), see § 395, *Obs.*

§ 577. In simple sentences **sē, sūūs,** refer to the subject.

Caesār sē ad sūōs rēcēpīt.

Caesar returned (lit. took himself back) to his men.

NOTE.—**Sūūs** sometimes (provided no ambiguity thereby arises) refers to some word other than the subject; e.g. **Hannibālem sūi civēs ē civitatē ēiecērunt,** *His fellow-citizens expelled Hannibal from the state.*

Obs. In the accusative and infinitive construction **sē, sūūs,** refer to the subject of the principal verb.

§ 578. In **complex** sentences the question arises as to whether *sē*, *sūus*, are *in the dependent clause* to be used in reference to the subject of the principal sentence or to that of the dependent clause.

Classical usage is not on this point altogether uniform, but the following rules generally hold good:—

(1) *Sē* or *sūus* in a dependent clause refers to the subject of the principal sentence if the dependent clause has its verb in the subjunctive mood, and is (a) a final clause or dependent command, (b) a *reported* description, condition, cause, or a dependent question (§ 564, c, d, H).

(a) *pēturunt principēs ut sibi dē sūa sālūtē cum eō agērē licērēt.*

the chiefs begged that it might be permitted them to treat with him concerning their lives.

(b) *dēcimā lēgiō Caesārī grātiās ēgīt quōd dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcissēt.*

the tenth legion tendered its thanks to Caesar for having formed a high opinion of it.

hī abs tē rēquīrunt cūr sē dēlēgērīs.

these men are inquiring of you why you selected them.

(2) *Sē* or *sūus* in dependent clauses other than the above refers to the subject of the clause; *is*, *eiūs*, being used to refer to the subject of the principal sentence.

ēō impētū militēs iēerunt ut hostēs sē fūgae mandārent.

the troops charged with such force that the enemy betook themselves to flight.

hunc, cum ad eōs Caesārīs mandatā dēferrēt, hostēs comprehendērunt.

the enemy, when he brought them Caesar's commands, took him prisoner.

Obs. Of the above examples the first contains a consecutive, the latter a temporal, clause.

§ 579. *Sē*, *sūus*, are used in reference to an indefinite subject.

dēformē est dē sē ipsum praedicārē.

it is bad form to brag about oneself.

nōn licēt sūi commōdī causā nōcērē altērī.

it is not permissible to injure another for one's own advantage.

For the case of *ipsum*, see § 581 and § 404.

§ 580. *Hic, illē, etc.*, used as subject of a sentence containing a secondary predicate, are attracted into the gender of that predicate.

hōc ōpūs, hīc lābōr est.

this is the toil, this is the hard work.

§ 581. When used with a reflexive pronoun, *ipsē* agrees with the subject of the sentence, unless the object is the emphatic word.

mē ipsē consōlōr.

I soothe my own grief.

omnē ānīmāl sē ipsum dīlīgīt.

every living thing loves itself.

Obs. Thus, in the first example above, *mē ipsē consōlōr* means *it is from myself, not from others, that I derive consolation*: whereas *mē ipsum consōlōr* would mean *it is myself, not others, that I console*.

§ 582. *Quī* frequently stands at the beginning of a Latin sentence, where English idiom requires a personal or demonstrative pronoun with or without *and*. This is especially the case when *quī* is followed by *cum* (*when*).

quā rē cognītā, Caesār prōfīciscī contendīt.

on learning this, Caesar hastens his departure.

quībūs ex nāvībūs cum essent expōsītī mīlītēs, Mōrīnī cōvērunt.

and when the troops had disembarked from these ships, the Morini assembled.

§ 583. *Quīs* following *nesciō*, *I know not*, forms a phrase (*nesciō quīs*) equivalent to *some one*.

laudābāt hōmō doctūs phīlōsōphōs nesciō quōs.

a learned man used to praise some philosophers (lit. *I know not what philosophers*).

Obs. Thus used *nesciō quīs* does not affect the mood of the verb, and is sometimes written as one word—*nesciōquīs*. Distinguish *nesciō quīs ādest*, *some one is here*, from *nesciō quīs adsīt*, *I do not know who is here* (dependent question).

§ 584. *Quisquē* used after a superlative adjective is translated by *all*.

optimūs quisquē hōc sentīt.

all the best men are of this opinion.

IV.—VERBS.

§ 585. Certain verbs are differently rendered according as they are constructed with a direct object in the accusative or an indirect object in the dative; the commonest are *cāvĕō*, *mētūō* and *tīmĕō*, *consūlō*, *mōdĕrōr* and *tempĕrō*.

cāvĕ cānem, beware of the dog
mētūunt dōminum servī, the
slaves fear their master

poenam tīmĕō, I fear punishment

consūlō orāculum, I consult the
oracle

mōdĕrōr ĕquum, I manage a
horse

Iuppĭtĕr mundum tempĕrāt,
Jupiter rules the world

cāvĕ tībī, look out for yourself
mētūe tuis, be anxious about
your people

urbī tīmĕō, I am anxious about
the city

consūlē fāmae tūae, have regard
to your reputation

mōdĕrōr irae, I set bounds to my
anger

tempĕrō linguae, I restrain my
tongue

NOTE.—*Nūbō*, I marry (said of the woman), is also constructed with a dative; e.g. *Porciā Brūtō nupsit*, Porcia married Brutus.

§ 586. The verbs *ūtōr*, I use; *ābūtōr*, I misuse; *fungōr*, I perform; *frūōr*, I enjoy, are constructed with an ablative representing the direct object of the corresponding English verbs; an ablative is also used with *dignōr*, I deem myself worthy of; *pōtīōr*, I gain possession of; *vescōr*, I feed on.

Rhyme:—Put ablative with *dignōr*, *vescōr*, *ūtōr*,
And *fungōr*, *frūōr*, *pōtīōr*, *ābūtōr*.

impĕdimentis castrisque nostrī pōtīti sunt.
our men gained possession of the baggage and camp.

fungār inānī mūnĕrē.
I shall perform a fruitless task.

rĕcōrdātiōnē nostrae amicitiae frūōr.
I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship.

Obs. With the above verbs the ablative was originally instrumental; e.g. *pōtīōr*, I make myself powerful by means of.

NOTE 1.—*Pōtīōr* is sometimes found with a genitive; e.g. *Vexillī hostēs pōtīti sunt*, The enemy gained possession of the standard.

NOTE 2.—*Nitōr*, I endeavour or lean, is in the latter sense used with an ablative; e.g. *Iūvenis hastā nititūr*, The youth is leaning on his spear.

§ 587. Three common verbs, (a) *circumdō*, (b) *dōnō*, and (c) *mūtō*, have each two constructions, as shown in the following examples:—

- (a) *impērātōr armātōs contīnī circumdēdit.*
the general placed armed men around the meeting.
impērātōr oppidum vallō ēt fossā circumdēdit.
the general surrounded the town with a mound and trench.
- (b) *Caesār praedam exercitūi dōnāt.*
Caesar presents the booty to the army.
Quintum cōrōnā dōnastī.
you presented Quintus with a wreath.
- (c) *mītībūs mūtārē quaerō tristīā.*
I seek to change harsh words for mild.
saepē Lūcrētīlem mūtāt Lŷcaeō Faunūs.
Faunus often chooses Lucretilis in place of Lycaeus.

Obs. In both constructions of *mūtō* the ablative is that of price (§ 377); in the former the accusative is the thing *given* in exchange, in the latter it is the thing *taken* in exchange.

§ 588. The construction of two impersonal verbs, *intērest* and *rēfert*, both meaning *it concerns*, calls for special attention.

(a) The person or thing concerned, if represented by an English personal pronoun of the first or second person or reflexive pronoun of the third person, is expressed by the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective (*mēā, nostrā; tūā, vestrā; suā*), and (with *intērest* only) by the genitive of other words.

(b) The extent to which the person or thing is concerned is expressed by a genitive of value (§ 363) or an accusative neuter singular (§ 341); e.g. *parvī, nihīl, quīd?*

(c) That which concerns the person or thing is expressed (with *rēfert* only) by a neuter singular pronoun (*hōc, id, illūd*), or (with either verb) by an infinitive or a dependent question, or (with *intērest* only) by a final clause introduced by *ūt* or *nē*.

quīd hōc tūā rēfert?

in what respect does this concern you?

tūā ē mēā magnī intērest tē vālērē.

it is of great importance to you and to me that you should be well

quid illiūs interest ūbī sis?
what does it matter to him where you are?
 mēa magnī interest tē ūt vīdēam.
it is of great importance to me to see you.

Obs. The possessive adjectives mēa, tūa, etc., agree with rē (abl. sing. of rēs) in rē-fert, the original sense having probably been it bears in the direction of my affairs.

§ 589. Verbs of *hoping, promising, and threatening* (spērō, prōmittō, pollicēor, mīnor) are usually constructed with an accusative and future infinitive (or future participle).

spērāt ādōlescens dīu sē victūrum.
a young man hopes to live long.

Caesar pollicītus est sibi ēam rem cūrae futūram.

Caesar promised that the matter should receive his attention (lit. be a care to him).

• *Obs.* The above rule would be unnecessary were it not for the idiomatic use of the English present infinitive. In Latin the present or perfect infinitive is used only where the sense requires it; e.g. Spērō tibi mē causam prōbassē, *I hope I have proved my case to you.*

• § 590. With an infinitive passive coeptus sum, the passive form of coepi, *I began*, is used.

contemnī coepti ērant Rōmānī ā finitīmīs pōpūlīs.
the Romans had begun to be despised by the neighbouring tribes.

V.—ADVERBS.

§ 591. Noticeable usages of some of the adverbs enumerated in §§ 238—239 are here illustrated.

ceu Anchīsae faciēs fūgit ceu fūmūs in aurās.
the form of Anchises passed away like smoke into the air.

pērindē . . . hōc pērindē atquē ēgō pūtāram ēvēnīt.
this turned out exactly as I had expected.

sēcīūs or } nīhīlō sēcīūs Caesar ōpūs perficēre constitūt.
 sēcīūs (§ 252) } *none the less Caesar determined to complete the work.*

ultrō . . . quōd antēā pētentībūs dēnēgārāt, ultrō pollicītus est.
what he had previously refused to their entreaty he promised unasked.

usquē . . . Caesār usquē ād castrā hostīum accessit.
Caesar advanced right up to the enemy's camp.
 nē...quīdem. nē nunc quīdem vīrēs dēsīdērō.
not even now do I feel the want of strength.

The emphatic word is placed between *nē* and *quīdem*. Except in connection with *quīdem*, *nē* is constructed with an imperative (§ 473) or subjunctive (§ 564).

nē or nae . . . nē ēgō vēlīm tībī plācērō.
 (with pronouns) *I should indeed like to please you.*

For *utinam*, see § 476; for the adverbs of interrogation, see §§ 450, 452—454, 487—491.

§ 592. *Haud*, *not*, is used with adjectives and adverbs, and reverses their meaning. It is rarely found with verbs, except in the phrase *haud sciō ān* (§ 491).

haud ignōtae bellī artēs.
the art of war was by no means unknown (i.e. well known).
 haud fācīlē dixerim cūr haec itā sint.
I should find it difficult to say why these things are so.

Obs. *Nōn* is the ordinary negative with adjectives, adverbs, and verbs alike.

§ 593. *Quam* is very commonly used after comparative adjectives and adverbs in the sense of *than*.

(a) When two persons or things are compared, the substantives denoting them must, if *quam* is used, be in the same case.

ōdīis prōpē māiōribūs certāunt quā vīribūs.
they fought with almost greater hatred than strength.

For the ablative of the standard of comparison, see § 387.

(b) When the subject of comparison is the degree in which two adjectives are respectively applicable to a substantive, *māgis* is used with the former adjective, or both adjectives are comparative. In both constructions the gender, number, and case of the two adjectives are the same.

hōrum corpōrā magnā māgis quā firmā sunt.
their bodies are large rather than strong.
 dictātōris trīumphūs elārīōr quā grātīōr fūit.
the dictator's triumph was more brilliant than popular.

§ 594. *Quam*, with or without *possum*, used with superlative adjectives and adverbs, is represented by the English phrase as . . . *as possible*.

Caesar quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam contendit.

Caesar hastens into Gaul by means of as long marches as possible.

Caesar quam angustissimè Pompeium continēbāt.

Caesar was hemming Pompeius in as closely as possible.

§ 595. The adverbs *ampliūs*, *plūs*, *mīnūs*, are used with numerals in the sense of *more than*, *less than*.

hostēs nōn ampliūs octingentōs equitēs habuerunt.
the enemy had no more than 800 horsemen.

ceciderē dūō milia haud mīnūs peditum.
there fell not less than 2000 infantry.

NOTE.—The above is the usual construction of these words with numerals, but the ablative is also found with *ampliūs*; e.g. *Ampliūs horis sex pugnabātūr*, *The battle went on for more than six hours*. *Plūs* may be followed by *quam*.

§ 596. *Prōpiūs*, *nearer*; *proximē*, *nearest*, may be used (like *prōpē*) as prepositions with the accusative.

prōpiūs pericūlum fuerunt qui vicērunt.
those who conquered were nearer danger.

VI.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 597. The following are examples of the more noticeable or idiomatic usages of prepositions. The primary or ordinary meanings are not illustrated here if sufficiently obvious from the list in §§ 255—257.

§ 598. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

ad, to . . . *praesidium ad pontem relictum est.*
a garrison was left at the bridge.

omnia ad nūtum et ad vōluntātem eiūs facta sunt.
everything was done in accordance with his will and pleasure.

ād, to . . . vīr bōnūs est, sēd nīhīl ād Persiūm.
he is a good man, but nothing compared with Persius.

omnēs ād ūnum caesī sunt.
they were all slain to a man.

āpūd, with (a person), at
 the house of. rēs āgītūr āpūd praetōrem pōpūli Rōmānī ēt āpūd
 sēvērissimōs iudicēs.

the case is being heard before a praetor of the Roman people and before a very strict jury.

āpūd Xēnōphontem Cīrūs haec dicit.
Cyrus speaks thus in Xenophon (i.e. in a book by Xenophon).

ergā, towards (a person). ēodem mōdō ergā āmicūm affecti essē dēbēmūs quō
 ergā nosmēt ipsōs.

we ought to be disposed towards a friend exactly as we are towards ourselves.

intēr, between, among. āmicī cōlent intēr sē āc diligēt.
friends will honour and esteem one another.

ōb, because of. exilium mīhī ōb ōculōs versābātūr.
exile was ever before my eyes.

pēnēs, in the power of. ēloquentiā ēōs ornāt pēnēs quōs est.
eloquence graces those in whose possession it is.

pēr, through . pēr tē dēōs ōrō.
I entreat thee by the gods.

Obs. In this usage pēr is frequently separated from its accusative, as above.

stātissē pēr Trēbōnium quōmīnūs oppidō pōtīrentūr
 vīdēbātūr.

it seemed to have been owing to Trebonius that they did not gain possession of the town.

praetēr, beyond. hōc nēmīni praetēr mē vīdētūr.
this seems so to no one except me.

sēcundum, following on. Caesār sex lēgiōnēs sēcundum flūmēn duxit.
Cæsar led six legions along by the river.

sēcundum nātūrā vivāmūs.
let us live in accordance with nature.

sūprā, above. caesā ēō diē sūprā millā vīgintī.
above 20,000 were slain on that day.

§ 599. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE ONLY.

- ā, āb, *from* Gallia attingit āb Sēquānīs ēt Helvētīs flūmēn
or (of the Rhēnum.
agent) *by.* Gaul reaches the river Rhine on the side of
the Sequani and Helvetii.
sūmūs impārātī cum ā milītībūs tum ā pēcūniā.
we are unprepared both in respect of troops
and in respect of money.
commūnē est quōd nīhīlō māgis āb adversāriīs
quam ā nōbīs fācīt.
that is neutral which sides no more with our
opponents than with us.
- cum, *with* . . . vērītās cūm hōc fācīt.
truth is on his side.
- dē, *down from* templum sōlidō dē marmōrē pōnam.
I will build a temple of solid marble.
surgunt dē noctē lātrōnēs.
robbers rise by night.
concessum āb nōbilitātē dē consulē plēbēiō.
a concession was made by the nobles with
regard to a plebeian consul.
- ē, ex, *out of* . Bōi ex itinērē nostrōs aggressi sunt.
the Boii attacked our men while on the march.
nīhīl est tam mīsērābilē quam ex bēātō mīsēr.
nothing is so pitiable as a man who is wretched
after being happy.
ērāt ē rēgiōnē oppidī collīs.
there was a hill opposite the town.
hōc ē rēpublicā feci.
I did this in the interest of the state.
- prae, *in front* prae cētēris Cātō in sēnectatē flōrūt.
of. beyond all others Cato was at his prime in old age.
nēc lōquī prae maerōrē pōtūt (with negatives only).
nor could he speak for grief.
- pro, *before, in-* consilium prō tempōrē ēt prō rē capē.
stead of. take counsel in accordance with the occasion
and the circumstances.

proelium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium
fuit.

*the battle was more deadly than would be
expected for the number of combatants.*

§ 600. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABATIVE.

in (with acc.), raro in equum ascendō.

into. I seldom mount a horse.

exercitus in dies senescēbāt.

the army was wasting away from day to day.

Cicero quattuor orationes in Catilinam habuit.

Cicero made four speeches against Catilina.

in (with abl.), imperator in equo sedēbāt.

in. the general was on horseback.

Caesar respondit se quod in Nervii fecisset,
facturum.

*Caesar answered that he would do what he had
done in the case of the Nervii.*

sub (with acc.), sub montem succedunt milites.

up to. the troops march up to the foot of the mountain.

Pompeius sub noctem navē solvit.

*Pompeius weighed anchor at (i.e. just after)
nightfall.*

sub (with abl.), Ariovistus sub monte consedit.

*below, under. Ariovistus took up a position at the foot of
the mountain.*

adhuc sub iudice lis est.

the case is still before the court.

VII.—CONJUNCTIONS.

CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS (§ 261).

§ 601. Of the conjunctions meaning *and* the most usual is *et*, which is used to connect words, clauses, and sentences; *-que* usually connects words, and is often used in the case of two objects commonly associated, e.g. *senatus populusque Romanus*, *the senate and people of Rome*.

Atquē or ac properly means *and indeed, and especially*, though often used by way of variety for *et*. (Atquē is used before a vowel or a consonant, ac before consonants only.)

dīs immortālībūs hābendā est grātiā, atquē ipsī Iōvī Stātōri.
thanks must be rendered to the immortal gods, and especially to Jupiter the Stayer himself.

intrā moeniā atquē in sīnū urbīs sunt hostēs.
within the walls, and indeed in the very heart of the city, there are foes.

§ 602. In lists and enumerations, *et* (if used at all) is usually inserted before each item after the first, instead of before the last only.

sunt mōrōsi *et* anxii *et* irācundi *et* difficīlēs sēnēs.
old men are peevish, uneasy, wrathful, and hard to please.

Obs. Often, however, the items are enumerated without any conjunction being used; this usage is known as "asyndeton" (§ 611).

• § 603. Two attributes of a substantive must be connected by a conjunction.

mīhī cum Marcō Crassō multae *et* magnae contentiōnēs fūerunt.
I have had many great contests with Marcus Crassus.

§ 604. Of the commoner conjunctions usually rendered *but*, *sed* limits or corrects a preceding statement, introducing something in contrast to it, whereas *autem* merely denotes transition to a fresh thought; *at* is strongly adversative, and often means *but, it may be objected*.

difficīlē factū est, *sed* cōnābōr tāmēn.
it is difficult to do, but I will nevertheless try.

vītā dēsertā āb āmicis nōn pōtest essē iūcundā; *sed* haec hactēnūs; cōstitūendī autem sunt quāsi termīni dilīgendī.
life devoid of friends cannot be pleasant; but enough of this (lit. these things so far); now the bounds (so to speak) of affection have to be determined.

mālē iūdicāvit pōpūlūs; *at* iūdicāvit: nōn dēbuit; *at* pōtuit.
"the people decided amiss"; "but it did decide": "it ought not to have done so". "but it had the power."

§ 605. Of the conjunctions meaning *or*, *aut* contrasts things essentially opposed; *vēl* and the enclitic *-vē* leave the choice open as to some detail.

citā mors vēnit aut victōriā laetā.

swift death comes or else joyful victory.

*tantā vīs prōbitātis est ut eam vēl in eis quos numquam
vidimūs vēl in hostē diligāmūs.*

*so great is the force of goodness that we esteem it either in those
whom we have never seen or in an enemy.*

āmicī rēgis dūo tresvē perdivitēs sunt.

two or three friends of the king are very rich.

§ 606. A second final clause is, if negative, introduced by *nēvē* or *neu*.

*Caesar militēs cōhortātūs est uti sūae pristinae virtūtis
mēmōriam rētīnērent neu perturbārentūr ānimō.*

*Caesar encouraged his troops to preserve the remembrance of
their former valour and not to be troubled in mind.*

§ 607. Alternative conditional clauses are introduced by *sivē . . . sivē* or *seu . . . seu*. These conjunctions are also used when the alternatives are expressed by single words or phrases instead of complete clauses.

*illō lōcō libentissimē solēō uti, sivē quid mēcum ipsē
cōgitō sivē quid scribō aut lēgō.*

*I am in the habit of frequenting that spot with great pleasure,
either if I am pondering anything in my mind or if I am
writing or reading anything.*

*omnēs libertatē carent sivē rēgi sivē optimatibūs serviunt.
all lack liberty if they are slaves either to a king or to an
aristocracy.*

Obs. The use of *sivē . . . sivē* must be clearly distinguished from that of *utrum . . . an*. The latter introduce the two alternatives of a double question, direct or dependent; e.g. *Quid refert utrum rēgi an optimatibūs serviāmūs?* *What does it matter whether we are slaves to a king or to an aristocracy?*

§ 608. The usages of subordinating conjunctions are given in Chapter XLV. A summary will be found on page 169.

APPENDIX

(A.) GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

§ 609. The terms here explained are applied to certain modes of expression occasionally met with in the classical writers. The names are all of Greek origin, and are best remembered by means of their literal signification, here added in parentheses.

§ 610. *Āpōsiōpēsīs* (*a lapse into silence*) is the sudden breaking off of a sentence when incomplete.

quōs ēgō—sēd mōtōs praestāt compōnērē fluctūs.
whom I—but it is better to calm the troubled waters.

§ 611. *Āsyndētōn* (*lack of conjunction*) is the term applied to the co-ordination of words without the use of conjunctions.

ābīit excessit ēvāsīt ērūpīt.
he went away, he withdrew, he passed out, he burst forth.

• § 612. *Brachylogy* (*brāchylōgiā*, *short expression*) is frequent where in English the phrase *that of* would be used.

multōs castrā iūvant, ēt litūō tūbae permixtūs sōnītūs.
camp-life delights many, and the sound of the bugle blended with (that of) the clarion.

§ 613. *Chiasmūs* (*forming the Greek letter X—named “chi”*): In this figure one pair of words (*A, a*) corresponds to another pair (*B, b*), and the order in the sentence is *A, a, b, B*.

pēiūs victōribūs Sēquānis quam Aedūis victīs accidīt.
war happened to the conquering Sequani than to the conquered Aedui.

Obs. The following diagram illustrates the name “chiasmus”:—

<i>pēiūs victōribūs</i>	<i>Sēquānis</i>
<i>quam Aedūis</i>	<i>victīs accidīt.</i>

§ 614. *Hendiādys* (*one thing through two*): this term is applied when two substantives takes the place of a substantive and an attributive adjective.

pātērīs libāmūs ēt aurō.
we make drink-offerings from cups and gold.

Obs. Here *pātērīs ēt aurō* stands for *pātērīs aurēis, golden bowls*.

§ 615. *Hypallāgē (exchange)*: an attributive adjective is occasionally transferred from the substantive to which it is strictly applicable to some other substantive in the sentence.

dōlentem nōn purpurārūm sīdērē clārīōr dēlēnīt ūsūs.

the use of purple garments more brilliant than a constellation soothes not the sufferer.

Obs. Here *clārīōr* goes grammatically with *ūsūs*, but in sense applies to *purpurārūm*.

§ 616. *Litōtēs (simplicity)* is an intentional understatement, often implying modesty on the speaker's part.

bēnē dicere haud absurdum est.

to use language well is no contemptible thing.

§ 617. *Meiōsis (lessening)*: another name for *litotes*.

§ 618. *Oxymōrōn (pointedly foolish)*: an expression intentionally self-contradictory, and containing an inner meaning.

ūnā perūrūm fūit in pārentem splēndidē mendax.

one was nobly false to her perjured father.

Obs. Cp. in English: "Faith unfaithful kept him falsely true."

§ 619. *Prōlēpsīs (anticipation)* is the name given to the usage in which an adjective describes the state in which its substantive will be after the action of the verb has taken place.

submersās obrūē puppēs.

swamp the ships till they sink.

Obs. So in English; e.g. "He drained the cup dry."

§ 620. *Syncōpē (striking together)*: the meeting of consonants consequent upon the dropping of a vowel in the middle of a word; e.g. *vinelūm* for *vincūlūm*, *chain*.

§ 621. *Sŷneedōchē (understanding one thing with another)*: the use of the name of a part of a thing to signify the whole; e.g. *cārinā*, *keel*, or *puppīs*, *poop*, for *nāvīs*, *ship*.

§ 622. *Sŷnēsīs (sense)*: this term is applied to constructions in which the concord is governed by the meaning, not the form, of the expression.

pars ēpūlis ōnērānt mensās.

part (i.e. some of them) load the tables with the banquet.

Rēmō cum frātrē Quīrīnūs iūrā dābunt.

Quirinus with his brother Remus will ordain laws.

cāpītā coniūrātiōnis virgīs caesi.

the heads (i.e. ringleaders) of the conspiracy were beaten with

§ 623. *Tmēsīs (a cutting)*: the separation of the parts of a compound word by intervening words.

quō nōs cumquē fēret fortūnā, Ibimūs.
whithersoever fortune shall bear us, we will go.

Obs. Here quō and cumquē would naturally form one word.

§ 624. *Zeugmā (a yoking)*: in this usage two subjects or two objects are constructed with a verb, which, strictly speaking, is suitable only to one of them.

tē grēgēs centum Sicūlaequē circum mūgiunt vaccae.
around thee a hundred flocks (bleat) and Sicilian kine are lowing.

Obs. Cp. in English: "See Pan with flocks, with fruits Pomona crowned."

(D.) THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

§ 625. In each month there were three days named respectively *Kālendae (Kalends)*, *Nōnae (Nones)*, and *Idūs (Ides)*.

The *Kalends* were always on the 1st, the *Nones* were in most months on the 5th, and the *Ides* on the 13th.

But in July, October, March, and May,
Nones were the seventh, *Ides* the fifteenth day.

Obs. The *Nones* were always (according to the inclusive method of reckoning in use with the Romans) nine days before the *Ides* (cp. *nōnūs, ninth*).

§ 626. The Roman months were designated by adjectives, sometimes used substantivally in the masculine (the word *mensis, month*, being understood), but usually in agreement with one of the words *Kālendae, Nōnae, Idūs*. These adjectives are *Iānuāriūs, Febrūāriūs, Martiūs, Aprīlis, Māiūs, Iūniūs, Quintīlis, Sextīlis, Septēmbēr, Octōbēr, Nōvēmbēr, Dēcebēr*. *Quintīlis (July)* was after the death of Julius Caesar named *Iulīūs* in his honour, and *Sextīlis* was similarly changed to *Augustūs* in honour of the Emperor.

Of these adjectives, those ending in *-ūs* are declined like *bōnūs* (§ 80); those in *-is* like *tristīs* (§ 86); and those in *-ēr* like *ācēr* (§ 86).

Martiīs caelebs quid agīs Kālendīs?

What are you, a bachelor, doing on the first of March?

consulēs II, quōs diximūs, Idībūs Dēcembrībūs māgistrātum occēpērē.

the consuls that I have mentioned entered upon their office on the 13th of December.

§ 627. Intervening days were reckoned as so many days before the next Kalends, Nones, or Ides, as the case might be, as follows :—

Dec. 30. *antē diēm tertium Kālendās Iānuāriās* (a. d. iii. Kal. Ian.).

Dec. 31. *pridīe Kālendās Iānuāriās* (prid. Kal. Ian.).

Jan. 1. *Kālendae Iānuāriae* (Kal. Ian.).

Jan. 2. *antē diēm quartum Nōnās Iānuāriās* (a. d. iv. Non. Ian.).

It is important to observe that the Roman method of reckoning was *inclusive*; e.g. Dec. 30 is the third day before Jan. 1, both days being included.

The rule for expressing a Roman date in English is as follows :—

For a day between the Kalends and Nones, add 1 to the date on which the Nones fall, and subtract.

For a day between the Nones and Ides, add 1 to the date on which the Ides fall, and subtract.

For a day between the Ides and Kalends, add 2 to the number of days in the month preceding those Kalends, and subtract.

Take for example *antē diēm sextum Nōnās Martiās*: the Nones of March were on the 7th; add 1 to 7 and subtract 6; this gives March 2.

Again, *antē diēm sextum dēcimum Kālendās Aprīlēs*: March, the month preceding the Kalends of April, has 31 days; add 2 to 31, and subtract 16; this gives March 17.

NOTE 1.—To express *the day before* the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, the word *pridīe* was used instead of the phrase *antē diēm*; e.g. *pridīe Idūs Sextilēs*, August 12.

Obs. 1. The phrase *antē diēm*, etc., probably originated thus: the ablative form (denoting time when, § 371) was, e.g., *diē tertio antē Kālendās Iānuāriās*; subsequently *antē* was transferred to the beginning and *diē* was changed to *diēm*, as if it were governed by *antē*.

Obs. 2. *Pridīe*, on the day before, is constructed with an accusative which is due to analogy with the construction of *antē diēm*.

Obs. 3. The examples given above are in accordance with the reformed Calendar introduced by Gaius Julius Caesar, B.C. 45.

§ 628. The above phrases expressing dates having come to be regarded as substantives, they may be used after prepositions.

ex antē diēm tertium Nōnās Iūniās usquē ad pridīe Kālendās Octōbrēs nuntiūs vēnit nullūs.

from June 3 to September 30 no messenger came.

(C.) ROMAN MONEY.

§ 629. The original unit in the Roman monetary system was the *ās*, a copper coin which was gradually debased in value, and in the classical period weighed half an ounce. The *ās* was not used as the unit for reckoning sums of money after the end of the second century B.C., the *sestertius* (see below) taking its place for this purpose.

In the classical period the silver coin in most common use was the *denarius*, equivalent to 16 (originally 10) *asses*. reckonings were made by the *sestertius* (= $\frac{1}{4}$ *denarius*, and originally equivalent to 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*). The full name of the *sestertius* (for which the symbol was HS) was *sestertius nummus*; it was also known simply as *nummus*. In English it is called *sesterce*.

§ 630. The bullion value of a *denarius* of the classical period is a little over 8d., that of a *sestertius* about 2d. Hence 1000 *sestertii* = £8 10s. It must be clearly understood that these values are not intended to represent the *purchasing power* of money at Rome.

§ 631. The unit used in reckoning sums of money was the *sestertius*.

- In expressing *thousands* of *sestertii* (up to one million) the word *millia* was omitted and *sestertium*, the genitive plural of *sestertius*, was converted into a neuter plural substantive; the number of thousands was denoted by a distributive numeral.

căpît illē ex sūis praediis sexcēnā sestertiā, ēgō centēnā ex mēis.

he receives from his estates 600,000 sesterces, I receive 100,000 from mine.

In expressing *hundreds of thousands* of *sestertii*, if amounting to not less than one million, the words *centēnā millia* were omitted, and *sestertium* was declinable as a neuter singular substantive; the number of hundreds of thousands was denoted by an adverbial numeral.

quadringentiēs sestertium debūistī.

you owed forty million (400 × 100 × 1000) sesterces.

syngraphā sestertiī centiēs factā.

a bond for ten million (100 × 100 × 1000) sesterces was given.

Obs. The above rules may be tabulated thus:—

Up to 1000 sesterces cardinal	with <i>sestertii</i> as <i>dēcem sestertiū</i> (10)
2000 to 900,000 „	distributive „ <i>sestertiā</i> „ <i>dēnā sestertiā</i>
	(10,000)
1,000,000 sesterces	} adverbial „ <i>sestertium</i> „ { <i>sestertium dēcīsa</i>
and upwards	
	(1,000,000)

§ 632. The *ās* remained the theoretical unit in reckoning interest, portions of inheritances, etc., after it had dropped out of use as the unit for reckoning sums of money. The following fractions of the *ās* were thus employed:—

uncī-ā (-ae)	= $\frac{1}{12}$	quincun-x (-cis)	= $\frac{5}{12}$	dōdran-s (-tis)	= $\frac{3}{4}$
sextan-s (-tis)	= $\frac{1}{6}$	semis (sēmissis)	= $\frac{1}{2}$	derāon-s (-tis)	= $\frac{2}{3}$
quadran-s (-tis)	= $\frac{1}{4}$	septun-x (-cis)	= $\frac{7}{12}$	dēun-z (-cis)	= $\frac{11}{12}$
triēn-s (-tis)	= $\frac{2}{3}$	bēs (beccis)	= $\frac{2}{3}$		

Caesar, ēpinōr, ex uncīā; sēd Leptī ex trientē.

Caesar. I think, (is heir) to one-twelfth, but Lepta to one-third of the property.

§ 633. Interest (*ūsūrae* or *fēnūs*) was reckoned by the month at so many hundredth parts (*centēsīmae*, *i.e.* *centēsimae parts*) of the capital (*sors*).

Accordingly *ūsūrae centēsīmae* = 1 per cent. per mensem = 12 per cent. per annum.

ūsūrae bīnae centēsīmae = 2 per cent. per mensem = 24 per cent. per annum.

§ 634. Lower rates were expressed by fractions of the *ās* in apposition to *ūsūrae* or *fēnūs*, the rate of 1 per cent. per mensem being taken as the standard; *e.g.*,

fēnūs triēns = $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. per mensem = 4 per cent. per annum;

ūsūrae bessēs = $\frac{2}{3}$ per cent. per mensem = 8 per cent. per annum.

fēnūs ex trientē factum ērāt bessībūs.
interest had advanced from 4 to 8 per cent.

Obs. In the above example, *bessībūs* is ablative of price (§ 377).

(D.) PRAENOMINA.

§ 635. A free-born Roman had three names: *praenōmēn*, *nōmēn*, and *cognōmēn*. The *praenōmēn* was the personal name, the *nōmēn* that of the *gens* (*clan*), the *cognōmēn* that of the *fāmilīā* (*family*); *e.g.* *Publīūs Cornēliūs Scipīō* is the individual *Publīūs* belonging to the *gens* *Cornēliā* and the *fāmilīā* *Scipīōnum*.

The following is a list of Roman *praenōmīnā* with the abbreviations commonly used:—

A.	Aulūs	N.	Nūmēriūs
App.	Appiūs	P.	Publīūs
C.	Gaiūs	Q.	Quintūs
Cn.	Gnaeūs	Ser.	Serviūs
D.	Dēcimūs	Sex. or S.	Sextūs
K.	Kaesō	Sp.	Spūriūs
L.	Lūciūs	T.	Tītūs
M.	Marcūs	Ti.	Tibēriūs
M'. Maniūs			

(E.) PROSODY AND METRE.

§ 636. QUANTITY.—The metres used by the classical Latin poets are all of Greek origin and depend entirely on quantity, *i.e.* on the length of syllables. A syllable contains either one vowel or a diphthong; any syllable containing a diphthong or long vowel is a long syllable, and a syllable containing a short vowel is a short syllable unless two consonants (see Rule 3, below) follow the vowel. Thus, *ūs, bone*, has genitive *ossis*, in which the first syllable is long on account of the position of *o* before *ss*, although the *o* is naturally short, as is seen by the nominative.

The following rules are sufficient for the learner's guidance in reading verse, but are nearly all subject to some few exceptions:—

(1) A diphthong or contracted syllable is long; *e.g.* *mensæ, nīl* (= *nīhil*).

(2) The former of two vowels not forming a diphthong is short; *e.g.* *pūer*.

(3) A syllable is long when its vowel is followed in the same word by two consonants (other than *h*), by one of the double consonants *x, z*, or by semi-consonant *i* (sometimes printed *j*).

(4) A final syllable ending in a consonant counts as long before a word beginning with semi-consonant *i* or a consonant (other than *h*).

(5) A syllable containing a vowel naturally short is either long or short when the vowel is followed by two different consonants of which the second is *l* or *r*; *e.g.* *pātris* or *pātrīs*, gen. sing. of *pātēr*. (A vowel by nature long remains long; *e.g.* *mātris*, gen. sing. of *mātēr*.)

(6) Final syllables of words ending in *a, i, o, u, as, es, os*, and *c*, are long. Final *a*, however, in nom., voc., and acc. is short. Final *es* is short in such nominatives singular as *mīēs*, and in the nom. plural of Greek substantives, *e.g.* *lampādēs*; and final *as* is short in the corresponding Greek acc. plural, *lampādās*. Final *os* is short when it represents Greek *os*.

(7) Final *e* is short, except in the 1st (Greek) and 5th declensions, in 2nd sing. imper. act. of verbs of the 2nd conjugation, and in adverbs.

(8) Final *is* is short, except in acc., dat., and abl. plural, and in 2nd sing. pres. ind. act. of verbs of the 4th conjugation.

(9) Final *us* is short, except in the nom., voc. and acc. plural and gen. sing. of the 4th declension, and in fem. substantives like *pālūs*.

(10) Final syllables of words of more than one syllable ending in a single consonant other than *c* or *s* are short.

(11) Monosyllables are generally long, except those ending in *b, d, t*.

§ 637. ELISION.—Before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* a final vowel or diphthong is elided, as also is a final *m* together with the vowel preceding it; *e.g.* in the fourth line quoted in § 641, *possē Itālā* scans as *poss' Itālā* and *Teucrōrum āvertērē* as *Teucrōr' āvertērē*. This rarely takes place when the two words are not in the same line (§ 641, *f*).

§ 638. METRE.—The metre most commonly used by the poets of the best period was the **dactylic hexameter**, or line consisting in theory of six dactyls, of which the last is one syllable short.

Obs. A dactyl is a foot consisting of a long syllable followed by two short ones (— ∪ ∪).

§ 639. In practice a spondee is substituted for a dactyl in any of the first four feet and occasionally in the fifth, and the last syllable of the line is "doubtful," *i.e.* may be long or short. Hence it is customary to say that the hexameter consists of six feet, of which the first four are either dactyls or spondees, the fifth a dactyl (very rarely a spondee), and the sixth a spondee or a trochee.

Obs. A spondee is a foot consisting of two long syllables (— —), and a trochee of a long syllable followed by a short one (— ∪).

§ 640. The following is a scheme of the hexameter verse:—

1	2	3	4	5	6
— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪
— —	— —	— ∪ —	— —	— —	— —
				(rare)	

§ 641. The following are examples of the dactylic hexameter divided into feet, with the quantities of the *syllables* marked:—

(a) ārmă vī- | rūmqũ cā- | nō „ Trō- | iae quī | primũs āb | ōrīs.

(b) quīdvě dō- | lēns rē- | gīnă „ dē- | ūm tōt | vōlvērē | cāsũs.

(c) cară dē- | ūm subō- | lēs „ māg- | nũm Iōvis | incre- | mēntũm.

(d) nec pōs- | s° Itālī- | ā „ Teu- | crōr^{um} ā- | vēterē | rēgēm.

(e) pōsthābī- | tā colũ- | issē „ Să- | mō : hīc | illiũs | armă.

(f) iactē- | mūr dōcē- | as „ īg- | nārī hōmī- | nũmqũ lō- | cōrũmq^{ue}
errā- | mūs . . .

(g) cortīci- | bũsqũ cā- | vīs „ vītī- | ōsae- | qu° illīcis | ālvēō.

NOTES.—(a) This is a regular line with caesura (*cutting*) in the usual place, *viz.* after the first syllable of the third foot. A caesura so placed is called "strong," and indicates a decided pause in the verse.

(b) Here the caesura is "weak," *i.e.* it occurs after the second syllable of the third foot, that foot being a dactyl.

(c) In this line a spondee takes the place of a dactyl in the fifth foot; this is very rarely the case.

(d) Here *e* is elided in the second foot, and *um* in the fourth.

(e) In this line there is an example of *hiatus* (*gaping*); *o* is not, as might be expected, elided before *hic*. Instances of hiatus are rare.

(f) The final vowel of *lōcōrumquē* is elided before *errāmūs*, the first word of the next line; this is an exceptional usage, and is termed *synaloephā* (*melting together*) or *synāphēā* (*fitting together*).

(g) The word *alveo* is here scanned as a dissyllable. *ēō* coalescing into one syllable. This combination of vowels is termed *synæresis* (*drawing together*) or *synizēsis* (*settling together*).

§ 642. The hexameter followed by a pentameter (*i.e.* a line of five feet) forms the elegiac couplet, which is sufficiently common to call for notice here. For other metres the student is referred to editions of the poets who employ them.

§ 643. The pentameter consists of two half-lines, each of which contains two dactyls followed by a long syllable. In the first half, a spondee may be substituted for either of the dactyls.

Obs. The dactylic pentameter is never used except in the elegiac couplet, *i.e.* each pentameter is preceded by a hexameter.

§ 644. The following is the scheme of the pentameter:—

— — — | — — — | — || — — — | — — — | —
— — | — — | — — — | — — — | —

Examples of the elegiac couplet:—

Īgnībus | Īlīa- | cīs || ādē- | rām, eūm | lāpsā cā- | pīllīs

Dēcidit | antē sā- | crōs || lānēā | vītā fō- | cōs.

Dūm sēdēt, | ūmbrō- | sē || sālī- | cēs vōlū- | crēsquē cā- | nōrāe

Fēcē- | rūnt sōm- | nōs, || ēt lēvē | mūrūr ā- | quāe.

NOTE.—The first half of a pentameter always ends with the end of a word. Elision is allowed in the first two feet only.

(F.) ORDER OF WORDS.

645. Owing to the use of inflections in Latin the order of the words in a sentence admits of considerable variations being made without any radical change in the meaning. Thus, instead of *Rōmūlūs Rēmum occidit* (*Romulus slew Remus*), we may write *Rēmum occidit Rōmūlūs*; whereas in English by changing the order of the words to 'Remus slew Romulus' the meaning is inverted.

§ 646. The following are the rules which govern the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence where the order is not affected (as is very commonly the case) by considerations of euphony or emphasis.

§ 647. (a) The subject stands first.

NOTE 1.—This does not apply to the infinitive used as subject (§ 409, a).

NOTE 2.—Interrogative and relative words, conjunctions and other words of connection or transition, are placed at the beginning of the sentence or clause which they introduce, except enclitics (-nē, -quē, -vē), etiam, enim, quidem, quōquē, and (usually) igitur, tamēn, Cp. § 281.

(b) A finite verb (i.e. the primary predicate) stands at the end of its sentence or clause, the secondary predicate (if there is one) preceding the primary.

(c) The object is placed between the subject and the predicate, an indirect object usually preceding a direct object.

Caesar his auxiliū sūm pollicitus est.

Caesar promised them his help.

§ 648. (d) An attribute, whether consisting of an ordinary adjective, an attributive genitive, a substantive in apposition, or a phrase, usually follows the substantive to which it refers, but a demonstrative or an adjective of quantity or number precedes its substantive.

(e) An adverb or adverbial phrase immediately precedes the word it qualifies.

(f) A preposition precedes its case, except tenuis and enclitic cum (§§ 258, 259). An attribute may intervene.

Sēnātus dūmvrōs ad eam sedem prō amplitudinē pōpuli Rōmāni faciendam creāri iussit.

the Senate ordered a commission of two to be appointed for building that temple in accordance with the dignity of the Roman people.

Obs. In the above example ad . . . faciendam is an attributive phrase qualifying dūmvrōs; eam (a demonstrative) is attribute to sedem; Rōmāni is the attribute of pōpuli; pōpuli Rōmāni is attributive genitive qualifying amplitudinē; prō . . . Rōmāni together forms an adverbial phrase qualifying the verbal notion in faciendam.

§ 649. Clauses other than consecutive are frequently, but by no means always, inserted in the principal sentence. See examples in §§ 492, 501, 521, 532, 541, 544.

§ 650. A word is frequently, for the sake of emphasis, put in some prominent position—i.e. either first or last in the sentence. The subject is, if emphatic, placed at the end; the verb, if emphatic, at the beginning. Either of these positions emphasises any other word.

mētūebant servī, vērēbantūr libērī.

he was feared by his slaves, revered by his children.

mēā ōperā Tārentum rēcēpistī.

it was through me that you recovered Tarentum.

Obs. Here the normal order would be Tārentum ōperā mēā rēcēpistī (§ 648, e), a possessive adjective usually following its substantive.

INDEX.

*The numbers refer to the pages of the book.
For Cases, see pp. 214, 215; for the Subjunctive, see pp. 212, 213.*

I.—GRAMMATICAL TERMS, ETC.

- Ablative, 7; 1st Decl. Pl., 28;
4th Decl. Pl., 30; Syntax of,
261-7, 215; Absolute, 206,
226, 228.
- Abounding*, Verbs of, 202, 211.
- Accentuation, 2.
- Accusative, 6, 188-93, 214; Sub-
ject of Infinitive, 217, 218.
- Adjectives, Declension of, 43-6,
48-50; with Substantives, 46,
47, 51, 52; Indeclinable,
52; Comparison of, 53-6;
Numeral, 57-61; Verbal, 74,
225-8; Formed from Verbs,
171-2; Used substantively,
183, 185; Equivalent to Ad-
verbs, 185; Usages, 274-6.
- Advantage, Dative of, 196.
- Adverbial Accusative, 190, 192.
- Adverbs, 160-64; Comparison of,
165; Numeral, 57, 58, 293;
Usages, 281-3.
- Agent, 197, 203, 222, 224.
- Alphabet, 1.
- Aposiopesis, 289.
- Apposition, 185.
- Asking*, Verbs of, 191.
- Asyndeton, 289.
- Attribute, 184, 186.
- Attributive Genitive, 208-10.
- Base, 4; of Substantives, 9; of
Adjectives, 43; of Verbs,
76, 77, 80, 81; Perfect, 116;
Supine, 117.
- Brachylogy, 239.
- *Calendar, 291, 292.
- Calling*, Verbs of, 189.
- Cardinal Numerals, 57-60.
- Cases, 11, 214, 215: *see also*
Nominative, etc.
- Causal Clauses, 246, 256, 257.
- Cause, Ablative of, 204.
- Chiasmus, 289.
- Circumstantial Clauses, 255-64.
- Clauses, Adjectival, 180, 245-8;
Adverbial, 180, 249-64; Sub-
stantival, 180, 233-44.
- Cognate Accusative, 191.
- Commands, 236, 237; Dependent,
243-4; in Oratio Obliqua, 269.
- Comparative Adjectives, 53-56;
Declension of, 48; with Abl.,
207; Participles, 225, 227;
Adverbs, 165; Clauses, 261.
- Complex Sentences, 179, 239-268.
- Composite Subject, 185.
- Compound Sentences, 179.
- Compound Verbs, 117, 176, 177.
- Concessive Subjunctive, 238, 246;
Concessive Clauses, 255, 256.
- Concords: I., 184; II., 43, 184,
185; III., 245; Compound,
185, 186.
- Condemning*, Verbs of, 211, 212.
- Conditional Sentences, 249-54;
Dependent, 237; in Oratio
Obliqua, 269.
- Conjugation: *see* Verbs.
- Conjunctions, 168, 169; Usages,
286-8.
- Consecutive Clauses, 246, 247,
263, 264.
- Dative, 6; in 4th Decl., 30; in
5th Decl. Sing., 31; in certain
Adjectives (-i), 45; Syntax
of, 194-8, 214.
- Decreeing*, Verbs of, 243.
- Defective Verbs, 144.
- Deliberative Subjunctive, 238, 242.
- Demonstrative Pronouns, 64-6.
- Dependent Commands, 243, 244;
Questions, 239-43, 254;
Statements, 248, 244.

- Deponent Verbs, 110-15.
 Description, Ablative of, 205.
 Desiderative Verbs, 176.
 Diminutive Substantives, 173.
 Distributive Numerals, 57-9, 276, 293.
Doubting, Verbs, etc., of, 264, 268.
 Dubitative Subjunctive, 238, 242.
 Epistolary Tenses, 233.
 Ethic Dative, 196.
 Exclamations, Accusative, 189;
 Acc. and Infinitive, 218.
 Exhortations, 237.
 Extent, Accusative of, 192, 193.
 Factitive Verbs, 189.
Fearing, Verbs of, 262.
 Feminine Substantives formed
 from Masculine, 172.
 Final Clauses, 246, 261-62.
 Fractions, 60; of *as*, 294.
 Frequentative Verbs, 175.
 Future, Indicative, 81, 233, 251,
 259; Infinitive (Periphrasis),
 267; Infinitive Passive, 76.
 Future Participle, 133, 226; with
 sum, 93.
 Future-Perfect: Indicative Ac-
 tive, 92; in *-so*, 132; Infini-
 tive Pass., 103; Syntax of, 234.
 Gender of Substantives, 5, 37-42.
 Genitive, 6; in 3rd Decl. Pl., 24;
 in 1st Decl. (*-ai*, *-um*), 28;
 in 2nd Decl. Sing., 29; in
 2nd Decl. Pl. (*-um*), 29; in
 5th Decl. Sing., 31; in *-ius*,
 45; Syntax of, 208-13, 215.
 Gerund, 75, 222, 223.
 Gerundive, 75; in *-undus*, 102;
 of four Intransitive Verbs,
 133; Syntax of, 224-25.
 Gnomie Perfect, 234.
 Grammatical Terms, 289-91.
 Greek Use of Genitive, 213.
 Greek Substantives, 34-6.
 Hendiadys, 289.
 Heteroclite Substantives, 31, 32.
 Heterogeneous Substantives, 32.
 Hexameter, 296.
Hindering, Verbs of, 262.
 Historic Infinitive, 219.
 Historic Present, 232, 240.
Hoping, Verbs of, 281.
 Hypallage, 290.
 Hypothetical Sentences, 249-54;
 Dependent, 267; in Oratio
 Obliqua, 299.
 Imparissyllabic Substantives, 14,
 24.
 Imperative, 236; in apodosis,
 250, 251.
 Imperfect: Indicative, 81, 233;
 in 4th Conj., 92; Subjunc-
 tive, 82.
 Impersonal Verbs, 145, 182, 194,
 211.
 Inceptive Verbs, 176.
 Indeclinable Substantives, 33;
 Adjectives, 52.
 Indefinite Pronouns, 68-70.
 Indefinite Subject, 231, 277.
 Indicative, 232-35; after *qui*
 247; in conditional sen-
 tences, 250, 251, 253; in
 concessive clauses, 255, 256;
 in causal clauses, 256; in
 temporal clauses, 257-60; in
 local clauses, 260; in com-
 parative clauses, 261; de-
 pendent on accusative and
 infinitive, 266.
 Indirect: *see* Dependent.
 Infinitive, 76; Present Passive,
 102; Future, 267; Future
 Passive, 76; Future Perfect
 Passive, 103; Syntax of,
 216-19; Tenses of, 220, 221;
 in Oratio Obliqua, 269-71.
 Inseparable Particles, 178.
 Instrument, Ablative of, 208.
 Interest, 291.
 Interjections, 170. [242.
 Interrogative Particles, 161, 229,
 Interrogative Pronouns, 67, 68.
 Intransitive Verbs, 181-82; with
 acc., 189, 191; with *dat.*, 195.

Jussive Subjunctive, 237, 238.

Lacking, Verbs of, 202, 211.

Likeness, Adjectives of, 196.

Litotes, 290.

Local Ablative, 201-3.

Local Clauses, 260.

Locative, 8; of Substantives, 10, 13, 25; of Adjectives, 46; Syntax of, 199, 200, 214.

Making, Verbs of, 189.

Manner, Ablative of, 205.

Material, Genitive of, 209.

Measure, Ablative of, 204.

Meiosis, 200.

Metre, 286-7.

Middle Voice, 182, 188, 227.

Money, Roman, 293, 294.

Mood: *see* Indicative, etc.

• Multiplicatives, 61.

Nearness, Adjectives of, 196.

Nominative, 6, 187.

• Number, 74, 231; *see also* Plural.

Numerals, 57-61, 276.

Object, External, 188-9; Internal, 190; Cognate, 191; Double, 191; Indirect, 194-5.

Objective Genitive, 210-12.

Optative Subjunctive, 237.

Oratio Obliqua, 269-71.

Order of Words, 8, 297, 298.

Ordinal Numerals, 57-9.

Origin, Ablative of, 207.

Oxymoron, 290.

Parisyllabic Substantives, 21, 24.

Participles, 74, 75, 225-8: *see also* Present, etc.

Particles, Inseparable, 178.

Partitive Genitive, 210.

Parts of Speech, 4.

Passive, 72, 82; replaced by
• Intransitive Verbs, 181; of
Intransitive Verbs, 182; of
Transitive Verbs, 182.

Patronymics, 174.

Pentameter, 297.

Perfect, 74; Indicative Active, 82; Shorter Forms, 92, 133; Syntax (Indicative), 234; Subjunctive Active, 82, 92; in -*sim*, 132; Infinitive, 221; Participle, 226-8; with *sum*, 103, 235; with Active meaning, 111; as Primary Predicate, 184.

Person, 74, 231; in Oratio Obliqua, 270, 271; Second Singular, 82, 231.

Personal Pronouns, 62-3; with Gerundive, 224; with *cum*, 167.

Place: whence, 206, 207; where, 199, 201, 202; whither, 189, 190, 198.

Pluperfect: Epistolary, 233; Subjunctive Passive, 102.

Plural, with Special Meaning, 32; without corresponding Sing., 33; Poetic, 213; of Abstract Substantives, 218.

Possessive Adjectives, 63.

Possessive Dat., 197; Gen., 208.

Potential Subjunctive, 253.

Praenomina, 294.

Predicate, 183, 184; of Composite Subject, 185, 186: *see also* Secondary.

Predicative Dat., 198; Gen., 210.

Prepositions, 166, 167, 283-6; in Composition, 176, 177, 194.

Present, Indicative, 81, 232; Imperative, 81, 133; Subjunctive, 82; Infinitive, 220-1; Participle, 225, 226.

Preventing, Verbs of, 262.

Price: Locative of, 203; Genitive of, 200; Ablative of, 204.

Principal Parts of Verbs, 77, 116-31, 146-59.

Prohibitions, 236, 238.

Prolepsis, 290.

Promising, Verbs of, 281.

Pronouns, 62-71; Usages, 276-8.

Pronunciation of Latin, 3.

Prosody, 295.

Purpose, Dative of, 198; How Expressed, 246, 261, 262.

- Quality, Genitive of, 209.
 Quantity, 1, 2, 10, 83, 295.
 Questions: Direct, 229, 230;
 Dependent, 239-43, 254; in
 Oratio Obliqua, 271.
 Reduplication, 116.
 Reflexive Pronouns, 63.
 Relative Pronouns, 66, 67; with
 cum, 167; Clauses, 245-8.
Remembering, Verbs of, 211.
 Reported Description or Defini-
 tion, 248; Questions, 239-
 43; Statement, 218, 244;
 Condition, 254.
 Respect, Acc. of, 192; Abl. of,
 202; Gen. of, 218.
 Retained Accusative, 191.
 Road, Ablative of, 204.
 Secondary Predicate, 183, 187; of
 Composite Subject, 186.
 Semi-Dependence, Subj. in, 244.
 Semi-Deponents, 111.
 Separation, Abl. of, 207.
 Sequence of Tenses, 240, 241,
 264, 266, 268.
 Simple Sentence, 179, 183.
 Space, Extent of, 193.
 Sub-dependent Clauses, 265-8.
 Subject, 183; Composite, 185-6.
 Subjective Genitive, 209.
 Subjunctive, 72, 272, 273.
 Substantives, Declensions of, 8-
 27; Irregularities in Declen-
 sion, 28-33; Indeclinable,
 33; Greek, 34-6; Gender
 of, 5, 37-42; declined with
 adjectives, 46, 47, 51, 52;
 Verbal, 75, 76; formed from
 Verbs, 171; Usages, 274.
 Superlative Adjectives, 53-6;
 Participles, 225, 227; Ad-
 verbs, 165.
 Supine, 75, 190, 221; with *iri*, 76.
 Syncope, 290.
 Synecdoche, 290.
 Synesis, 290.
Teaching, Verbs of, 191.
 Temporal Clauses, 257-60.
 Tenses, 73; Sequence, 240, 241,
 264, 266, 268; in Oratio
 Obl., 269; *see also* Present, etc.
 Time: throughout which, 193;
 when, 199, 203; within
 which, 203.
 Tmesis, 291.
 Transitive Verbs, 181, 182, 188.
 Value, Locative of, 200; Genitive
 of, 200; Ablative of, 204.
 Verbal Stem, 116, *footnote*.
 Verbs, 72-7; Regular Conjug-
 ations of, 80-109; Deponent,
 110-15; Principal Parts,
 116-31, 146-59; Irregulari-
 ties, 132, 133; Irregular,
 134-43; Defective, 144; Im-
 personal, 145; Derived, 175-6;
 Usages, 279-81.
 Vocative, 6, 187; in -i, 28.
 Voice: *see* Passive and Middle.
 Wishes, 237.
Wondering, Expressions of, 254.
 Zeugma, 291.

II.—LATIN WORDS AND SUFFIXES.

- | | | |
|---|----------------------|-------------------------|
| A, ab, 167, 203, 207,
222, 224, 285. | -ai, 28. | Amplius, 283. |
| Absum, 135. | Aio, 144. | An, 230, 242, 243, 288. |
| -abus, 28. | Aliqui, aliquis, 69. | Annon, 230, 242. |
| Ac, 287; ac si, 254. | Alius, 45, 46, 276. | Antequam, 259. |
| Ad, 283, 284. | Alter, 45, 58. | Aptus, 275. |
| Aestimo, 204. | Alteruter, 46. | Apud, 284. |
| | Ambo, 59. | As, 293, 294. |

At, 287.
 Atque, 287.
 Ausim, 132.
 Aut, 288.
 Autem, 287.
 Bos, 29.
 Capiō, 108, 109.
 Caveo, 279.
 Celo, 191.
 Cen, 281.
 Cieo, 120, 132.
 Circumdo, 143, 280.
 Coepi, 144; (Pass.), 281.
 Consulo, 279.
 Contentus, 275.
 Cuius, 68.
 Cuius, 68.
 Cum (Conjunction),
 255, 256, 258, 259.
 Cum (Preposition),
 285; (enclitic), 167.
 De, 285.
 Denarius, 293.
 Deus, 29.
 Dignor, 279.
 Dignus, 275.
 Dissimili, 275.
 Do, 118, 143.
 Domus, 31, 189, 206.
 Donec, 260.
 Dono, 280.
 Dubito, 243, 264.
 Dum, 260.
 -dum, 178.
 Duo, 59.
 E, ex, 167, 285.
 Ecqui, ecquis, 70.
 Edo (eat), 143.
 Ego, 62, 270, 276.
 Eius, 277.
 Eo, 140.
 Erga, 284.
 Est qui, 247.
 Et, 286, 287.
 Etiamsi, 256.
 Etsi, 256.

Extremus, 274.
 Facio (Pass.), 142.
 Familias, 28.
 Fari, 144.
 Fazo, 132.
 Fero, 138, 139.
 Ferreo, 132.
 Fio, 142, 187.
 Fore ut, 267.
 Fretus, 275.
 Fruor, 279.
 Fulgeo, 119, 132.
 Fungor, 279.
 Genus (hoc, id), 193.
 Haud, 282.
 Haud scio an, 243.
 Hic, 65, 270, 278.
 Humus, 199, 206.
 -i (in Abl. Sing.), 21,
 22, 49, 50, 225.
 Iamduddum, 232.
 Idem, 66.
 Idoneus, 275.
 Idus, 291, 292.
 Ille, 65, 278.
 -im (in Acc. Sing.),
 21, 22.
 Imus, 274.
 In, 167, 236.
 Indignus, 275.
 Infimus, 274.
 Inquam, 144.
 Instar, 193.
 Inter, 284.
 Interest, 280.
 Ipse, 66, 270, 278.
 Iri, 76.
 -is (in Acc. Pl.), 21.
 Is, 66, 277; Isqui, 247.
 Iste, 65, 270. Istic, 65.
 Iuppiter, 29.
 Iusiurandum, 29.
 Kalendae, 291, 292.
 Laetus, 275.

Lavo, 118, 132.
 Licet, 145, 255.
 Magis, 282.
 Malo, 136, 137.
 Medius, 201, 274.
 Memini, 144, 211.
 -met, 62, 63.
 Metuo, 262, 279.
 Meus, 63, 270.
 Milia, 59.
 Minus, 283.
 Misereor, 211.
 Moderor, 279.
 Muto, 280.
 Ne (affirmative), 282.
 Ne (negative), 272,
 282; Ne non, 262;
 Ne...quidem, 282.
 -ne, 161, 229, 242.
 Necne, 230, 242.
 Nego, 218.
 Nemo, 30.
 Nequeo, 141.
 Nescio an, 243.
 Nescio quis, 278.
 Neu, 236, 288.
 Neuter, 45.
 Neve, 236, 288.
 Ni, nisi, 250.
 Nitor, 279.
 Nolo, 136, 137.
 Non, 272, 273, 282;
 Non quo, 257.
 Nonae, 291, 292.
 Nonne, 229, 242.
 Noster, 63.
 Nostras, 64.
 Nubo, 279.
 Nullus, 45.
 Num, 229, 242.
 Ob, 284.
 Obliviscor, 211.
 Odi, 144.
 Oll-i, -is, 65.
 Opem, 30.
 Opus, 274.
 Orior, 131, 132.

Os (*ônc*), 23.

Pelagus, 36.

Penes, 284.

Per, 284.

Perinde, 161, 261, 281.

Plebs, 32.

Plus, 56, 183.

Pollicor, 281.

Possum, 135, 253, 283.

Postquam, 257, 258.

Potior, 132, 279.

Prae, 285.

Praeditus, 275.

Praeter, 284.

Prece, 30.

Pridie, 292.

Primus, 274.

Priusquam, 259.

Pro, 177, 285, 286.

Promitto, 281.

Propius, 283.

Prosum, 134, 135.

Proxima, 283.

-pte, 63.

Quam, 261, 282, 283.

Quam si, 254.

Quamquam, 255.

Quamvis, 255.

Quando, 162, 257.

Quandocumque, 257.

Quandoque, 257.

Quandoquidem, 256.

Quasi, 254.

-que, 168, 286.

Queo, 141.

Qui (Relative), 66,

245-8, 273; (inter-

rogative), 67; in-

definite, 68.

Quia, 256.

Quicumque, 67.

Quidam, 69, 70.

Quilibet, 69.

Quin, 229, 262-4, 268.

Quis (interrogative),
67; (indefinite), 68,
278.

Quisnam, 68.

Quispiam, 69.

Quisquam, 70.

Quisque, 69, 278.

Quisquis, 67.

Quivis, 69.

Quo (adv.), 162, 260;

(conj.), 257, 262.

Quoad, 260.

Quod, 244, 256, 257.

Quominus, 262, 263.

Quoniam, 256.

Quotus, 71.

Quotusquisque, 71.

Recordor, 211.

Réfert, 280.

Reliquus, 274.

Requies, 32.

Respublica, 31.

Rus, 189, 199, 206.

Se, 63, 270, 276, 277.

Secius, 281.

Secundum, 284.

Secus ac, 261.

Secus (virile), 193.

Sed, 287.

Sestertius, 293.

Seu, 288.

Si, 250, 254.

Similis, 275.

Simul ac, 257.

Sive, 288.

Solus, 45.

Spero, 281.

-ssim, -sso, 132.

Strideo, 120, 132.

Sub, 167, 286.

Sum, 78, 79, 134;

(with future parti-

ciple), 93, 226; (with

perfect participle),

103, 228, 235; (com-
pounds), 134, 135,
194; (with dative),
197.

Summus, 274.

Sunt qui, 247.

Supra, 284.

Sus, 23.

Suus, 63-4, 270, 276-7

Tametsi, 255.

Tamquam, 254.

Tempero, 279.

Timeo, 262, 279.

Totus, 45, 201.

Trans (in comp.), 193.

Tres, 59.

Tu, 62, 270, 276.

Tuus, 63, 270.

Ubi, 162, 257, 260.

Ullus, 45.

Ultro, 281.

Unus, 45; pl., 59, 276.

Usque, 282.

Usus, 274.

Ut, 162, 243, 244, 255,

257, 261-3; Ut non,

263; Ut si, 254.

Uter, 45; compounds,

46.

Utinam, 237.

Utor, 279.

Utrum, 230, 242, 288.

-ve, 168, 288.

Vel, 288.

Vespor, 279

Vesper, 32.

Vester, 63.

Vestras, 64

Vicem, 30.

Vir, 13.

Virus, 29.

Vis, 30.

Volo, 136, 137.

Vulgus, 29.

Select List of Books

IN THE

University Tutorial Series.

University Tutorial Press Ltd.
 W. B. CLIVE, 157 DEURY LANE, LONDON, W.C.

CONTENTS.

	PAGES		PAGES
Mathematics and Mechanics	3-5	French	11
Chemistry	5	Latin and Greek Classics	12, 13
Physics	6, 7	Latin and Greek Grammars,	14
Biology	7	etc.	14
Modern History	7, 8	Roman and Greek History	15
English Language and Literature	8, 9	The University Correspondent	15
Philosophy and Education	10	—Directories	15
		The Organized Science Series	16

The General Catalogue (32 pages); Sectional Catalogues in (1) Mathematics and Mechanics, (2) Science, (3) Classics, (4) English and French, with History, Philosophy, etc.; and Special Catalogues for London University and other Examinations, may be had post free on application.

DECEMBER 1907.

The University Tutorial Series.

General Editor: WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., D.C.L., M.A., B.Sc.,
Principal of University Correspondence College.

The object of the UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES is to provide candidates for examinations and learners generally with text-books which shall convey in the simplest form sound instruction in accordance with the latest results of scholarship and scientific research. Important points are fully and clearly treated, and care has been taken not to introduce details which are likely to perplex the beginner.

The Publisher will be happy to entertain applications from Teachers for Specimen Copies of any of the books mentioned in this List.

SOME PRESS OPINIONS

"This series is successful in hitting its mark and supplying much help to students in places where a guiding hand is sorely needed."—*Journal of Education*.

"Many editors of more pretentious books might study the methods of the 'University Tutorial Series' with profit."—*Guardian*.

"The 'University Tutorial Series' is favourably known for its practical and workmanlike methods."—*Public Schools Year Book*.

"The series is eminently successful."—*Spectator*.

"The classical texts in this series are edited by men who are thoroughly masters of their craft."—*Saturday Review*.

"The competent manner in which the volumes of this series are edited is now well known and generally recognised."—*Educational Times*.

"This useful series of text-books."—*Nature*.

"Any books published in this series are admirably adapted for the needs of the large class of students for whom they are intended."—*Cambridge Review*.

"Clearness in statement and orderliness in arrangement characterise the publications of the University Tutorial Press."—*Oxford Magazine*.

"All books which issue from the 'University Tutorial Press' are both scholarly and practical."—*Westminster Review*.

"The 'University Tutorial Series' of text-books contains works which are written by eminent scholars and are used in many colleges because of their directness of presentation."—*Cyclopaedia of Education*.

"Such text-books are immeasurably superior to the heavy tomes, overburdened with extraneous matter, with which boys of a previous generation were familiar."—*School Guardian*.

"The more we see of these excellent manuals the more highly do we think of them. They are edited by those who have passed through the same ordeal, and who should know how to meet the wants of the diligent student."—*Schoolmaster*.

Mathematics and Mechanics.

- Algebra, The New Matriculation.** With a Section on Graphs. By R. DEAKIN, M.A., late Headmaster of Stourbridge Grammar School. *Fourth Edition.* 5s. 6d.
- Algebra, The Tutorial. ADVANCED COURSE.** By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. 2s. 6d.
- Arithmetic, Clive's New Shilling.** Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., B.Sc., F.R.A.S. 1s. With Answers, 1s. 3d. ANSWERS, 6d.
- Arithmetic, The Junior.** Adapted from the *Tutorial Arithmetic* by R. H. CHOPPE, B.A. (With or without Answers,) 2s. 6d.
 "Excellent."—*Educational Times*.
- Arithmetic, The Primary.** Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.R.A.S. An Introductory Course of Simple and Instructive Arithmetical Exercises. In Three Parts. Parts I. and II., each 6d.; with Answers, 7d. Part III., 9d.; with Answers, 10d.
 "Clear and practical."—*Guardian*.
 "Thoroughly suited for use in elementary schools generally."—*School Guardian*.
- Arithmetic, The School.** By W. P. WORKMAN, M.A., B.Sc. (With or without Answers.) 3s. 6d. Also in Two Parts: each, 2s.
 "The book is of a very high order of merit."—*School World*.
- Arithmetic, The Tutorial.** By W. P. WORKMAN, M.A., B.Sc., Headmaster of Kingswood School. (With or without Answers.) 4s. 6d.
 "Destined to supersede all other secondary treatises on the subject."—*Westminster Review*.
- Astronomy, Elementary Mathematical.** By C. W. C. BARLOW, M.A. Lond. and Camb., B.Sc. Lond., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. *Second Edition*, with Answers. 6s. 6d.
- Book-keeping, Practical Lessons in.** Adapted to the requirements of the Society of Arts, London Chamber of Commerce, Oxford and Cambridge Locals, etc. By T. C. JACKSON, B.A., LL.B. 3s. 6d.
- Book-keeping, Junior.** By T. C. JACKSON, B.A., LL.B. 1s. 6d.
- Coordinate Geometry (The Conic).** By J. H. GRACE, M.A. Camb., and F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Dynamics, The Tutorial.** By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.
 "In every way most suitable for the use of beginners, the initial difficulties being fully explained and abundantly illustrated."—*Journal of Education*.
- Euclid.** By RUPERT DEAKIN, M.A. Lond. and Oxon. With Problems in Practical Geometry and an Introductory Course of Drawing and Measurement. Books I., II., 1s. Books I.-IV., 2s. 6d. Books V., VI., XI., 1s. 6d.

Mathematics and Mechanics—continued.

Geometry, Deductions in. A Collection of Riders and Practical Problems. By T. W. EDMONDSON, B.A., Ph.D. 2s. 6d.

Geometry, Theoretical and Practical. By W. P. WORKMAN, M.A., B.Sc., and A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P.

PART I. Contains the matter of Euclid, I., III. (1-34), IV. (1-9). (With or without Answers.) 2s. 6d. **PART II.** (*In the press.*) "Shows on every page the skill and care with which the material has been put together."—*School World*.

"One of the best books on modern lines."—*Oxford Magazine*.

This work is also published in Sections as follows:

Section I. Introductory Course. 9d.

Section II. Plane Rectilinear Figures. (Euclid, I.) 1s. 6d.

Section III. The Circle. (Euclid, II. 1-34, IV. 1-9.) 1s.

Section IV. Rectangle-Theorems and Polygons. (Euclid, II., III. 35-37, and IV. 10-16.) 1s.

Section V. Similar Figures. (Euclid, VI.) (*In the press.*)

Geometry, Matriculation. (Being Sections I.-IV. of *Geometry, Theoretical and Practical*, and containing the subject-matter of Euclid, Books I.-IV.) 3s. 6d.

Graphs: The Graphical Representation of Algebraic Functions. By G. H. FRENCH, M.A., and G. OSBORN, M.A., Leys School, Cambridge. *Second Edition.* 1s. 6d.

Graphs, Matriculation. (Contained in *The New Matriculation Algebra*.) By G. H. FRENCH, M.A., and G. OSBORN, M.A. 1s.

"A good book with plenty of suitable examples."—*School*.

Hydrostatics, Intermediate. Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.R.A.S. 3s. 6d.

Hydrostatics, The Matriculation. (Contained in *Intermediate Hydrostatics*.) By Dr. WM. BRIGGS and Dr. G. H. BRYAN. 2s.

"An excellent text-book."—*Journal of Education*.

Mechanics, Junior. By F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc. 2s. 6d.

Mechanics, The Matriculation. By Dr. WM. BRIGGS and Dr. G. H. BRYAN. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"It is a good book—clear, concise, and accurate."—*Journal of Education*.

Mensuration and Spherical Geometry: By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., and T. W. EDMONDSON, B.A., Ph.D. 3s. 6d.

Navigation, Modern. By WILLIAM HALL, B.A., R.N. 6s. 6d.

"A valuable addition to the text-books on navigation."—*Maritime Review*.

The Right Line and Circle (Coordinate Geometry). By Dr. BRIGGS and Dr. BRYAN. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"It is thoroughly sound throughout, and indeed deals with some difficult points with a clearness and accuracy that has not, we believe, been surpassed."—*Education*.

Mathematics and Mechanics—continued.

Statics, The Tutorial. By Dr. WM. BRIGGS and Dr. G. H. BRYAN. *Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 8s. 6d.

Tables, Clive's Mathematical. Edited by A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc. 1s. 6d.

"A useful little book of mathematical tables sufficiently complete for all practical purposes and well designed to combine speed and accuracy in calculation."—*School Guardian.*

Trigonometry, Junior. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. 2s. 6d.

Trigonometry, The Tutorial. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. 3s. 6d.

"The book is very thorough."—*Schoolmaster.*

Chemistry.

Chemical Analysis, Qualitative and Quantitative. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.C.S., and R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. *Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

"The instructions are clear and concise. The pupil who uses this book ought to obtain an intelligible grasp of the principles of analysis."—*Nature.*

Carbon Compounds, An Introduction to. By R. H. ADIE, M.A., B.Sc. 2s. 6d.

The New Matriculation Chemistry. By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc., Ph.D. Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.C.S. *Third Edition, Rewritten and Enlarged.* 5s. 6d.

"A trustworthy text-book."—*School World.*

Chemistry, A Safe Course in Experimental. By W. T. BOONE, B.A., B.Sc. 2s.

A practical course to illustrate the fundamental laws of the subject.

"Up to the standard of the best of modern elementary books on practical chemistry."—*Nature.*

Chemistry, Synopsis of Matriculation. By Dr. WM. BRIGGS, 1s. 6d.

Chemistry, The Tutorial. By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc., Ph.D. Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.C.S.

Part I. Non-Metals. 3s. 6d.

Part II. Metals and Physical Chemistry. 4s. 6d.

"The descriptions of experiments and diagrams of apparatus are very good, and with their help a beginner ought to be able to do the experimental work quite satisfactorily."—*Cambridge Review.*

Organic Chemistry, Systematic Practical. By G. M. NORMAN, B.Sc., A.R.C.Sc., F.C.S. 1s. 6d.

"Just such a helpful book as the student will need."—*School Guardian.*

"A thorough course in practical organic chemistry."—*Literary World.*

Physics.

THE TUTORIAL PHYSICS. By R. WALLACE STEWART, D.Sc. Lond., E. CATCHPOOL, B.Sc. Lond., and C. J. L. WAGSTAFF, M.A. Cantab., etc. In Six Volumes.

I. Sound, Text-Book of. By E. CATCHPOOL, B.Sc. 4th Edition. 3s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Vibratory Motion—Progressive Undulation—Velocity of Sound—Interference—Forced Vibration—Fourier's Theorem—The Ear and Hearing—Reflection of Sound—Stationary Undulation—Vibration in Pipes—Transverse Undulation—Acoustic Measurements.

II. Heat, Higher Text-Book of. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. 6s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Thermometry—Expansion—Calorimetry—Change of State—Hygrometry—Conduction, Convection, Radiation—The First Law of Thermo-Dynamics—Graphic Methods.

III. Light, Text-Book of. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. 4s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Rectilinear Propagation—Shadows—Photometry—Reflexion and Refraction at Plane and Spherical Surfaces—Prisms and Lenses—Dispersion—Velocity of Light—Optical Instruments.

IV. Magnetism and Electricity, Higher Text-Book of. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. 6s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—ELECTROSTATICS.—Electrification—Induction—Machines—Potential and Capacity—Condensers—Electrometers—Specific Inductive Capacity—Atmospheric Electricity. MAGNETISM.—Fundamental Phenomena and Theory—Terrestrial Magnetism. CURRENT ELECTRICITY.—Effects of Currents—Ohm's Law—Electromagnetic Induction—Inductance—Alternating Currents—Waves—Units—Thermo-Electricity—Practical Applications—Radius Activity.

V. Properties of Matter. By C. J. L. WAGSTAFF, M.A. 3s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Units: Dimensions—Lengths and Areas—Matter: Mass—Volumes, Density—Energy—Circular Motion—The Pendulum and Simple Harmonic Motion—Time—Solids—Gravity—Gases—Hydrostatics—Liquids—Friction—Capillarity.

"A useful text-book for elementary purposes. It includes many important things, usually omitted in books of its size."—*Oxford Magazine*.

VI. Practical Physics. By W. R. BOWER, A.R.C.S., and J. SATTERLY, B.Sc. 4s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Mechanical Quantities: Heat: Sound: Light: Magnetism and Electricity.

ELECTRICITY, TECHNICAL. By Professor H. T. DAVIDGE, B.Sc., M.I.E.E., and R. W. HUTCHINSON, B.Sc., A.M.I.E.E. 4s. 6d.

"The book has been prepared in accordance with the most modern ideas as regards technical education."—*Electrical Engineer*.

THE UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES.

Physics—continued.

Magnetism and Electricity, School. By R. H. JUDN, D.Sc. 3s. 6d.

"A useful text-book, that seems much sounder as regards fundamental conceptions than most elementary works on electricity."—*Oxford Magazine*.

The New Matriculation Heat, Light, and Sound. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc., Lond. Three volumes, each 2s. 6d.

Experimental Science, Junior. By W. M. HUTTON, M.A., M.Sc. 2s. 6d.

"The explanations are clear and concise."—*School Worker*.

Biology.

Botany, The New Matriculation. By A. J. EWART, D.Sc. 6s. 6d.

Botany, A Text-Book of. By J. M. LOWSON, M.A., B.Sc., F.L.S. *Third Edition.* 6s. 6d.

"It represents the nearest approach to the ideal botanical text-book that has yet been produced."—*Pharmaceutical Journal*.

Plant Biology: A Course of Elementary Botany arranged for Modern Methods of Teaching. By Professor F. CAVERS, D.Sc. 3s. 6d.

Physiology, First Stage Human. By G. N. MEACHEN, M.D., B.S. Lond., L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S. 2s.

Zoology, A Text-Book of. By H. G. WELLS, B.Sc., and A. M. DAVIES, B.Sc. *Third Edition, Enlarged.* 6s. 6d.

Science German Course. By C. W. PAGET MOFFATT, M.A., M.B., B.C. 3s. 6d.

Modern History.

Modern History, Matriculation. Being the History of England 1485-1901, with some reference to the Contemporary History of Europe and Colonial Developments. By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A. Oxon. 8s. 6d.

"An excellent manual. The international history, especially in the eighteenth century, where most text-books fail, is very carefully treated."—*School World*.

History of England, The Tutorial. (To 1901.) By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A. Oxon. 4s. 6d.

"Provides a good working course for schools."—*Guardian*.

English History, The Intermediate Text-Book of: a Longer History of England. By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A. Oxon., and A. JOHNSON EVANS, M.A. Camb., B.A. Lond. With Maps & Plans.

VOL. II., 1485 to 1633. 4s. 6d. VOL. III., 1603 to 1714. 4s. 6d.

VOL. IV., 1714 to 1837. 4s. 6d.

"It is written in a clear and vigorous style. The facts are admirably marshalled."—*Westminster Review*.

Modern History—continued.

ENGLISH HISTORY, GROUNDWORK OF. By M. E. CARTER, 2s.
Contains the "salient facts" required at London Matriculation.

European History, Main Landmarks of. By F. N. DIXON, B.A. 2s.
"To tell the story of nineteen hundred years in 140 pages is a task which might tax the ingenuity of the best. Yet we must confess that Mr. Dixon has here successfully given us an outline of the main events"—*School World*.

Citizenship, The Elements of the Duties and Rights of. By W. D. ASTON, B.A., LL.B. *Third Edition.* 1s. 6d.
"Might well be introduced as a text-book into the upper classes of secondary schools."—*Guardian*.
"A practical up-to-date work."—*Schoolmaster*.

English Language and Literature.

The English Language: Its History and Structure. By W. H. LOW, M.A. Lond. With TEST QUESTIONS. *Sixth Edition, Revised.* 3s. 6d.
"A clear workmanlike history of the English language done on sound principles."—*Saturday Review*.

Matriculation English Course. By W. H. LOW, M.A. Lond., and JOHN BRIGGS, M.A. Camb., F.Z.S. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—Historical Sketch—Sounds and Symbols—Outlines of Accidence and Syntax—Common Errors—Analysis—Parsing—The Word, the Sentence, the Paragraph—Punctuation—Rules for Composition—Simple Narrative—Compound Narrative—Descriptive Composition—The Abstract Theme—The Essay—Paraphrasing—Précis-Writing—Letter-Writing and Proof-Reading—Index.
"The matter is clearly arranged, concisely and intelligently put, and marked by accurate scholarship and common sense."—*Guardian*.

Précis-Writing, A Text-Book of. By T. C. JACKSON, B.A., LL.B. Lond., and JOHN BRIGGS, M.A. Camb., F.Z.S. 2s. 6d.
"Admirably clear and businesslike."—*Guardian*.
"Thoroughly practical, and on right lines educationally."—*School World*.

English Literature, The Tutorial History of. By A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.
"This is undoubtedly the best school history of literature that has yet come under our notice."—*Guardian*.

English Literature, The Intermediate Text-Book of. By W. H. LOW, M.A. Lond., and A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 6s. 6d.
"The historical part is concise and clear, but the criticism is even more valuable, and a number of illustrative extracts contribute a most useful feature to the volume."—*School World*.

An Anthology of English Verse. With Introduction and Glossary. By A. J. WYATT, M.A., and S. E. GOGGIN, B.A. 2s.
"An excellent school primer."—*Cambridge Review*.
"The collection has been compiled and edited with great judgment and care."—*Educational Times*.

English Classics.

- Bacon's Essays. I.—XX. By A. F. WATT, M.A. Oxon. 1s. 6d.
- Burke.—On the Proposals for Peace with the Regicide Directory of France. Letter I. By F. J. C. HEARNshaw, M.A. 1s. 6d.
- Chaucer. By A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. With Glossary. The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales. 1s. Knight's Tale, Nun's Priest's Tale, Man of Law's Tale, Squire's Tale. Each with the Prologue. 2s. 6d.
- Dryden.—Essay of Dramatic Poesy. By W. H. LOW, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- Dryden.—Defence of the Essay of Dramatic Poesy. By ALLEN MAWER, B.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d. Preface to the Fables. By ALLEN MAWER, B.A. 1s. 6d.
- Johnson.—A Journey to the Western Islands of Scotland. By E. J. THOMAS, M.A. St Andrews, B.A. Lond. 2s. 6d.
- Johnson.—Life of Milton. By S. E. GOGGIN, B.A. 1s. 6d.
- Langland.—Piers Plowman. Prologue and Passus I.—VII., Text B. By J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A. Lond. 4s. 6d.
- Milton.—Areopagitica. 1s. 6d.
- Milton.—Early Poems, Comus, Lycidas. By S. E. GOGGIN, B.A., and A. F. WATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- Milton.—Paradise Lost, Books I., II. By A. F. WATT, M.A. 1s. 6d. Books IV., V. By S. E. GOGGIN, B.A. 1s. 6d.
- Milton.—Paradise Regained. By A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- Milton.—Samson Agonistes. By A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- Milton.—Sonnets. By W. F. MASON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d.
- Pope.—Rape of the Lock. By A. F. WATT, M.A. 1s. 6d.
- Shakespeare. By Prof. W. J. ROLFE, D.Litt. In 40 volumes. 2s. a Volume.
- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| Merchant of Venice | As You Like It | Winter's Tale |
| Tempest | Much Ado About Nothing | King John |
| Midsummer Night's Dream | Twelfth Night | King Lear |
- 2s. 6d. a Volume.
- | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Richard II. | Henry V. | Julius Caesar |
| Comedy of Errors | Henry VI. Parts I., II., III. | Coriolanus |
| Merry Wives of Windsor | Richard III. | Antony and Cleopatra |
| Love's Labour's Lost | Henry VIII. | Timon of Athens |
| Two Gentlemen of Verona | Romeo and Juliet | Troilus and Cressida |
| The Taming of the Shrew | Macbeth | Pericles |
| All's Well that Ends Well | Othello | The Two Noble Kinsmen |
| Measure for Measure | Hamlet | Titus Andronicus |
| Henry IV. Part I. | Cymbeline | Venus and Adonis |
| Henry IV. Part II. | | Sonnets |
- Shakespeare.—Midsummer Night's Dream. Richard II. By A. F. WATT, M.A. 2s. each.
- Spenser.—Faerie Queene, Book I. By W. H. HILL, M.A. 2s. 6d.

Philosophy and Education.

Ethics, Manual of. By J. S. MACKENZIE, Litt D., M.A., Professor of Logic and Philosophy in the University College of South Wales, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. *Fourth Edition. Enlarged.* 6s. 6d.

"In writing this book Mr. Mackenzie has produced an earnest and striking contribution to the ethical literature of the time."—*Mind*.

"Written with lucidity and an obvious mastery of the whole bearing of the subject."—*Standard*.

Logic, A Manual of. By J. WELTON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2 vols. Vol. I., *Second Edition*, 8s. 6d.; Vol. II., 6s. 6d.

Vol. I. contains the whole of Deductive Logic, except Fallacies, which are treated, with Inductive Fallacies, in Vol. II.

"A clear and compendious summary of the views of various thinkers on important and doubtful points."—*Journal of Education*.

"The manual may be safely recommended."—*Educational Times*.

Psychology, The Groundwork of. By G. F. STOUT, M.A., LL.D., Fellow of the British Academy, Professor of Logic and Metaphysics in the University of St. Andrews, late Examiner in Mental and Moral Science in the University of London. 4s. 6d.

"All students of philosophy, both beginners and those who would describe themselves as 'advanced,' will do well to 'read, mark, learn, and inwardly digest' this book."—*Oxford Magazine*.

Psychology, A Manual of. By G. F. STOUT, M.A., LL.D. *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 8s. 6d.

"There is a refreshing absence of sketchiness about the book, and a clear desire manifested to help the student in the subject."—*Saturday Review*.

"The student's task will be much lightened by the lucidity of the style and the numerous illustrative facts, which together make the book highly interesting."—*Literary World*.

Teaching, Principles and Methods of. By J. WELTON, M.A. Lond. and Camb., Professor of Education in the University of Leeds. Present price, 4s. 6d.

CONTENTS.—General Function of Teaching—Material of Instruction—Form of Instruction—The Teaching of English: Preparatory—The Teaching of English: Reading—The Teaching of English: Literature—The Teaching of English: Composition and Grammar—The Teaching of English: Summary—The Teaching of Music—The Teaching of History—The Teaching of Geography—The Teaching of Natural History—The Teaching of Mathematics—The Teaching of Form—The Teaching of Needlework.

"A valuable and thoughtful book."—*The Speaker*.

"We have no hesitation in placing Professor Welton's book amongst the best."—*Education*.

Voice Training in Speech and Song. By H. H. HULBERT, M.A., M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P., Lecturer in Voice Production and in Physical Education to the London County Council. 1s. 6d.

French.

Junior French Course. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. and Camb.,
Professor of French at University College, Nottingham. *Second*
Edition. 2s. 6d.

"Distinctly an advance on similar courses."—*Journal of Education.*

The Matriculation French Course. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. *Third*
Edition, Enlarged. 3s. 6d.

"The rules are well expressed, the exercises appropriate, and the matter accurate and well arranged."—*Guardian.*

French Accidence, The Tutorial. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A.
With Exercises, Passages for Translation into French, and a
Chapter on Elementary Syntax. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"We can heartily recommend it."—*Schoolmaster.*

French Syntax, The Tutorial. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A., and
A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb. With Exercises. 3s. 6d.

"Mr. Weekley has produced a clear, full, and careful Grammar in the 'Tutorial French Accidence,' and the companion volume of 'Syntax,' by himself and Mr. Wyatt, is worthy of it."—*Saturday Review.*

French Grammar, The Tutorial. Containing the *Accidence* and the
Syntax in One Volume. *Second Edition.* 4s. 6d. Also the
Exercises on the *Accidence*, 1s. 6d.; on the *Syntax*, 1s.

French Prose Composition. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. With Notes
and Vocabulary. *Third Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

"The arrangement is lucid, the rules clearly expressed, the suggestions really helpful, and the examples carefully chosen."—*Educational Times.*

Class-Work in French Composition. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. 2s.

"The extracts are well chosen."—*Teacher.*

Junior French Reader. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. and Camb.
With Notes and Vocabulary. *Second Edition.* 1s. 6d.

"A very useful first reader with good vocabulary and sensible notes."—*Schoolmaster.*

French Prose Reader. By S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., and W. F. MASOM,
M.A. With Notes and Vocabulary. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"Admirably chosen extracts."—*School Government Chronicle.*

The Matriculation French Reader. Containing Prose, Verse, Notes,
and Vocabulary. By J. A. PERRET, Examiner in French at
the University of London. 2s. 6d.

"We can recommend this book without reserve."—*School World.*

Advanced French Reader. Edited by S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., and
W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"Chosen from a large range of good modern authors."—*Schoolmaster.*

Higher French Reader. Edited by ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. 3s. 6d.

"The passages are well chosen, interesting in themselves, and representative of the best contemporary stylists."—*Journal of Education.*

Latin and Greek Classics.

The editions of LATIN and GREEK CLASSICS contained in the UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES are on the following plan:—

A short INTRODUCTION gives an account of the Author and his chief works, the circumstances under which he wrote, and his style, dialect, and metre, where these call for notice.

The TEXT is based on the latest and best editions, and is clearly printed in large type.

The distinctive feature of the NOTES is the omission of parallel passages and controversial discussions of difficulties, and stress is laid on all the important points of grammar and subject-matter. Information as to persons and places mentioned is grouped together in a HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX; by this means the expense of procuring a Classical Dictionary is rendered unnecessary.

The standard of proficiency which the learner is assumed to possess varies in this series according as the classic dealt with is usually read by beginners or by those who have already made considerable progress. A complete list is given overleaf.

VOCABULARIES, arranged in order of the text and interleaved with writing paper, are issued, together with Test Papers, in the case of the classics more commonly read by beginners; the price is 1s. or (in some instances) 1s. 6d. A detailed list can be had on application.

Caesar.—*Gallic War, Books I.—VII.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and others. 1s. 6d. each.

"A clearly printed text, a good introduction, an excellent set of notes, and a historical and geographical index make up a very good edition at a very small price."—*Schoolmaster*.

Cicero.—*De Amicitia and De Senectute.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d. each.

"The notes, although full, are simple."—*Educational Times*.

Horace.—*Odes, Books I.—III.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d. each.

"Notes which leave no difficulty unexplained."—*Schoolmaster*.

"The Notes (on Book III.) are full and good, and nothing more can well be demanded of them."—*Journal of Education*.

Livy.—*Book I.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"The notes are concise, dwelling much on grammatical points and dealing with questions of history and archaeology in a simple but interesting fashion."—*Education*.

Vergil.—*Aeneid, Books I.—XII.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A., assisted by F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A., and others. 1s. 6d. each.

Xenophon.—*Anabasis, Book I.* By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and F. L. D. RICHARDSON, B.A. Lond. 1s. 6d.

"The notes are all that could be desired."—*Schoolmaster*.

Editions of Latin and Greek Classics.

(INTRODUCTION, TEXT, AND NOTES.)

* These Volumes contain a complete alphabetical Lexicon.

- ÆSCHYLUS**—Eumenides, 3/6;
 Persae, 3/6; Prometheus, 2/6;
 Septem contra Thebas, 3/6.
ARISTOPHANES—Ranae, 3/6.
CAESAR—Civil War, Bk. 1, 1/6;
 Gallic War, Bks. 1, 2, 3, 4,
 5, 6, 7, (each) 1/6; Gallic War,
 Bk. 1, Ch. 1-29, 1/6; Gallic
 War, Bk. 7, Ch. 1-68, 1/6;
 Invasion of Britain (IV. 20-V.
 23), 1/6.
CICERO—Ad Atticum, Bk. 4, 3/6;
 *De Amicitia, 1/6; De Finibus,
 Bk. 1, 2/6; De Finibus, Bk. 2,
 3/6; De Officiis, Bk. 3, 3/6;
 In Catilinam I.-IV., 2/6;
 Philippicæ I., 2/6; Pro Cluentio,
 3/6; Pro Lege Manilia,
 2/6; Pro Milone, 3/6; Pro
 Plancio, 3/6; *De Senectute, In
 Catilinam I., III., Pro Archia,
 Pro Balbo, Pro Marcello, (each)
 1/6.
DEMOSTHENES—Androtion, 4/6.
EURIPIDES—Alcestis, 2/6; An-
 dromache, 3/6; Bacchae, 3/6;
 Hecuba, 3/6; Hippolytus, 3/6;
 Iphigenia in T., 3/6; Medea,
 3/6.
HERODOTUS—Bk. 1, 4/6; Bk. 4,
 Ch. 1-144, 4/6; Bk. 6, 2/6;
 Bk. 8, 3/6.
HOMER—Iliad, Bk. 24, 3/6;
 Odyssey, Bks. 9, 10, 2/6;
 Odyssey, Bks. 11, 12, 2/6;
 Odyssey, Bks. 13, 14, 2/6;
 Odyssey, Bk. 17, 1/6.
HORACE—Epistles, 4/6; Epodes,
 1/6; *Odes, 3/6; Odes (each Bk.)
 (*Bks. 3, 4), 1/6; Satires, 4/6.
ISOCHRATES—De Bigis, 2/6.
JUVENAL—Satires, 1, 3, 4, 3/6;
 Satires, 8, 10, 13, 2/6; Satires,
 11, 13, 14, 3/6.
LIVY—Bks. 1, 5, 21, 22, (each)
 2/6; Bks. 3, 6, 9, (each) 3/6;
 Bk. 21, Ch. 1-30, 1/6.
LUCIAN—Charon and Piscator,
 3/6.
LYSIAS—Eratosthenes and Ago-
 ratus, 3/6.
NEPOS—Hannibal, Cato, Atticus,
 1/0.
OVID—Fasti, Bks. 3, 4, 2/6; Bks.
 5, 6, 3/6; Heroides, 1, 5, 12, 1/6;
 Metamorphoses, Bk. 1, 1-150,
 1/6; Bk. 3, 1-130, 1/6; Bk. 5,
 385-550, 1/6; Bks. 11 (410-748),
 13, 14, (each) 1/6; Tristia,
 Bks. 1, 3, (each) 1/6.
PLATO—Crito, 2/6; Apology,
 Ion, Laches, Phaedo, (each)
 3/6; Euthyphro and Menexen-
 us, 4/6.
SALLUST—Catiline, 1/6.
SOPHOCLES—Ajax, 3/6; Anti-
 gone, 2/6; Electra, 3/6.
TACITUS—Agricola, 2/6; Annals,
 Bk. 1, 2/6; Bk. 2, 2/6; Histories,
 Bk. 1, 3/6; Bk. 3, 3/6.
TERENCE—Adelphi, 3/6.
THUCYDIDES—Bk. 7, 3/6.
VERGIL—Æneid, Books 1-12.
 (*Books 1-7, 9-11), (each) 1/6;
 Bks. 7-10, 3/6; Eclogues, 3/6;
 Georgics, Bks. 1, 2, 3/6; 1, 4,
 3/6; 4, 1/6.
XENOPHON—Anabasis, Bk. 1, 1/6;
 Bk. 4, 1/6; Cyropaedeia, Bk.
 1, 1/6; Hellenica, Bk. 3, 1/6;
 Bk. 4, 1/6; Memorabilia, Bk.
 1, 3/6; Oeconomicus, 4/6.

A detailed Catalogue of the above can be obtained on application.

Greek and Latin.

GRAMMARS AND READERS.

- Advanced Greek Unseens.** *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.
- The Tutorial Greek Reader.** With VOCABULARIES. By A. WATUGH YOUNG, M.A. Lond. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 2s. 6d.
- Junior Latin Course.** By B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2s. 6d.
 "A good practical guide. The principles are sound, and the rules are clearly stated."—*Educational Times.*
- The Tutorial Latin Grammar.** By B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb., and W. F. MASON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 3s. 6d.
 "Accurate and full without being overloaded with detail."—*Schoolmaster.*
- The Tutorial Latin Grammar, Exercises and Test Questions on.** By F. L. D. RICHARDSON, B.A. Lond., and A. E. W. HAZEL, LL.D., M.A., B.C.L. 1s. 6d.
- Latin Composition.** With copious Exercises and easy continuous Passages. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Sixth Edition, enlarged.* 2s. 6d.
 "Simplicity of statement and arrangement, apt examples illustrating each rule, exceptions to these adroitly stated just at the proper place and time, are among some of the striking characteristics of this excellent book."—*Schoolmaster.*
- Junior Latin Reader.** By E. J. G. FORSE, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d.
- Matriculation Selections from Latin Authors.** With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. Edited by A. F. WATT, M.A. Oxon., B.A. Lond., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2s. 6d.
 Provides practice in reading Latin in preparation for Examinations for which no classics are prescribed.
 "It is quite an interesting selection, and well done."—*School World.*
 "The selection is a good one, and the notes are brief and to the purpose."—*Journal of Education.*
 "Well conceived and well carried out."—*Guardian.*
- Matriculation Latin Construing Book.** By A. F. WATT, M.A. Oxon., B.A. Lond., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2s.
 "One of the most useful text-books of this very practical Tutorial Series."—*School Guardian.*
- The Tutorial Latin Reader.** With VOCABULARY. 2s. 6d.
 "A soundly practical work."—*Guardian.*
- Advanced Latin Unseens.** Being a Higher Latin Reader. Edited by H. J. MAIDMENT, M.A., and T. R. MILLS, M.A. 3s. 6d.
 "Contains some good passages, which have been selected from a wider field than that previously explored by similar manuals."—*Cambridge Review.*
- The Tutorial Latin Dictionary.** By F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A. Lond. and Camb., late Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge. 6s. 6d.
 "A good specimen of elementary dictionary-making."—*Educational Times.*
 "A sound school dictionary."—*Speaker.*

Roman and Greek History.

The Tutorial History of Rome. (To 14 A.D.) By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASON, M.A. Lond. With Maps. *Third Edition, Revised and in part Rewritten.* 3s. 6d.

"It is well and clearly written."—*Saturday Review*.

"A history of good book, full, clear, and accurate. The narrative is throughout lucid and intelligible: there are no wasted words, and no obscurities, and the authors have taken obvious pains to bring their facts up to date."—*Guardian*.

The Tutorial History of Greece. (To 323 B.C.) By Prof. W. J. WOODHOUSE, M.A. Oxon. 4s. 6d.

"Prof. Woodhouse is exceptionally well qualified to write a history of Greece, and he has done it well."—*School World*.

A Longer History of Rome. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and others: each volume containing an account of the Literature of the Period—

320—202 B.C.	3s. 6d.	78—31 B.C.	3s. 6d.
202—133 B.C.	3s. 6d.	44 B.C.—138 A.D.	3s. 6d.
133—78 B.C.	3s. 6d.		

"Written in a clear and direct style. Its authors show a thorough acquaintance with their authorities, and have also used the works of modern historians to good effect."—*Journal of Education*.

A Longer History of Greece. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon. (each volume containing an account of the Literature of the Period)—

To 495 B.C.	3s. 6d.	404—362 B.C.	3s. 6d.
495—431 B.C.	3s. 6d.	362—323 B.C.	3s. 6d.
440—404 B.C.	3s. 6d.	Sicily, 491—289 B.C.	3s. 6d.

"For those who require a knowledge of the period (to 495 B.C.) no better book could be recommended."—*Educational Times*.

Examination Directories.

Matriculation Directory, with Full Answers to the Examination Papers. Published during the fortnight following each Examination. Nos. VI., VII., IX., XI.—XIX., XXI., XXIII., XXIX., XXXI., XXXIII., XXXV., XXXVII., XXXVIII., XXXIX., XL., XLII., XLIII., XLIV., XLV., XLVI., 1s. each, net. No. XLVII. (September 1907), 1s. net. Issues not mentioned above are out of print.

The University Correspondent

AND

UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENCE COLLEGE MAGAZINE.

Issued on the 1st and 15th of each month. Price 1d., by Post 1½d.; Half-yearly Subscription, 1s. 6d.; Yearly Subscription, 2s. 6d.